

LEARNING MADE EASY



## In Full Color

# Coding

# for **dummies**<sup>®</sup>

A Wiley Brand

 HTML >

```
ead>
<title> html page
<meta charset="utf-8">
<meta name="viewport" content="width=device-width, initial-scale=1.0">
<meta name="author" content="CSDN">
<meta name="robots" content="index, follow">
<link rel="contents" href="http://www.csdn.net/contents.htm">
ead>
```

Practice coding online  
at **codecademy**

Learn the basics of five different coding languages

## Create a working application using basic coding skills

# Nikhil Abraham

# Introduction

---

The ability to read, write, and understand code has never been more important, useful, or lucrative as it is today. Computer code has forever changed our lives. Some people can't even make it through the day without interacting with something built with code. Even so, for many people, the world of coding seems complex and inaccessible. Maybe you participated in a tech-related business meeting and did not fully understand the conversation. Perhaps you tried to build a web page for your family and friends, but ran into problems displaying pictures or aligning text. Maybe you're even intimidated by the unrecognizable words on the covers of books about coding: words such as HTML, CSS, JavaScript, Python, or Ruby.

If you've previously been in these situations, then *Coding For Dummies* is for you. This book explains basic concepts so you can participate in technical conversations, and ask the right questions. Don't worry — in this book I've assumed you are starting with little to no previous coding knowledge, and I haven't tried to cram every possible coding concept into these pages. Additionally, I encourage you here to learn by doing, and by actually creating your own programs. Instead of a website, imagine that you wanted to build a house. You could spend eight years studying to be an architect, or you could start today by learning a little bit about foundations and framing. This book kickstarts your coding journey today.

The importance of coding is ever increasing. As author and technologist Douglas Rushkoff famously said, “program or be programmed.” When humans invented languages and then the alphabet, people learned to listen and speak, and then read and write. In our increasingly digital world, it is important to learn not just how to use programs, but how to make them as well. For example, observe this transition in music. For over a century, music labels decided what songs the public could listen to and purchase. In 2005, three coders created YouTube, which allowed anyone to release songs. Today more songs have been uploaded to

YouTube than have been released by all the record labels in the last century combined.

Accompanying this book are examples at [www.codecademy.com](http://www.codecademy.com), whose exercises are one of the easiest ways to learn how to code without installing or downloading anything. The Codecademy companion site includes examples and exercises from this book, along with projects and examples for additional practice.

## ***About This Book***

This book is designed for readers with little to no coding experience, and gives an overview of programming to non-programmers. In plain English, you learn how code is used to create web programs, who makes those programs, and the processes they use. The topics covered include:

- » Explaining what coding is and answering the common questions related to code.
- » Building basic websites using the three most common languages: HTML, CSS, and JavaScript.
- » Surveying other programming languages such as Ruby and Python.
- » Building an application using everything you learn in the book.

As you read this book, keep the following in mind:

- » The book can be read from beginning to end, but feel free to skip around if you like. If any topic interests you, start there. You can always return to the previous chapter, if necessary.
- » At some point you will get stuck, and code you write will not work as intended. Do not fear! There are many resources to help you including support forums, others on the Internet, and me! Using Twitter, you can send me a public message at `@nikhilgabraham` with the hashtag `#codingFD`.

- » Code in the book will appear in a monospaced font like this: <h1>Hi there!</h1>.

## *Foolish Assumptions*

I do not make many assumptions about you, the reader, but I do make a few:

I assume you don't have previous programming experience. To follow along, then, you only need to be able to read, type, and follow directions. I try to explain as many concepts as possible using examples and analogies you already know.

I assume you have a computer running the latest version of Google Chrome. The examples in the book have been tested and optimized for the Chrome browser, which is available for free from Google. Even so, the examples may also work in the latest version of Firefox. Using Internet Explorer for the examples in this book, however, is discouraged.

I assume you have access to an Internet connection. Some of the examples in the book can be done without an Internet connection, but most require one so you can access and complete the exercises on [www.codecademy.com](http://www.codecademy.com).

## *Icons Used in This Book*

Here are the icons used in the book to flag text that should be given extra attention or can be skipped.



**TIP** This icon flags useful information or explains a shortcut to help you understand a concept.



TECHNICAL STUFF

This icon explains technical details about the concept being explained. The details might be informative or interesting, but are not essential to your understanding of the concept at this stage.



REMEMBER

Try not to forget the material marked with this icon. It signals an important concept or process that you should keep in mind.



WARNING

Watch out! This icon flags common mistakes and problems that can be avoided if you heed the warning.

## Beyond the Book

A lot of extra content that you won't find in this book is available at [www.dummies.com](http://www.dummies.com). Go online to find the following:

- » **The source code for the examples in this book and a link to the Codecademy exercises:** You can find these at

[www.dummies.com/go/codingfd](http://www.dummies.com/go/codingfd)

The source code is organized by chapter. The best way to work with a chapter is to download all the source code for it at one time.

- » **Cheat Sheet:** You can find a list of common HTML, CSS, and JavaScript commands, among other useful information, at  
To view this book's Cheat Sheet, simply go to [www.dummies.com](http://www.dummies.com) and search for "Coding For Dummies Cheat Sheet" in the Search box.
- » **Extras:** Additional articles with extra content are posted for roughly each section of the book. You can access these additional materials at

[www.dummies.com/extras/coding](http://www.dummies.com/extras/coding)

» **Updates:** Code and specifications are constantly changing, so the commands and syntax that work today may not work tomorrow. You can find any updates or corrections by visiting

[www.dummies.com/extras/coding](http://www.dummies.com/extras/coding)

## *Where to Go from Here*

All right, now that all of the administrative stuff is out of the way, it's time to get started. You can totally do this. Congratulations on taking your first step into the world of coding!

# Part 1

## Getting Started with Coding

## IN THIS PART ...

Understand what code is and what you can build with it.

Review programming languages used to write code.

Code for the web using front-end and back-end programming languages.

Follow the process programmers use to create code.

Write your first program using code.

# Chapter 1

# What Is Coding?

---

## IN THIS CHAPTER

**Seeing what code is and what it can do**

**Touring your first program using code**

**Understanding programming languages used to write code**

---

*“A million dollars isn’t cool, you know what’s cool? A billion dollars.”*

— SEAN PARKER, THE SOCIAL NETWORK

Every week the newspapers report on another technology company that has raised capital or sold for millions of dollars. Sometimes, in the case of companies like Instagram, WhatsApp, and Uber, the amount in the headline is for billions of dollars. These articles may pique your curiosity, and you may want to see how code is used to build the applications that experience these financial outcomes. Alternatively, your interests may lie closer to work. Perhaps you work in an industry in decline, like print media, or in a function that technology is rapidly changing, like marketing. Whether you are thinking about switching to a new career or improving your current career, understanding computer programming or “coding” can help with your professional development. Finally, your interest may be more personal — perhaps you have an idea, a burning desire to create something, a website or an app, to solve a problem you have experienced, and you know reading and writing code is the first step to building your solution. Whatever your motivation, this book will shed light on coding and programmers, and help you think of both not as mysterious and complex but approachable and something you can do yourself.

In this chapter, you will understand what code is, what industries are affected by computer software, the different types of programming languages used to write code, and take a tour of a web app built with code.

## ***Defining What Code Is***

Computer code is not a cryptic activity reserved for geniuses and oracles. In fact, in a few minutes you will be writing some computer code yourself! Most computer code performs a range of tasks in our lives from the mundane to the extraordinary. Code runs our traffic lights and pedestrian signals, the elevators in our buildings, the cell phone towers that transmit our phone signals, and the space ships headed for outer space. We also interact with code on a more personal level, on our phones and computers, and usually to check email or the weather.

### ***Following instructions***

Computer code is a set of statements, like sentences in English, and each statement directs the computer to perform a single step or instruction. Each of these steps is very precise, and followed to the letter. For example, if you are in a restaurant and ask a waiter to direct you to the restroom, he might say, “head to the back, and try the middle door.” To a computer, these directions are so vague as to be unusable. Instead, if the waiter gave instructions to you as if you were a computer program he might say, “From this table, walk northeast for 40 paces. Then turn right 90 degrees, walk 5 paces, turn left 90 degrees, and walk 5 paces. Open the door directly in front of you, and enter the restroom.” [Figure 1-1](#) shows lines of code from the popular game, Pong. Do not worry about trying to understand what every single line does, or feel intimated. You will soon be reading and writing your own code.

```
1 - launchPong(function () {
2 -   function colour_random() {
3 -     var num = Math.floor(Math.random() * Math.pow(2, 24));
4 -     return '#' + ('00000' + num.toString(16)).substr(-6);
5 -   }
6 -
7 -
8 -   pongSettings.ball.size = 15;
9 -   pongSettings.ball.color = colour_random();
10 -  pongSettings.ball.velocity[0] = 15;
11 -  pongSettings.ball.velocity[1] = 15;
12 -
13 - });
14 -
15 -
```

**FIGURE 1-1:** Computer code from the game Pong.

One rough way to measure a program's complexity is to count its statements or lines of code. Basic applications like the Pong game have 5,000 lines of code, while more complex applications like Facebook currently have over 10 million lines of code. Whether few or many lines of code, the computer follows each instruction exactly and effortlessly, never tiring like the waiter might when asked for the 100th time for the location of the restroom.

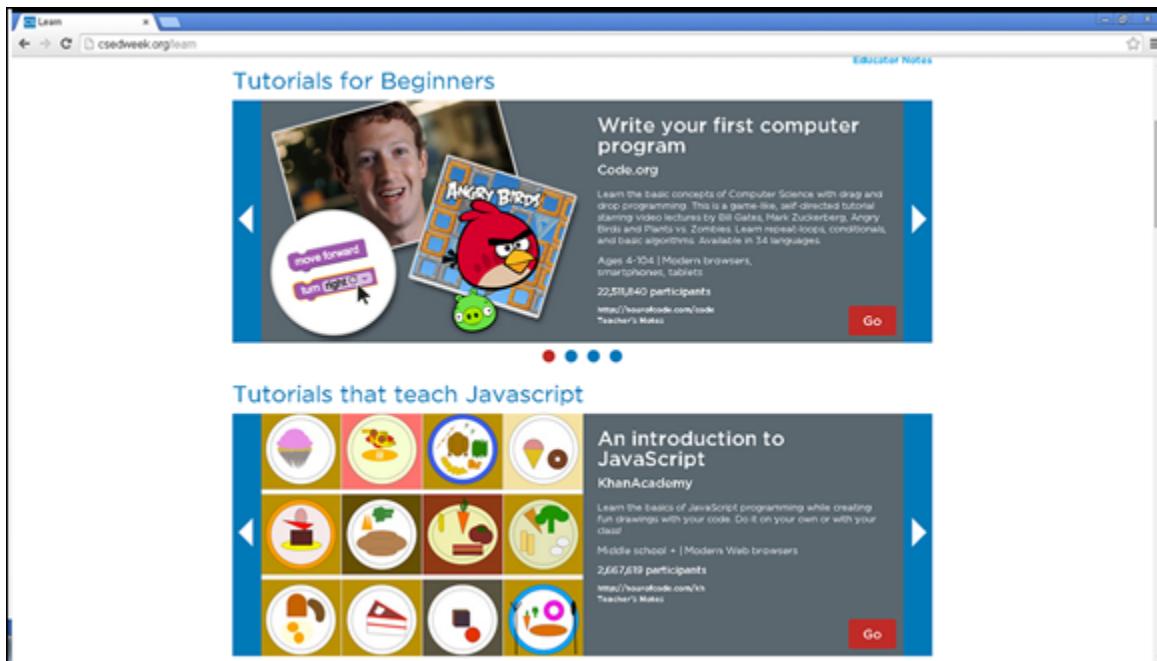


**TIP** Be careful of only using lines of code as a measure for a program's complexity. Just like when writing in English, 100 well written lines of code can perform the same functionality as 1,000 poorly written lines of code.

## ***Writing code with some Angry Birds***

If you have never written code before, now is your chance to try! Go to <http://csedweek.org/learn> and under the heading “Tutorials for Beginners” click the “Write Your First Computer Program” link with the Angry Birds icon, as shown in [Figure 1-2](#). This tutorial is meant for those with no previous computer programming experience, and introduces the basic building blocks used by all computer programs. The

most important take-away from the tutorial is to understand that computer programs use code to literally and exactly tell the computer to execute a set of instructions.



**FIGURE 1-2:** Write your first computer program with a game-like tutorial using Angry Birds.



**TIP** Computer Science Education Week is an annual program dedicated to elevating the profile of computer science during one week in December. In the past, President Obama, Bill Gates, basketball player Chris Bosh, and singer Shakira, among others, have supported and encouraged people from the US and around the world to participate.

## ***Understanding What Coding Can Do for You***

Coding can be used to perform tasks and solve problems that you experience every day. The “everyday” situations in which programs or

apps can provide assistance continues to grow at an exponential pace, but this was not always the case. The rise of web applications, internet connectivity, and mobile phones have inserted software programs into daily life, and lowered the barrier for you to become a creator, solving personal and professional problems with code.

## ***Eating the world with software***

In 2011, Marc Andreessen, creator of Netscape Navigator and now venture capitalist, noted that “software is eating the world.” He predicted that software companies would disrupt existing companies at a rapid pace. Traditionally, code powered software used on desktops and laptops. The software had to first be installed, and then you had to supply data to the program. Three trends have dramatically increased the use of code in everyday life:

- » **Web-based software:** This software operates in the browser without requiring installation. For example, if you wanted to check your email, you previously had to install an email client either by downloading the software or from a CD-ROM. Sometimes, issues arose when the software was not available for your operating system, or conflicted with your operating system version. Hotmail, a web-based email client, rose to popularity, in part, because it allowed users visiting [www.hotmail.com](http://www.hotmail.com) to instantly check their email without worrying about installation or software compatibility. Web applications increased consumer appetite to try more applications, and developers in turn were incentivized to write more applications.
- » **Internet broadband connectivity:** Broadband connectivity has increased, providing a fast Internet connection to more people in the last few years than in the previous decade. Today, more than two billion people can access web-based software, up from approximately 50 million only a decade ago.
- » **Mobile phones:** Today’s smartphones bring programs with you wherever you go, and help supply data to programs. Many software programs became more useful when accessed on-the-go than when limited to a desktop computer. For instance, use of maps applications

greatly increased thanks to mobile phones because users need directions the most when lost, not just when planning a trip at home on the computer. In addition, mobile phones are equipped with sensors that measure and supply data to programs like orientation, acceleration, and current location through GPS. Now instead of having to input all the data to programs yourself, mobile devices can help. For instance, a fitness application like RunKeeper does not require you to input start and end times to keep track of your runs. You can press start at the beginning of your run, and the phone will automatically track your distance, speed, and time.

The combination of these trends have created software companies that have upended incumbents in almost every industry, especially ones typically immune to technology. Some notable examples include:

- » **Airbnb:** Airbnb is a peer-to-peer lodging company that owns no rooms, yet books more nights than the Hilton and Intercontinental, the largest hotel chains in the world. (See [Figure 1-3](#).)
- » **Uber:** Uber is a car transportation company that owns no vehicles, books more trips, and has more drivers in the largest 200 cities than any other car or taxi service.
- » **Groupon:** Groupon, the daily deals company, generated almost \$1 billion after just two years in business, growing faster than any other company in history, let alone any other traditional direct marketing company.



**FIGURE 1-3:** Airbnb booked 5 million nights after 3.5 years, and its next 5 million nights 6 months later.

## *Coding on the job*

Coding can be useful in the workplace as well. Outside the technology sector, coding in the workplace is common for some professions like financial traders, economists, and scientists. However, for most professionals outside the technology sector, coding is just beginning to penetrate the workplace, and gradually starting to increase in relevance. Here are areas where coding is playing a larger role on the job:

- » **Advertising:** Spend is shifting from print and TV to digital campaigns, and search engine advertising and optimization relies on keywords to bring visitors to websites. Advertisers who understand code see successful keywords used by competitors, and use that data to create more effective campaigns.
- » **Marketing:** When promoting products, personalizing communication is one strategy that often increases results. Marketers

who code can query customer databases and create personalized communications that include customer names and products tailored to specific interests.

- » **Sales:** The sales process always starts with leads. Salespeople who code retrieve their own leads from web pages and directories, and then sort and quality those leads.



**TIP** Retrieving information by copying text on web pages and in directories is referred to as *scraping*.

- » **Design:** After creating a web page or a digital design, designers must persuade other designers and eventually developers to actually program their drawings into the product. Designers who code can more easily bring their designs to life, and can more effectively advocate for specific designs by creating working prototypes that others can interact with.
- » **Public relations:** Companies constantly measure how customers and the public react to announcements and news. For instance, if a celebrity spokesperson for a company does or says something offensive, should the company dump the celebrity? Public relations people who code query social media networks like Twitter or Facebook, and analyze hundreds of thousands of individual messages to understand market sentiment.
- » **Operations:** Additional profit can be generated, in part, by analyzing a company's costs. Operations people who code write programs to try millions of combinations to optimize packaging methods, loading routines, and delivery routes.

## ***Scratching your own itch (and becoming rich and famous)***

Using code built by others and coding in the workplace may cause you to think of problems you personally face that you could solve with code of your own. You may have an idea for a social network website, a better

fitness app, or something new altogether. The path from idea to functioning prototype used by others involves a good amount of time and work, but might be more achievable than you think. For example, take Coffitivity, a productivity website that streams ambient coffee shop sounds to create white noise. The website was created by two people who had just learned how to program a few months prior. Shortly after Coffitivity launched, Time Magazine named the website one of 50 Best Websites of 2013, and the Wall Street Journal also reviewed the website. While not every startup or app will initially receive this much media coverage, it can be helpful to know what is possible when a solution really solves a problem.

Having a goal, like a website or app you want to build, is one of the best ways to learn how to code. When facing a difficult bug or a hard concept, the idea of bringing your website to life will provide the motivation you need to keep going. Just as important, do not learn how to code to become rich and famous, as the probability of your website or app becoming successful is largely due to factors out of your control.



**TIP** The characteristics that make a website or app addictive are described using the Hook Model here

<http://techcrunch.com/2012/03/04/how-to-manufacture-desire>. Products are usually made by companies, and the characteristics of an enduring company are described here <http://www.sequoiacap.com/grove/posts/yal6/elements-of-enduring-companies>, based on a review of companies funded by Sequoia, one of the most successful venture capital firms in the world and early investors in Apple, Google, and PayPal.

## *Surveying the Types of Programming Languages*

Code comes in different flavors called *programming languages*. Some popular programming languages are shown in [Figure 1-4](#).



[FIGURE 1-4:](#) Some popular programming languages.

You can think of programming languages just like spoken languages, as they both share many of the same characteristics, such as:

- » **Functionality across languages:** Programming languages can all create the same functionality similar to how spoken languages can all express the same objects, phrases, and emotions.
- » **Syntax and structure:** Commands in programming languages can overlap just like words in spoken languages overlap. To output text to screen in Python or Ruby you use the `print` command, just like `imprimer` and `imprimir` are the verbs for “print” in French and Spanish.

» **Natural lifespan:** Programming languages are born when a programmer thinks of a new or easier way to express a computational concept. If other programmers agree, they adopt the language for their own programs and the programming language spreads. However, just like Latin or Aramaic, if the programming language is not adopted by other programmers or a better language comes along, then the programming language slowly dies from lack of use.

Despite these similarities, programming languages also differ from spoken languages in a few key ways:

- » **One creator:** Unlike spoken languages, programming languages can be created by one person in a short period of time, sometimes in just a few days. Popular languages with a single creator include JavaScript (Brendan Eich), Python (Guido van Rossum), and Ruby (Yukihiro Matsumoto).
- » **Written in English:** Unlike spoken languages (except, of course, English), almost all programming languages are written in English. Whether they're programming in HTML, JavaScript, Python, or Ruby, Brazilian, French, or Chinese programmers all use the same English keywords and syntax in their code. Some non-English programming languages exist, such as languages in Hindi or Arabic, but none of these languages are widespread or mainstream.

## *Comparing low-level and high-level programming languages*

One way to classify programming languages is either as low-level languages or high-level languages. Low-level languages interact directly with the computer processor or CPU, are capable of performing very basic commands, and are generally hard to read. Machine code, one example of a low-level language, uses code that consists of just two numbers — 0 and 1. [Figure 1-5](#) shows an example of machine code. Assembly language, another low-level language, uses keywords to perform basic commands like read data, move data, and store data.

```
01101010011010100010110110010010101100101010101001010101  
0111100010101110001101110111000101010010101001101010100  
01010100010010010110101000101001011100011001010100100110  
00110101010111101011011110100100100010110101010100000101  
0011010100110101000101101100100101011001010101010100101010  
10111100010101111000110111011100010101001010100110101010  
00101010001001001011010100010100101110001100101010010011  
000110101011110101101111010010010001011010101010000010  
0011010100110101000101101100100101011001010101010100101010  
10111100010101111000110111011100010101001010100110101010  
00101010001001001011010100010100101110001100101010010011  
000110101011110101101111010010010001011010101010000010  
0011010100110101000101101100100101011001010101010100101010  
10111100010101111000110111011100010101001010100110101010  
00101010001001001011010100010100101110001100101010010011  
000110101011110101101111010010010001011010101010000010  
0011010100110101000101101100100101011001010101010100101010  
10111100010101111000110111011100010101001010100110101010  
00101010001001001011010100010100101110001100101010010011  
000110101011110101101111010010010001011010101010000010  
0011010100110101000101101100100101011001010101010100101010  
10111100010101111000110111011100010101001010100110101010
```

**FIGURE 1-5:** Machine code consists of 0s and 1s.

By contrast, high-level languages use natural language so it is easier for people to read and write. Once code is written in a high-level language, like C++, Python, or Ruby, an interpreter or compiler translates this high-level language into low-level code a computer can understand.

## ***Contrasting compiled code and interpreted code***

High-level programming languages must be converted to low-level programming languages using an interpreter or compiler, depending on the language. Interpreted languages are considered more portable than compiled languages, while compiled languages execute faster than interpreted languages. However, the speed advantage compiled languages have is starting to fade in importance as improving processor speeds make performance differences between interpreted and compiled languages negligible.

High-level programming languages like JavaScript, Python, and Ruby are interpreted. For these languages the interpreter executes the program directly, translating each statement *one line at a time* into machine code. High-level programming languages like C++, COBOL, and Visual Basic are compiled. For these languages, after the code is written a compiler translates *all* the code into machine code, and an executable file is

created. This executable file is then distributed via the internet, CD-ROMs, or other media and run. Software you install on your computer, like Microsoft Windows or Mac OS X, are coded using compiled languages, usually C or C++.

## ***Programming for the web***

Software accessible on websites is gradually starting to take over installed software. Think of the last time you downloaded and installed software for your computer — you may not even remember! Installed software like Windows Media Player and Winamp that play music and movies have been replaced with websites like YouTube and Netflix. Traditional installed word processor and spreadsheet software like Microsoft Word and Excel are starting to see competition from web software like Google Docs and Sheets. Google is even selling laptops called Chromebooks that contain no installed software, and instead rely exclusively on web software to provide functionality.

The remainder of this book will focus on developing and creating web software, not just because web software is growing rapidly, but also because programs for the web are easier to learn and launch than traditional installed software.

## ***Taking a Tour of a Web App Built with Code***

With all this talk of programming, let us actually take a look at a web application built with code. [Yelp.com](https://www.yelp.com) is a website that allows you to search and find crowd-sourced reviews for local businesses like restaurants, nightlife, and shopping. As shown in [Figure 1-6](#), Yelp did not always look as polished as it does today, but its purpose has stayed relatively constant over the years.



**FIGURE 1-6:** Yelp's website in 2004 and in 2014.

## *Defining the app's purpose and scope*

Once you understand an app's purpose, you can identify a few actionable tasks a user should be able to perform to achieve that purpose.

Regardless of design, the Yelp's website has always allowed users to

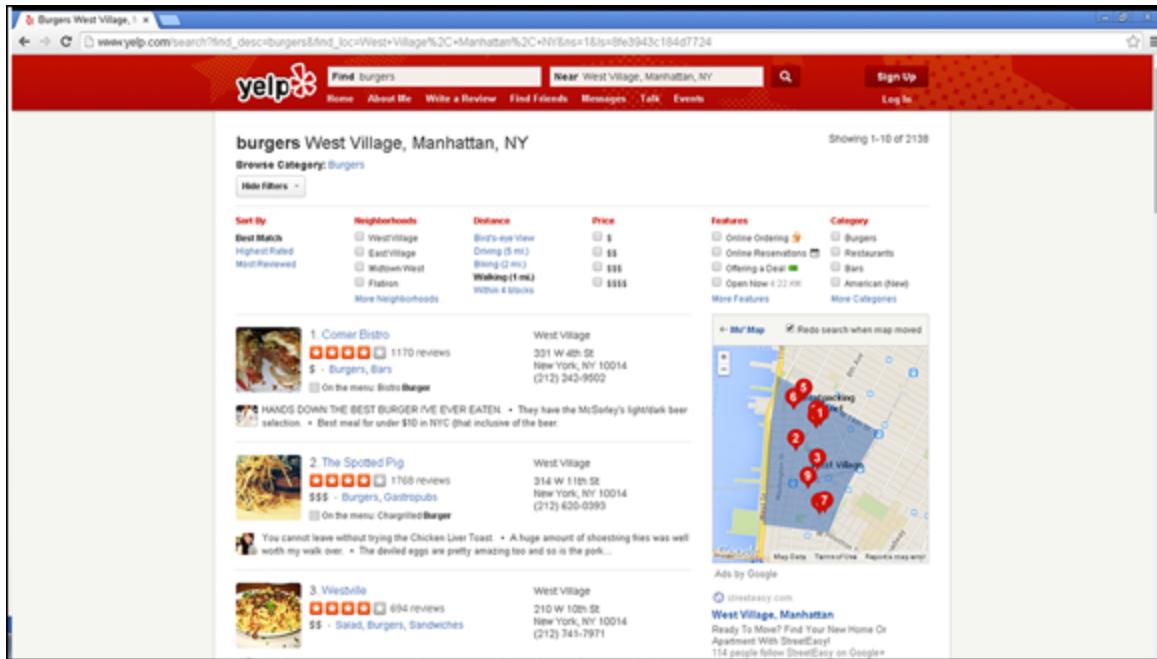
- » Search local listings based on venue type and location.
- » Browse listing results for address, hours, reviews, photos, and location on a map.

Successful web applications generally allow for completing only a few key tasks when using the app. Adding too many features to an app is called scope creep, dilutes the strength of the existing features, and so is avoided by most developers. For example, it took Yelp, which has 30,000 restaurant reviews, exactly one decade after its founding to allow users to make reservations at those restaurants directly on its website. Whether you are using or building an app, have a clear sense of the app's purpose.

## *Standing on the shoulders of giants*

Developers make strategic choices and decide which parts of the app to code themselves, and which parts of the app to use code built by others. Developers often turn to 3rd party providers for functionality that is either not core to the business or not an area of strength. In this way, apps stand on the shoulders of others, and benefit from others who have come before and solved challenging problems.

Yelp, for instance, displays local listing reviews and places every listing on a map. While Yelp solicits the reviews, and writes the code to display basic listing data, it is Google, as shown in [Figure 1-7](#), which develops the maps used on Yelp's website. By using Google's map application instead of building its own, Yelp created the first version of the app with fewer engineers than otherwise would have been required.



[FIGURE 1-7:](#) Google maps used for the Yelp web application.

# Chapter 2

# Programming for the Web

---

## IN THIS CHAPTER

**Seeing the code powering websites you use every day**

**Understanding the languages used to make websites**

**Learning how applications are created for mobile devices**

---

*To think you can start something in your college dorm room ...  
and build something a billion people use is crazy to think about.  
It's amazing.*

—MARK ZUCKERBERG

Programming for the web allows you to reach massive audiences around the world faster than ever before. Four years after its 2004 launch, Facebook had 100 million users, and by 2012 it had over a billion. By contrast, it took desktop software years to reach even 1 million people. These days, mobile phones are increasing the reach of web applications. Although roughly 300 million desktop computers are sold every year, almost 2 billion mobile phones are sold in that time — and the number is steadily increasing.

In this chapter you learn how websites are displayed on your computer or mobile device. I introduce the languages used to program websites, and show you how mobile-device applications are made.

## *Displaying Web Pages on Your Desktop and Mobile Device*

On desktop computers and mobile devices, web pages are displayed by applications called *browsers*. The most popular web browsers include

Google Chrome, Mozilla Firefox (formerly Netscape Navigator), Microsoft Internet Explorer, and Apple Safari. Until now, you have likely interacted with websites you visit as an obedient user, and followed the rules the website has created by pointing and clicking when allowed. The first step to becoming a producer and programmer of websites is to peel back the web page, and see and play with the code underneath it all.

## ***Hacking your favorite news website***

What's your favorite news website? By following a few steps, you can see and even modify the code used to create that website. (No need to worry, you won't be breaking any rules by following these instructions.)



**TIP** Although you can use almost any modern browser to inspect a website's code, these instructions assume you're using the Google Chrome browser. Install the latest version by going to [www.google.com/chrome/browser](http://www.google.com/chrome/browser).

To "hack" your favorite news website, follow these steps:

- 1. Open your favorite news website using the Chrome browser. (In this example, I use [www.huffingtonpost.com](http://www.huffingtonpost.com).)**
- 2. Place your mouse cursor over any static fixed headline and right-click once, which opens a contextual menu. Then, left-click once on the Inspect Element menu choice. (See [Figure 2-1](#).)**



**TIP** If using a Macintosh computer, you can right-click by holding down the Control key and clicking once.

The Developer Tools panel opens at the bottom of your browser. This panel shows you the code used to create this web page! Highlighted in blue is the specific code used to create the headline where you originally put your mouse cursor. (See [Figure 2-2](#).)



**TIP** Look at the left edge of the highlighted code. If you see a right arrow, left-click once on the arrow to expand the code.

### 3. Scan the highlighted code carefully for the text of your headline.

**When you find it, double-click on the headline text. This allows you to edit the headline. (See [Figure 2-3](#).)**

Be careful not to click on anything that begins with `http`, which is the headline link. Clicking on a headline link will open a new window or tab and load the link.

### 4. Insert your name in the headline and press Enter.

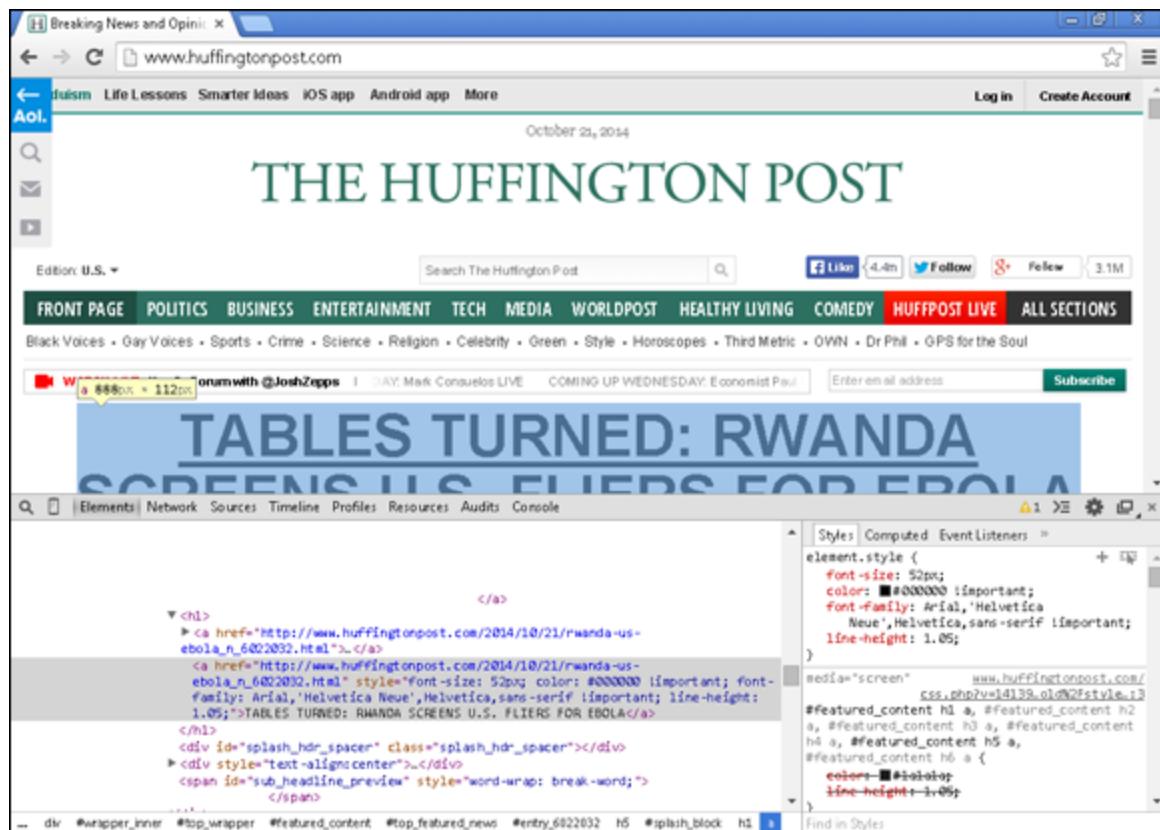
Your name now appears on the actual web page. (See [Figure 2-4](#).) Enjoy your newfound fame!



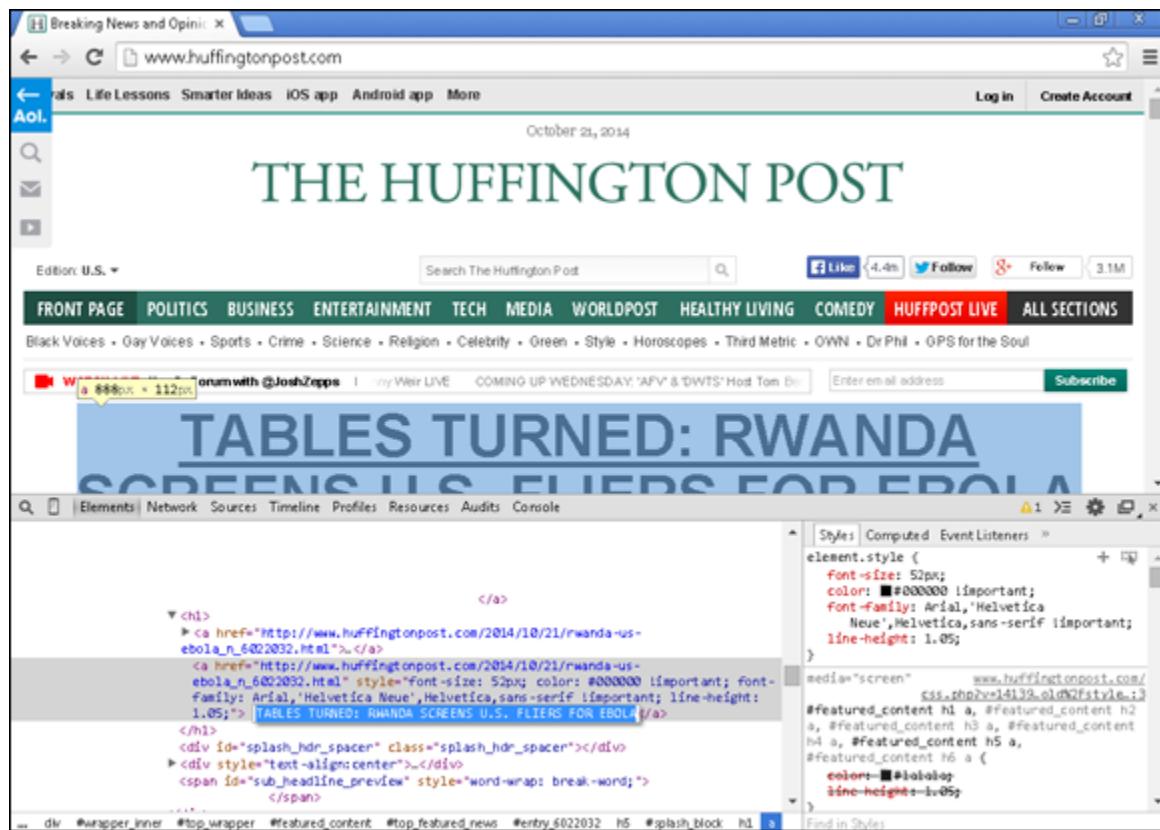
**TIP** If you were unable to edit the headline after following these steps, visit <http://goggles.webmaker.org> for an easier, more guided tutorial. It's a foolproof guided version to edit code on a page. It's a teaching aid that shows that any code on the Internet can be modified. On that page, click the yellow Activate X-Ray Goggles to see and edit the code on the webmaker.org web page. Try again to hack your favorite news website by following the "Remix Any Webpage" instructions.



**FIGURE 2-1:** Right-click on a headline and select Inspect Element from the menu.



**FIGURE 2-2:** The blue highlighted code is used to create the web page headline.



**FIGURE 2-3:** Double-click the headline text to edit it with your own headline.



**FIGURE 2-4:** You successfully changed the headline of a major news website.

If you successfully completed the steps above and changed the original headline, it's time for your 15 minutes of fame to come to an end. Reload the web page and the original headline reappears. What just happened? Did your changes appear to everyone visiting the web page? And why did your edited headline disappear?

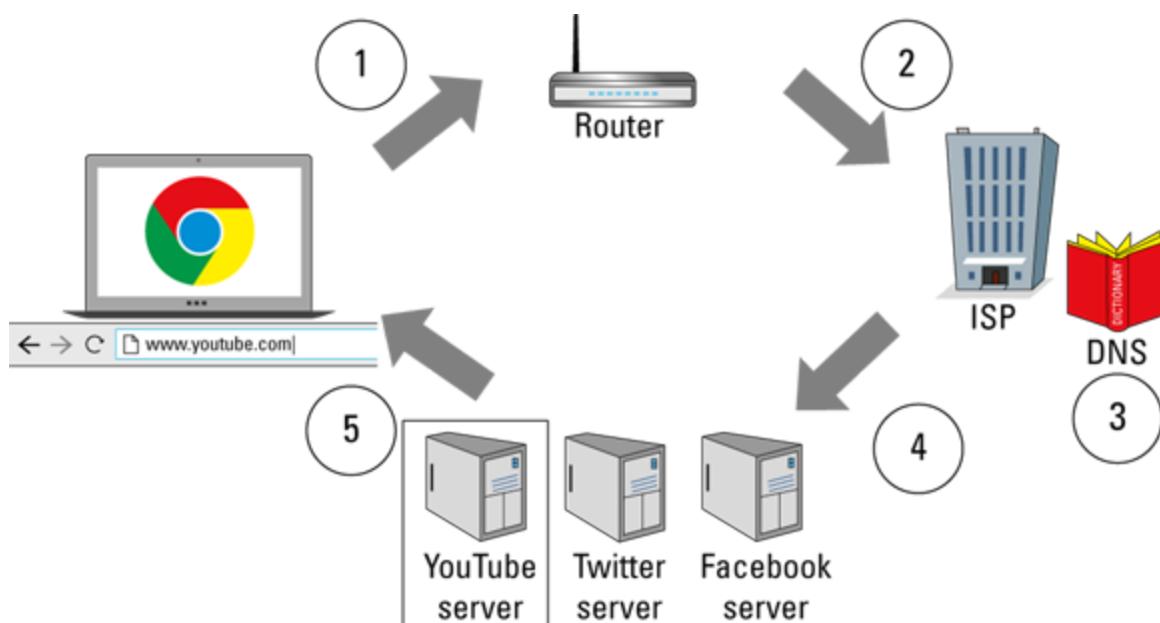
To answer these questions, you first need to understand how the Internet delivers web pages to your computer.

## ***Understanding how the World Wide Web works***

After you type a URL, such as huffingtonpost.com, into your browser, the following steps happen behind the scenes in the seconds before your page loads (see [Figure 2-5](#)):

1. Your computer sends your request for the web page to a router. The router distributes Internet access throughout your home or workplace.

2. The router passes your request onto your Internet service provider (ISP). In the United States, your ISP is a company like Comcast, Time Warner, AT&T, or Verizon.
3. Your ISP then converts the words and characters in your URL — “huffingtonpost.com,” in my example — into a numerical address called the *Internet protocol address* (or, more commonly, *IP address*). An IP address is a set of four numbers separated by periods (such as, for example, 192.168.1.1). Just like your physical address, this number is unique, and every computer has one. Your ISP has a digital phone book, similar to a physical phonebook, called a *domain name server* that’s used to convert text URLs into IP addresses.
4. With the IP address located, your ISP knows which server on the Internet to forward your request to, and your personal IP address is included in this request.
5. The website server receives your request, and sends a copy of the web page code to your computer for your browser to display.
6. Your web browser renders the code onto the screen.



**FIGURE 2-5:** Steps followed to deliver a website to your browser.

When you edited the website code using the Developer Tools, you modified only the copy of the website code that exists on your computer,

so only you could see the change. When you reloaded the page, you started steps 1 through 6 again, and retrieved a fresh copy of the code from the server, overwriting any changes you made on your computer.



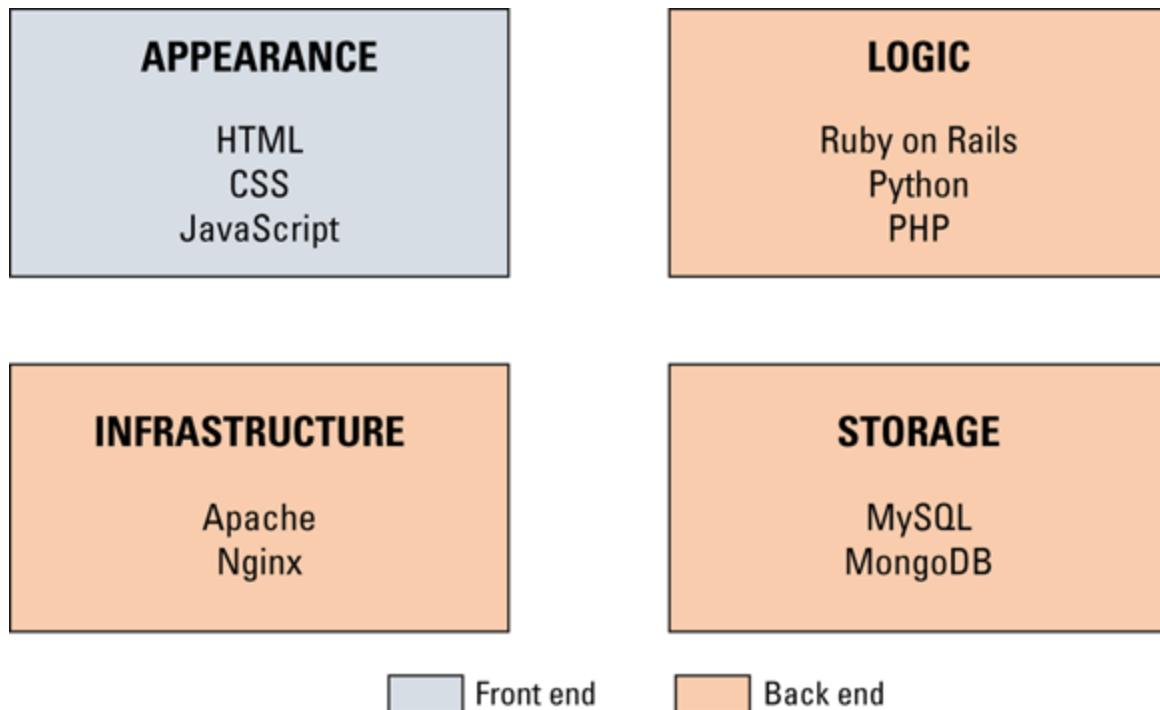
**TIP** You may have heard of a software tool called an *ad blocker*. Ad blockers work by editing the local copy of website code, just as you did above, to remove website advertisements. Ad blockers are controversial because websites use advertising revenue to pay for operating costs. If ad blockers continue rising in popularity, ad revenue could dry up, and websites would have to demand that readers pay to see their content.

## **Watching out for your front end and back end**

Now that you know how your browser accesses websites, let us dive deeper into the way the actual website is constructed. As shown in [Figure 2-6](#), the code for websites, and for programs in general, can be divided into four categories, according to the code's function:

- » **Appearance:** Appearance is the visible part of the website, including content layout and any applied styling, such font size, font typeface, and image size. This category is called the *front end* and is created using languages like HTML, CSS, and JavaScript.
- » **Logic:** Logic determines what content to show and when. For example, a New Yorker accessing a news website should see New York weather, whereas Chicagoans accessing the same site should see Chicago weather. This category is part of the group called the *back end* and is created using languages like Ruby, Python, and PHP. These back end languages can modify the HTML, CSS, and JavaScript that is displayed to the user.
- » **Storage:** Storage saves any data generated by the site and its users. User-generated content, preferences, and profile data must be stored for retrieval later. This category is part of the back end and is stored in databases like MongoDB and MySQL.

» **Infrastructure:** Infrastructure delivers the website from the server to you, the client machine. When the infrastructure is properly configured, no one notices it, but it can *become* noticeable when a website becomes unavailable due to high traffic from events like presidential elections, the Super Bowl, and natural disasters.



**FIGURE 2-6:** Every website is made up of four different parts.

Usually, website developers specialize in one or at most two of these categories. For example, an engineer might really understand the front end and logic languages, or specialize in only databases. Website developers have strengths and specializations, and outside of these areas their expertise is limited, much in the same way that Jerry Seinfeld, a terrific comedy writer, would likely make a terrible romance novelist.



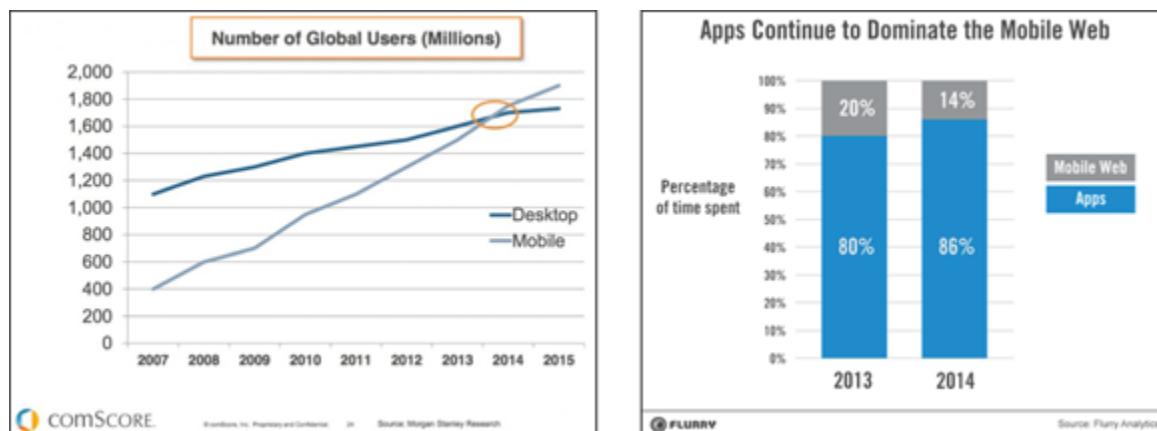
TECHNICAL STUFF

The rare website developer proficient in all four of these categories is referred to as a *full stack developer*. Usually, smaller companies hire full stack developers, whereas larger companies require the expertise that comes with specialization.

## Defining web and mobile applications

*Web applications* are websites you visit using a web browser on any device. Websites optimized for use on a mobile device, like a phone or tablet, are called *mobile web applications*. By contrast, *native mobile applications* cannot be viewed using a web browser. Instead, native mobile applications are downloaded from an app store like the Apple App Store or Google Play, and designed to run on a specific device such as an iPhone or an Android tablet. Historically, desktop computers outnumbered and outsold mobile devices, but recently two major trends in mobile usage have occurred:

- » In 2014, people with mobile devices outnumbered people with desktop computers. This gap is projected to continue increasing, as shown in [Figure 2-7](#).
- » Mobile-device users spend 80 percent of their time using native mobile applications, and 20 percent of their time browsing mobile websites.



**FIGURE 2-7:** Mobile devices have increased at a faster pace than desktops.

The increase in mobile devices has happened so quickly over the last 10 years that many companies are becoming “mobile first,” designing and developing the mobile version of their applications before the desktop version. WhatsApp and Instagram, two popular mobile applications, first built mobile applications, which continue to have more functionality than their regular websites.

# ***Coding Web Applications***

Web applications are easier to build than mobile applications, require little to no additional software to develop and test, and run on all devices, including desktop, laptops, and mobile. Although mobile applications can perform many common web-application tasks, such as email, some tasks are still easier to perform using web applications. For example, booking travel is easier using web applications, especially since the steps necessary — reviewing flights, hotels, and rental cars, and then purchasing all three — are best achieved with multiple windows, access to a calendar, and the entry of substantial personal and payment information.

The programming languages used to code basic web applications, further defined in the following sections, include HTML (Hypertext Markup Language), CSS (Cascading Style Sheets), and JavaScript. Additional features can be added to these websites using languages like Python, Ruby, or PHP.

## ***Starting with HTML, CSS, and JavaScript***

Simple websites, such as the one shown in [Figure 2-8](#), are coded using HTML, CSS, and JavaScript. HTML is used to place text on the page, CSS is used to style that text, and JavaScript is used to add interactive effects like the Twitter or Facebook Share button that allows you to share content on social networks and updates the number of other people who have also shared the same content. Websites conveying mainly static, unchanging information are often coded only in these three languages. You will learn about each of these languages in later chapters.



**FIGURE 2-8:** The lindaliukas.fi website, built using HTML, CSS, and JavaScript.

## ***Adding logic with Python, Ruby, or PHP***

Websites with more advanced functionality, such as user accounts, file uploads, and e-commerce, typically require a programming language to implement these features. Although Python, Ruby, and PHP are not the only programming languages these sites can use, they are among the most popular. This popularity means there are large online communities of developers who program in these languages, freely post code that you can copy to build common features, and host public online discussions that you can read for solutions to common issues.

Each of these languages also has popular and well documented frameworks. A *framework* is a collection of generic components, such as user accounts and authentication schemes that are reused frequently, allowing developers to build, test, and launch websites more quickly. You can think of a framework as similar to the collection of templates that comes with a word processor. You can design your resume, greeting card, or calendar from scratch, but using the built-in template for each of

these document types helps you create your document faster and with greater consistency. Popular frameworks for these languages include

- » Django and Flask for Python
- » Rails and Sinatra for Ruby
- » Zend and Laravel for PHP

## ***Coding Mobile Applications***

Mobile applications are hot topics today, in part because mobile apps such as WhatsApp and Instagram were acquired for billions of dollars, and mobile app companies like Rovio, makers of Angry Birds, and King Digital, makers of Candy Crush, generate annual revenues of hundreds of millions to billions of dollars.

When coding mobile applications, developers can either build

- » Mobile web applications, using HTML, CSS, and JavaScript.
- » Native mobile applications using a specific language. For example, Apple devices are programmed using Objective-C or Swift, and Android devices are programmed using Java.

The choice between these two options may seem simple, but there are a few factors at play. Consider the following:

- » Companies developing mobile web applications must make sure the mobile version works across different browsers, different screen sizes, and even different manufacturers, such as Apple, Samsung, RIM, and Microsoft. This results in thousands of possible phone combinations, which can greatly increase the complexity of testing needed before launch. Native mobile apps run only on one phone platform, so there is less variation to account for.
- » Despite running on only one platform, native mobile apps are more expensive and take longer to build than mobile web apps.

- » Some developers have reported that mobile web applications have more performance issues and load more slowly than native mobile applications.
- » As mentioned before, users are spending more time using native mobile applications and less time using browser-based mobile web apps.
- » Native mobile apps are distributed through an app store, which may require approval from the app store owner, whereas mobile web apps are accessible from any web browser. For example, Apple has a strict approval policy and takes up to six days to approve an app for inclusion in the Apple App Store, while Google has a more relaxed approval policy and takes two hours to approve an app.

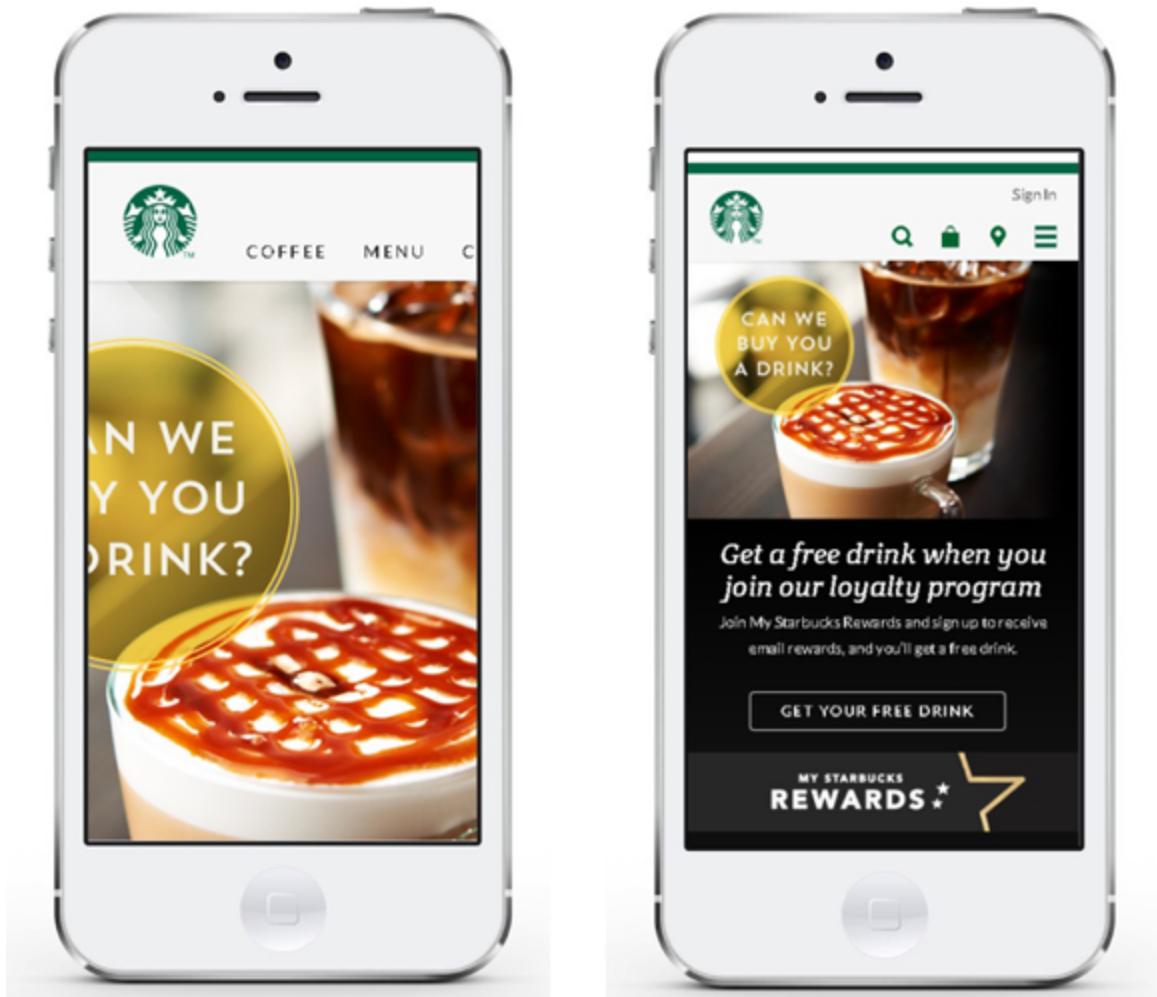


In one famous example of an app rejected from an app store, Apple blocked Google from launching the Google Voice app in the Apple App Store because it overlapped with Apple's own phone functionality. Google responded by creating a mobile web app accessible from any browser, and Apple could do nothing to block it.

If you're making this choice, consider the complexity of your application. Simple applications, like schedules or menus, can likely be cheaply developed with a mobile web app, whereas more complex applications, like messaging and social networking, may benefit from having a native mobile app. Even well-established technology companies struggle with this choice. Initially, Facebook and LinkedIn created mobile web applications, but both have since shifted to primarily promoting and supporting native mobile apps. The companies cited better speed, memory management, and developer tools as some of the reasons for making the switch.

## ***Building mobile web apps***

Although any website can be viewed with a mobile browser, those websites not optimized for mobile devices look a little weird, as if the regular website font size and image dimensions were decreased to fit on a mobile screen. (See [Figure 2-9](#).) By contrast, websites optimized for mobile devices have fonts that are readable, images that scale to the mobile device screen, and a vertical layout suitable for a mobile phone.



**FIGURE 2-9:** Left: starbucks.com not optimized for mobile. Right: starbucks.com optimized for mobile.

Building mobile web apps is done using HTML, CSS, and JavaScript. CSS controls the website appearance across devices based on the screen width. Screens with a small width, such as those on phones, are assigned one vertically-based layout, whereas screens with a larger width, like those on tablets, are assigned another, horizontally-based layout.

Because mobile web apps are accessed from the browser, and are not installed on the user's device, these web apps can't send push notifications (alerts) to your phone, run in the background while the browser is minimized, or communicate with other apps.

Although you can write the HTML, CSS, and JavaScript for your mobile web app from scratch, mobile web frameworks allow you to develop from a base of pre-written code, much like the frameworks for programming languages I mentioned earlier. These mobile web frameworks include a collection of generic components that are reused frequently, and allow developers to build, test, and launch websites more quickly. Twitter Bootstrap is one such mobile web framework, which I introduce in Chapter [8](#).

## ***Building native mobile apps***

Native mobile apps can be faster, more reliable, and look more polished than mobile web apps, as shown in [Figure 2-10](#). Built using Java for use on Android devices, and Objective-C or Swift for use on Apple devices (iOS), native mobile apps must be uploaded to an app store, which may require approvals. The main benefit of an app store is its centralized distribution, and the app may be featured in parts of the app store that can drive downloads. Also, since native mobile applications are programs that are installed on the mobile device, they can be used in more situations without an Internet connection. Finally, and most importantly, users appear to prefer native mobile apps to mobile web apps by a wide margin, one that continues to increase.



**FIGURE 2-10:** Left: facebook.com native mobile app. Right: facebook.com mobile web app.

Native mobile apps can take advantage of features that run in the background while the app is minimized, such as push notifications, and communicate with other apps, and these features are not available when creating a mobile web app. Additionally, native mobile apps perform better when handling graphics-intensive applications, such as games. To be clear, native mobile apps offer better performance and a greater number of features, but they require longer development times and are more expensive to build than mobile web apps.

There is an alternative way to build a native mobile app — a hybrid approach that involves building an app using HTML, CSS, and JavaScript, packaging that code using a “wrapper,” and then running the

code inside a native mobile app container. The most popular “wrapper” is a product called PhoneGap, and it recognizes specific JavaScript commands that allow access to device-level functionality that’s normally inaccessible to mobile web applications. After one version of the app is built, native mobile app containers can be launched for up to nine platforms including Apple, Android, Blackberry, and Windows Phone. The major advantage to using this hybrid approach is building your app once, and then releasing it to so many platforms simultaneously.



**TIP** Imagine you knew how to play the piano, but you wanted to also learn how to play the violin. One way you could do this is to buy a violin and start learning how to play. Another option is to buy a synthesizer keyboard, set the tone to violin, and play the keyboard to sound like a violin. This is similar to the hybrid approach, except, in this example, the piano is HTML, CSS, and JavaScript, the violin is a native iOS app, and the synthesizer keyboard is a wrapper like PhoneGap. Just like the synthesizer keyboard can be set to violin, cello, or guitar, so too can PhoneGap create native apps for Apple, Android, and other platforms.

## WHAT ABOUT ALL THOSE OTHER PROGRAMMING LANGUAGES? (C, JAVA, AND SO ON)

You may wonder why so many languages exist, and what they all do. Programming languages are created when a developer sees a need not addressed by the current languages. For example, Apple recently created the Swift programming language to make developing iPhone and iPad apps easier than Objective-C, the current programming language used. After they’re created, programming languages are very similar to spoken languages, like English or Latin. If developers code using the new language, then it thrives and grows in popularity, like English has over the last six centuries; otherwise, the programming language suffers the same fate as Latin, and becomes a dead language.

You may remember languages like C++, Java, and FORTRAN. These languages still exist today, and they’re used in more places than you might think. C++ is preferred

when speed and performance is extremely important, and is used to program web browsers, such as Chrome, Firefox, and Safari, along with games like Call of Duty, and Counter Strike. Java is preferred by many large-scale business, and is also the language used to program apps for the Android phone. Finally, FORTRAN is not as widespread or popular as it once was, but it is popular within the scientific community, and it powers some functionality in the financial sector, especially at some of the largest banks in the world, many of which continue to have old code.

As long as programmers think of faster and better ways to program, new programming languages will continue to be created, while older languages fall out of favor.

# Chapter 3

# Becoming a Programmer

---

## IN THIS CHAPTER

**Learning the process programmers follow when coding**

**Seeing the different roles people play to create a program**

**Picking tools to start coding offline or online**

---

*The way to get started is to quit talking and begin doing.*

— WALT DISNEY

Programming is a skill that can be learned by anyone. You might be a student in college wondering how to start learning, or a professional hoping to find a new job or improve your performance at your current job. In just about every case, the best way to learn how to code is to

- » Have a goal of what you would like to build.
- » Actually start coding.

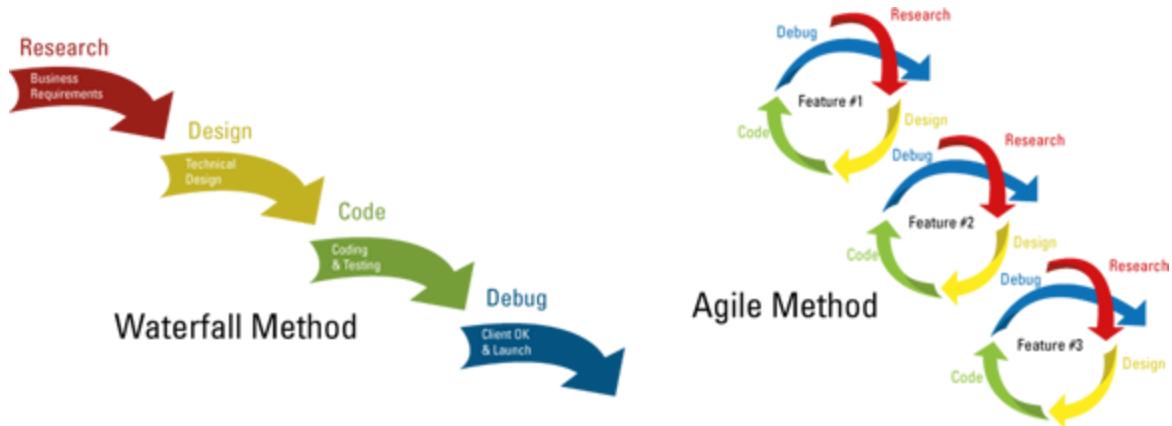
In this chapter, you discover the process every programmer follows when programming, and the different roles programmers play to create a program (or, more commonly these days, an “app”). You also learn the tools to use when coding either offline or online.

## *Writing Code Using a Process*

Writing code is much like painting, furniture making, or cooking — it isn’t always obvious how the end product was created. However, all programs, even mysterious ones, are created using a process. Two of the most popular processes used today are

- » **Waterfall:** A set of *sequential* steps followed to create a program.

» **Agile:** A set of *iterative* steps followed to create a program. (See [Figure 3-1](#).)



**FIGURE 3-1:** The waterfall and agile processes are two different ways of creating software.

Let me describe a specific scenario to explain how these two processes work. Imagine you want to build a restaurant app that does the following two things:

- » It displays restaurant information, such as the hours of operation and the menu.
- » It allows users to make or cancel reservations.

Using the waterfall method, you'd define everything the app needs to do: You'd design both the information-display and the reservation parts of the app, code the entire app, and then release the app to users. By contrast, using the agile method, you would define, design, and code only the information-display portion of the app, release it to users, and collect feedback. Based on the feedback collected, you would then redesign and make changes to the information-display to address major concerns. When you were satisfied with the information-display piece, you'd then define, design, and build the reservation part of the app. Again, you would collect feedback and refine the reservation feature to address major concerns.

The agile methodology stresses shorter development times, and has increased in popularity as the pace of technological change has increased. The waterfall approach, on the other hand, demands that the

developer code and release the entire app at once, but since completing a large project takes an enormous amount of time, changes in technology may have occurred before the finished product arrives. If you used the waterfall method to create our restaurant-app example, the technology to take user reservations may have changed by the time you get around to coding that portion of the app. Still, the waterfall approach remains popular in certain contexts, such as with financial and government software, where requirements and approval are obtained at the beginning of a project, and whose documentation of a project must be complete.



**TECHNICAL STUFF**

The healthcare.gov website, released in October 2013, was developed using a waterfall style process. Testing of all the code occurred in September 2013, when the entire system was assembled. Unfortunately, the tests occurred too late and were not comprehensive, resulting in not enough time to fix errors before launching the site publicly.

Regardless of whether you pick the agile or waterfall methodology, coding an app involves four steps:

1. Researching what you want to build
2. Designing your app
3. Coding your app
4. Debugging your code



**REMEMBER** On average, you will spend much more time researching, designing, and debugging your app than doing the actual coding, which is the opposite of what you may expect.

These steps are described in the sections that follow. You'll use this process when you create your own app in [Chapter 10](#).

## ***Researching what you want to build***

You have an idea for a web or mobile application, and usually it starts with “Wouldn’t it be great if … ” Before writing any code, it helps to do some investigating. Consider the possibilities in your project as you answer the following questions:

- » What similar website/app already exists? What technology was used to build it?
- » Which features should I include — and more importantly exclude — in my app?
- » Which providers can help create these features? For example, companies like Google, Yahoo, Microsoft, or others may have software already built that you could incorporate into your app.

To illustrate, consider the restaurant app I discussed earlier. When conducting market research and answering the three questions above, searching using Google is usually the best resource. Searching for *restaurant reservation app* shows existing restaurant apps that include OpenTable, SeatMe, and Livebookings. OpenTable, for example, allows users to reserve a table from restaurants displayed on a map using Google Maps.

In the restaurant app example, you’d want to research exactly what kinds of restaurant information you’d need to provide, and how extensive the reservation system portion of the app should be. In addition, for each of these questions you must decide whether to build the feature from scratch or use an existing provider. For example, when providing restaurant information do you want to just show name, cuisine, address, telephone number, and hours of operation, or do you also want to show restaurant menus? When showing restaurant data, do you prefer extensive coverage of a single geographical area, or do you want national coverage even if that means you’d cover fewer restaurants in any specific area?

## ***Designing your app***

Your app's visual design incorporates all of your research and describes exactly how your users will interact with every page and feature.

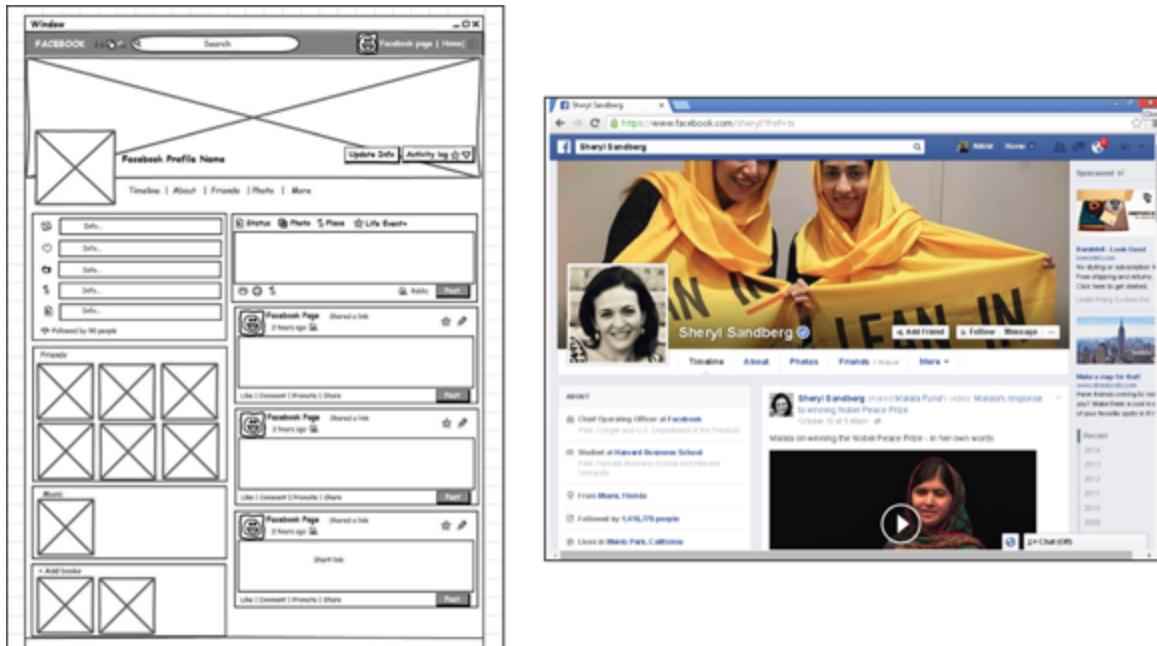
Because your users will be accessing your site from desktop, laptop, and mobile devices, you'd want to make sure you create a responsive (multi-device) design and carefully consider how your site will look on all these devices. At this stage of the process, a general web designer, illustrator, or user interface specialist will help create visual designs for the app.



**TIP** Many responsive app designs and templates can be found on the Internet and used freely. For specific examples, see [Chapter 8](#), or search Google using the query *responsive website design examples*.

There are two types of visual designs (see [Figure 3-2](#)):

- » **Wireframes:** These are low fidelity website drawings that show structurally the ways your content and your site's interface interact.
- » **Mockups:** These are high fidelity website previews that include colors, images, and logos.



**FIGURE 3-2:** Wireframes (left) are simple site renderings, whereas mockups (right) show full site previews.



**TIP** Balsamiq is a popular tool used to create wireframes, and Photoshop is a popular tool to create mockups. However, you can avoid paying for additional software by using PowerPoint (PC), Keynote (Mac), or the free and open-source OpenOffice to create your app designs.



TECHNICAL STUFF

Professional designers create mockups with Adobe Photoshop and use *layers*, which isolate individual site elements. A properly created layered Photoshop file helps developers more easily write the code for those website elements.

In addition to visual design, complex apps will also have technical designs and decisions to finalize. For example, if your app stores and retrieves user data you will need a database to perform these tasks. Initial decisions here will include the type of database to add, the specific database provider to use, and the best way to integrate the database into the application. Additionally, developers must design the database by choosing the fields to store. The process is similar to the process of creating a spreadsheet to model a company's income — you first decide the number of columns to use, and whether you'll include fields as a percentage of revenue or a numerical value, and so on. Similarly, other features like user logins or credit card payments all require you to make choices on how to implement these features.

## ***Coding your app***

With research and design done, you are now ready to code your application. In everyday web development, you would begin by choosing which pages and features to start coding. As you work through the projects in this book, however, I will guide you on what to code first.

Knowing how much to code and when to stop can be tough. Developers call the first iteration of an app the *minimum viable product* — meaning

you've coded just enough to test your app with real users and receive feedback. If no one likes your app or thinks it's useful, it's best to find out as soon as possible.

An app is the sum of its features, and for any individual feature it's a good idea to write the minimum code necessary and then add to it. For example, your restaurant app may have a toolbar at the top of the page with drop-down menus. Instead of trying to create the whole menu at once, it's better to just create the menu, and then later create the drop-down menu effect.

Projects can involve front-end developers, who'll code the appearance of the app, and back-end developers, who'll code the logic and create databases. A "full stack developer" is one who can do both front-end and back-end development. On large projects it's more common to see specialized front-end and back-end developers, along with project managers who ensure everyone is communicating with each other and adhering to the schedule so the project finishes on time.

## ***Debugging your code***

Debugging is going to be a natural part of any application. The computer always follows your instructions exactly and yet no program ever works as you expect it to. Debugging can be frustrating. Three of the more common mistakes to watch out for are

- » **Syntax errors:** These are errors caused by misspelling words/commands, by omitting characters, or by including extra characters. Some languages, such as HTML and CSS, are forgiving of these errors and your code will still work even with some syntax errors, whereas other languages, such as JavaScript, are more particular and your code won't run when any such error is present.
- » **Logic errors:** These are harder to fix. With logic errors, your syntax is correct but the program behaves differently than you expected, such as when the prices of the items in the shopping cart of an e-commerce site do not sum up to the correct total.

» **Display errors:** These are common mainly to web applications. With display errors, your program might run and work properly, but it won't appear properly. Web apps today run on many devices, browsers, and screen sizes, so extensive testing is the only way to catch these types of errors.



TECHNICAL STUFF

The word *debugging* was popularized in the 1940s by Grace Hopper, who fixed a computer error by literally removing a moth from a computer.

## *Picking Tools for the Job*

Now you're ready to actually start coding. You can develop websites either offline, by working with an editor, or online, with a web service such as Codecademy.com. Especially if you have never done any coding before, I would strongly recommend you code with access to an Internet connection using the Codecademy.com platform because you do not have to download and install any software to start coding, you do not have to find a web host to serve your web pages, and you do not need to upload your web page to a web host. As you code, the Codecademy.com platform will do these tasks for you automatically.

### *Working offline*

To code offline, you'll need the following:

» **Editor:** This refers to the text editor you'll use to write all the code you learn in this book, including HTML, CSS, JavaScript, Ruby, Python, and PHP. The editor you use will depend on the type of computer you have:

- *PC:* Use the pre-installed Notepad, or install Notepad++, a free editor available for download at <http://notepad-plus-plus.org>.

- **Mac:** Use the pre-installed TextEdit or install TextMate 2.0, an open-source editor available for download at <http://macromates.com>.
- » **Browser:** Many browsers exist, including Firefox, Safari, Internet Explorer, and Opera; however, I recommend you use Chrome, because it offers the most support for the latest HTML standards. It's available for download at [www.google.com/chrome/browser](http://www.google.com/chrome/browser).
- » **Web host:** In order for your website code to be accessible to everyone on the Internet, you need to host your website online. Freemium web hosts include Weebly ([www.weebly.com](http://www.weebly.com)) and Wix ([www.wix.com](http://www.wix.com)); these sites offer basic hosting but charge for additional features like additional storage or removing ads. Google provides free web hosting through Sites ([sites.google.com](http://sites.google.com)) and Drive ([drive.google.com](http://drive.google.com)).

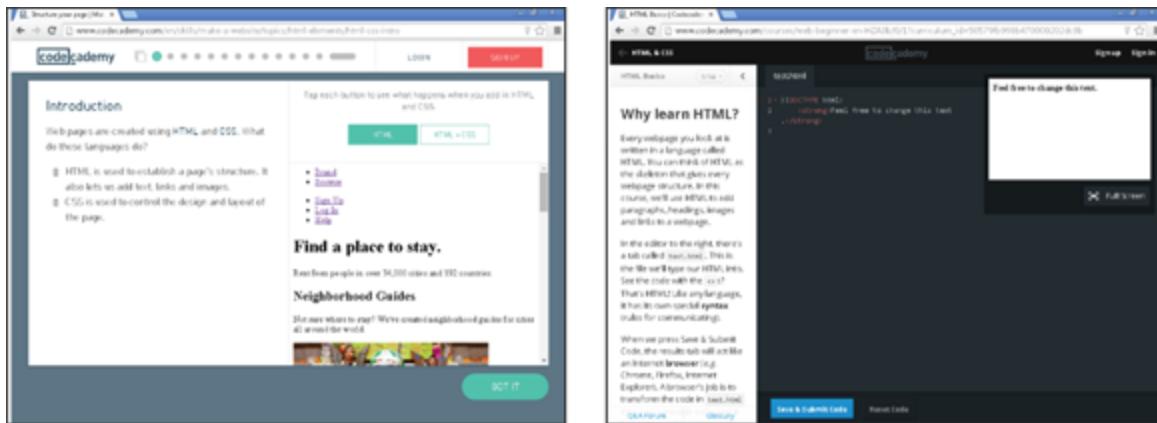
## ***Working online with Codecademy.com***

Codecademy.com is the easiest way to start learning how to code online, and lessons from the site form the basis of this book. The site doesn't require you to install a code editor or sign up for a web host before you start coding, and it's free to individual users like you.

The site can be accessed using any up-to-date modern browser, but Google Chrome or Mozilla Firefox is recommended.

### ***Touring the learning environment***

After signing up or signing into the site, you will either see an interactive card or the coding interface, depending on the content you learn. (See [Figure 3-3](#).)



**FIGURE 3-3:** Codecademy.com interactive cards (left) and the coding interface (right).

The interactive cards allow you to click toggle buttons to demonstrate effects of pre-written code, whereas the coding interface has an coding editor and a live preview window that shows you the effects of the code entered into the coding editor.

The coding interface has four parts:

- » Background information on the upper-left side of the screen tells you about the coding task you are about to do.
- » The lower-left side of the screen shows instructions to complete in the coding window.
- » The coding window allows you to follow the exercise instructions and write code. The coding window also includes a preview screen that shows a live preview of your code as you type.
- » After completing the coding instructions, press Save & Submit or Run. If you successfully followed the instructions, you advance to the next exercise; otherwise, the site will give you a helpful error message and a hint.

The interactive cards have three parts:

- » Background information about a coding concept.
- » A coding window to complete one simple coding task. A preview window also shows a live preview of your code as you type.

- » After completing the coding instructions, press the Got It button. You can review any previous interactive cards by clicking the Go Back button.

### ***Receiving support from the community***

If you run into a problem or have a bug you cannot fix, try the following steps:

- » Click on the hint underneath the instructions.
- » Use the Q&A Forums to post your problem or question, and review questions others have posted.
- » Tweet me at [@nikhilgabraham](https://twitter.com/nikhilgabraham) with your question or problem, and include the hashtag `#codingFD` at the end of your tweet.

## Part 2

# Building the Silent and Interactive Web Page

## IN THIS PART ...

Place content on webpages with HTML, and styling content with CSS.

Structure your website layout with HTML and CSS.

Create your first webpage — the Airbnb homepage.

Add interactivity to webpages with JavaScript.

Access real live data with APIs.

# Chapter 4

# Exploring Basic HTML

---

## IN THIS CHAPTER

**Learning the purpose of HTML**

**Understanding basic HTML structure**

**Adding headlines, paragraphs, hyperlinks, and images**

**Formatting web page text**

**Creating a basic HTML website**

---

*You affect the world by what you browse.*

— TIM BERNERS-LEE

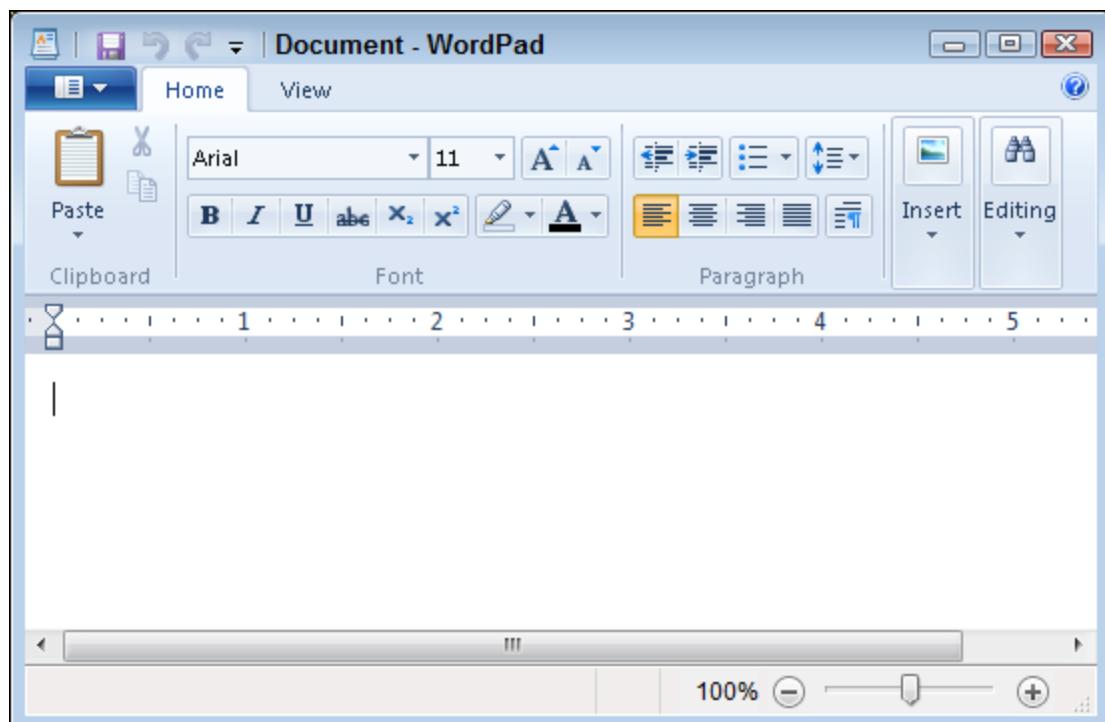
HTML, or *HyperText Markup Language*, is used in every single web page you browse on the Internet. Because the language is so foundational, a good first step for you is to start learning HTML.

In this chapter, you learn HTML basics, including basic HTML structure and how to make text appear in the browser. Next, you learn how to format text and display images in a web browser. Finally, you create your own, and possibly first, HTML website. You may find that HTML without any additional styling appears to be very plain, and does not look like the websites you normally visit on the Internet. After you code a basic website using HTML, you will use additional languages in later chapters to add even more style to your websites.

## **What Does HTML Do?**

HTML instructs the browser on how to display text and images in a web page. Recall the last time you created a document with a word processor. Whether you use Microsoft Word or Wordpad, Apple Pages, or another application, your word processor has a main window in which you type

text, and a menu or toolbar with multiple options to structure and style that text (see [Figure 4-1](#)). Using your word processor, you can create headings, write in paragraphs, insert pictures, or underline text. Similarly, you can use HTML to structure and style text that appears on websites.



[FIGURE 4-1:](#) The layout of a word processor.

Markup language documents, like HTML documents, are just plain text files. Unlike documents created with a word processor, you can view an HTML file using any web browser on any type of computer.



**REMEMBER** HTML files are plain text files that will appear styled only when viewed with a browser. By contrast, the rich text file format used by word processors add unseen formatting commands to the file. As a result, HTML written in a rich text file won't render correctly in the browser.

# Understanding HTML Structure

HTML follows a few rules to ensure that a website will always display in the same way no matter which browser or computer is used. Once you understand these rules, you'll be better able to predict how the browser will display your HTML pages, and to diagnose your mistakes when (not if!) the browser displays your web page differently than you expected. Since its creation, HTML has evolved to include more effects, but the following basic structural elements remain unchanged.



**TIP** You can use any browser to display your HTML files, though I strongly recommend you download, install, and use Chrome or Firefox. Both of these browsers are updated often, are generally fast, and support and consistently render the widest variety of HTML tags.

## Identifying elements

HTML uses special text keywords called *elements* to structure and style a website. The browser recognizes an element and applies its effect if the following three conditions exist:

- » The element is a letter, word, or phrase with special meaning. For example, `h1` is an element recognized by the browser to apply a header effect, with bold text and an enlarged font size.
- » The element is enclosed with a left-angle bracket (`<`) and right-angle bracket (`>`). An element enclosed in this way is called a *tag* (such as, for example, `<h1>`).
- » An opening tag (`<element>`) is followed by a closing tag (`</element>`). Note that the closing tag differs from the opening tag by the addition of a forward slash after the first left bracket and before the element (such as, for example, `</h1>`).



**REMEMBER** Some HTML tags are self-closing, and don't need separate closing tags, only a forward slash in the opening tag. For more about this, see the section, “[Getting Familiar with Common HTML Tasks and Tags](#),” later in this chapter.

When all three conditions are met, the text between the opening and closing tags is styled with the tag's defined effect. If even one of these conditions is not met, the browser just displays plain text.

For a better understanding of these three conditions, see the example code below:

```
<h1>This is a big heading with all three conditions</h1>
h1 This is text without the < and > sign surrounding the tag /h1
<rockstar>This is text with a tag that has no meaning to the
    browser</rockstar>
This is regular text
```

You can see how a browser would display this code in [Figure 4-2](#).



**FIGURE 4-2:** The example code displayed in a browser.

The browser applies a header effect to “This is a big heading with all three conditions” because `h1` is a header tag and all three conditions for a valid HTML tag exist:

- » The browser recognizes the `h1` element.

- » The `h1` element is surrounded with a left (`<`) and right angle bracket (`>`).
- » The opening tag (`<h1>`) is followed by text and then a closing tag (`</h1>`).



**TIP** Notice how the `h1` tag itself does not display in the heading. The browser will never display the actual text of an element in a properly formatted HTML tag.

The remaining lines of code display as plain text because they each are missing one of the conditions. On the second line of code, the `<h1>` tag is missing the left and right brackets, which violates the second condition. The third line of code violates the first condition because `rockstar` is not a recognized HTML element. (Once you finish this chapter, however, you may feel like a rockstar!) Finally, the fourth line of code displays as plain text because it has no opening tag preceding the text, and no closing tag following the text, which violates the third condition.



**REMEMBER** Every left angle-bracket must be followed after the element with a right angle-bracket. In addition, every opening HTML tag must be followed with a closing HTML tag.

Over 100 HTML elements exist, and we cover the most important elements in the following sections. For now, don't worry about memorizing individual element names.



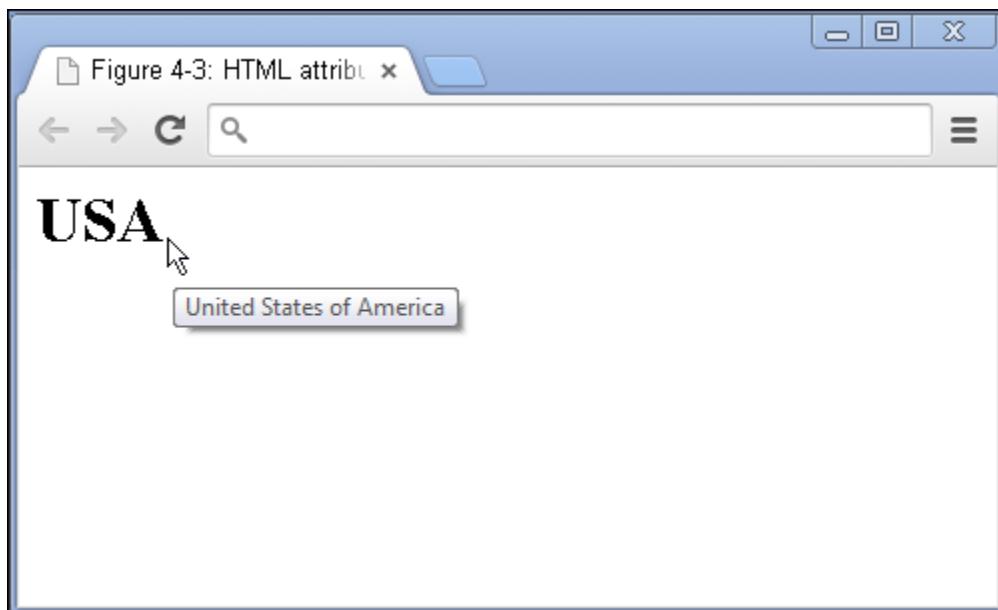
**WARNING** HTML is a forgiving language, and may properly apply an effect even if you're missing pieces of code, like a closing tag. However, if you leave in too many errors, your page won't display correctly.

## Featuring your best attribute

Attributes provide additional ways to modify the behavior of an element or specify additional information. Usually, but not always, you set an attribute equal to a value enclosed in quotes. Here's an example using the `title` attribute and the `hidden` attribute:

```
<h1 title="United States of America">USA</h1>
<h1 hidden>New York City</h1>
```

The `title` attribute provides advisory information about the element that appears when the mouse cursor hovers over the affected text (in other words, a *tooltip*). In this example, the word `USA` is styled as a header using the `<h1>` tag with a `title` attribute set equal to "United States of America". In a browser, then, when you place your mouse cursor over the word `USA`, the text `United States of America` displays as a tooltip. (See [Figure 4-3](#).)



**FIGURE 4-3:** A heading with title attribute has a tooltip.

The `hidden` attribute indicates that the element is not relevant, so the browser won't render any elements with this attribute. In this example, the words `New York City` never appear in the browser window because the `hidden` attribute is in the opening `<h1>` tag. More practically, `hidden`

attributes are often used to hide fields from users so they can't edit them. For example, an RSVP website may want to include but hide from user view a date and time field.



TECHNICAL STUFF

The hidden attribute is new in HTML5, which means it may not work on some older browsers.

You don't have to use one attribute at a time. You can include multiple attributes in the opening HTML tag, like this:

```
<h1 title="United States of America" lang="en">USA</h1>
```

In this example, I used the `title` attribute, and the `lang` attribute, setting it equal to "en" to specify that the content of the element is in the English language.



REMEMBER When including multiple attributes, separate each attribute with one space.

Keep the following rules in mind when using attributes:

- » If using an attribute, always include the attribute in the opening HTML tag.
- » Multiple attributes can modify a single element.
- » If the attribute has a value, then use the equal sign (=) and enclose the value in quotes.

## ***Standing head, title, and body above the rest***

HTML files are structured in a specific way so browsers can correctly interpret the file's information. Every HTML file has the same five elements: four whose opening and closing tags appear once and only once, and one that appears once and doesn't need a closing tag. These are as follows:

- » `!DOCTYPE html` must appear first in your HTML file, and it appears only once. This tag lets browsers know which version of HTML you are using. In this case, it's the latest version, HTML5. No closing tag is necessary for this element.



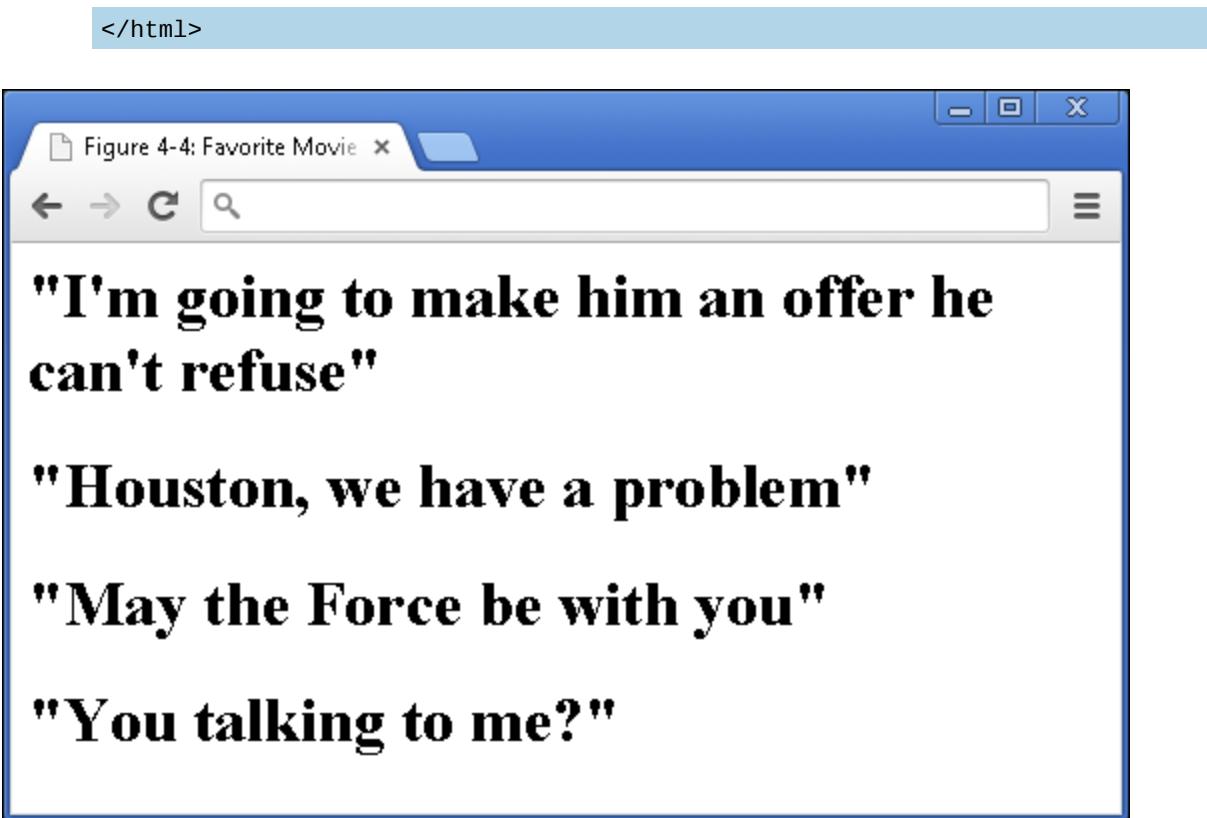
TECHNICAL STUFF

For HTML4 websites, the first line in the HTML file would read `<!DOCTYPE HTML PUBLIC "-//W3C//DTD HTML 4.01//EN">`  
[“http://www.w3.org/TR/html4/strict.dtd”](http://www.w3.org/TR/html4/strict.dtd)

- » `html` represents the *root* or beginning of an HTML document. The `<html>` tag is followed by first an opening and closing `<head>` tag, and then an opening and closing `<body>` tag.
- » `head` contains other elements, which specify general information about the page, including the title.
- » `title` defines the title in the browser's title bar or page tab. Search engines like Google use `title` to rank websites in search results.
- » `body` contains the main content of an HTML document. Text, images, and other content listed between the opening and closing `body` tag is displayed by the browser.

Here is an example of a properly structured HTML file with these five tags (see [Figure 4-4](#)):

```
<!DOCTYPE html>
<html>
<head>
  <title>Favorite Movie Quotes</title>
</head>
<body>
  <h1>"I'm going to make him an offer he can't refuse"</h1>
  <h1>"Houston, we have a problem"</h1>
  <h1>"May the Force be with you"</h1>
  <h1>"You talking to me?"</h1>
</body>
```



**FIGURE 4-4:** A web page created with basic HTML elements.



**TIP** Using spaces to indent and separate your tags is highly recommended. It helps you and others read and understand your code. These spaces are only for you and any other human that reads the code, however. Your browser won't care. As far as your browser is concerned, you could run all your tags together on one line. (Don't do this, though. The next person that reads your code will be most unhappy.) HTML does recognize and display the first whitespace character in text between opening and closing HTML tags.

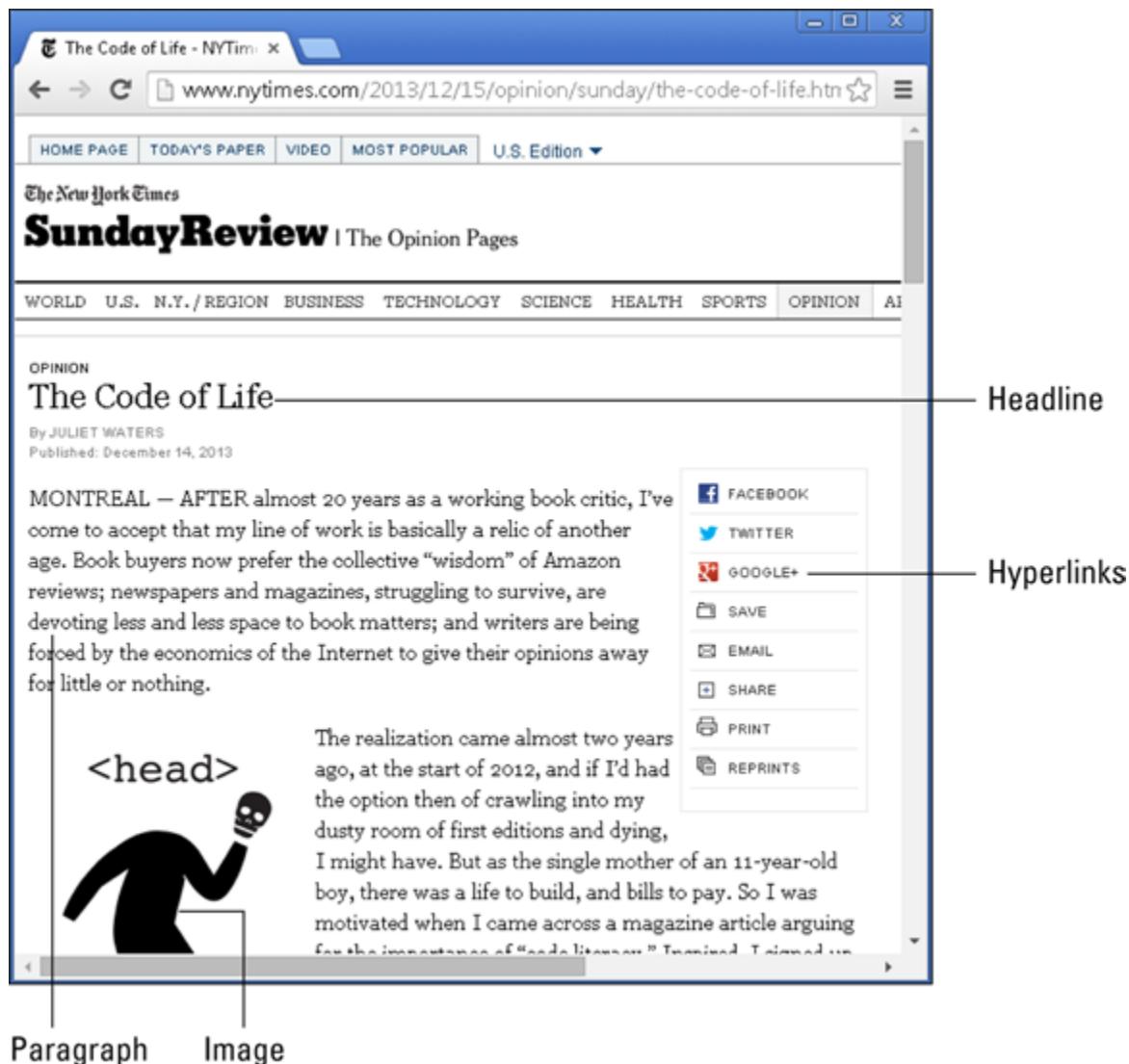


**REMEMBER** Our example had many h1 tags but only one opening and closing html, head, title, and body tag.

# *Getting Familiar with Common HTML Tasks and Tags*

Your browser can interpret over a hundred HTML tags, but most websites use just a few tags to do most of the work within the browser. To understand this, let's try a little exercise: Think of your favorite news website. Have one in mind? Now connect to the Internet, open your browser, and type in the address of that website. Bring this book with you, and take your time — I can wait!

In the event you can't access the Internet right now, take a look at the article from my favorite news website, *The New York Times*, found in [Figure 4-5.](#)



**FIGURE 4-5:** A New York Times article with headline, paragraphs, hyperlinks, and images.

Look closely at the news website on your screen (or look at mine). Four HTML elements are used to create the majority of the page:

- » **Headlines:** Headlines are displayed in bold and have a larger font size than the surrounding text.
- » **Paragraphs:** Each story is organized into paragraphs with white space dividing each paragraph.
- » **Hyperlinks:** The site's homepage and article pages have links to other stories, and links to share the story on social networks like Facebook, Twitter, and Google+.

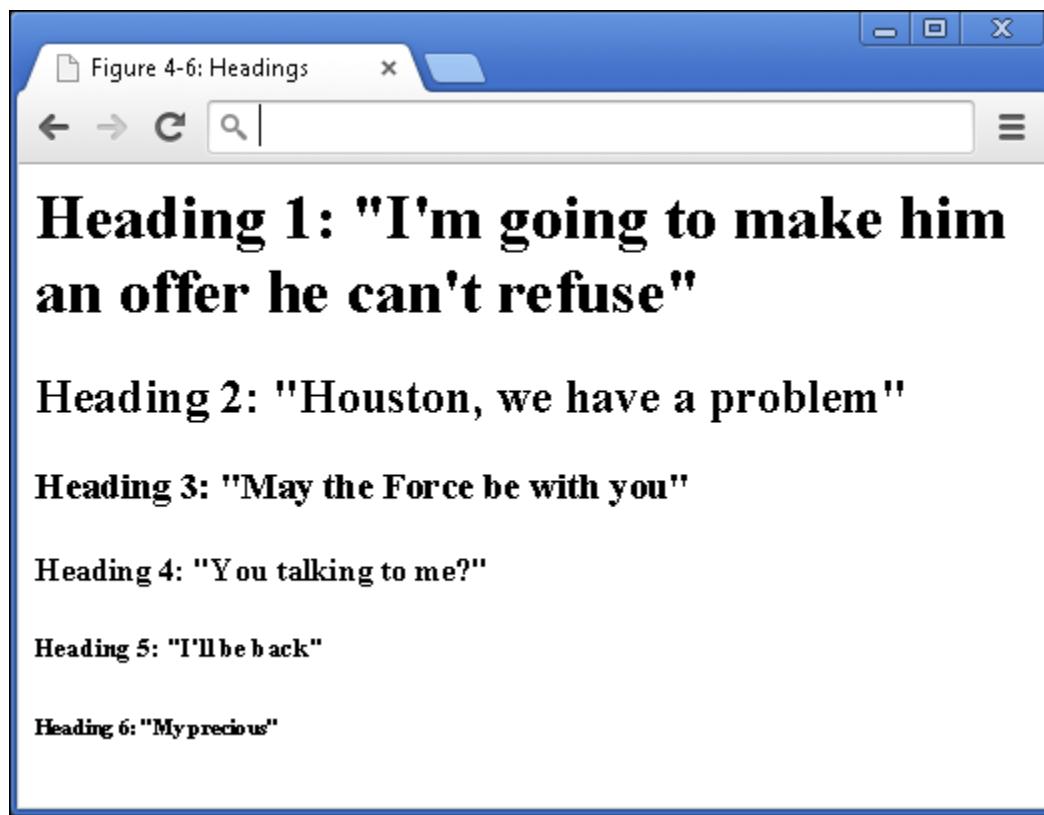
- » **Images:** Writers place images throughout the story, but also look for site images like icons and logos.

In the following sections I explain how to write code to create these common HTML features.

## **Writing headlines**

Use headlines to describe a section of your page. HTML has six levels of headings (see [Figure 4-6](#)):

- » h1, which is used for the most important headings
- » h2, which is used for subheadings
- » h3 to h6, which are used for less important headings



**FIGURE 4-6:** Headings created using elements h1 through h6.

The browser renders h1 headings with a font size larger than h2's, which in turn is larger than h3's. Headings start with an opening heading tag,

the heading text, and then the closing heading tag, as follows:

```
<h1>Heading text here</h1>
```

Here are some additional code examples showing various headings:

```
<h1>Heading 1: "I'm going to make him an offer he can't refuse"</h1>
<h2>Heading 2: "Houston, we have a problem"</h2>
<h3>Heading 3: "May the Force be with you"</h3>
<h4>Heading 4: "You talking to me?"</h4>
<h5>Heading 5: "I'll be back"</h5>
<h6>Heading 6: "My precious"</h6>
```



**REMEMBER** Always close what you open. With headings, remember to include a closing heading tag, such as `</h1>`.

## *Organizing text in paragraphs*

To display text in paragraphs you can use the `p` element: Place an opening `<p>` tag before the paragraph, and a closing tag after it. The `p` element takes text and inserts a line break after the closing tag.



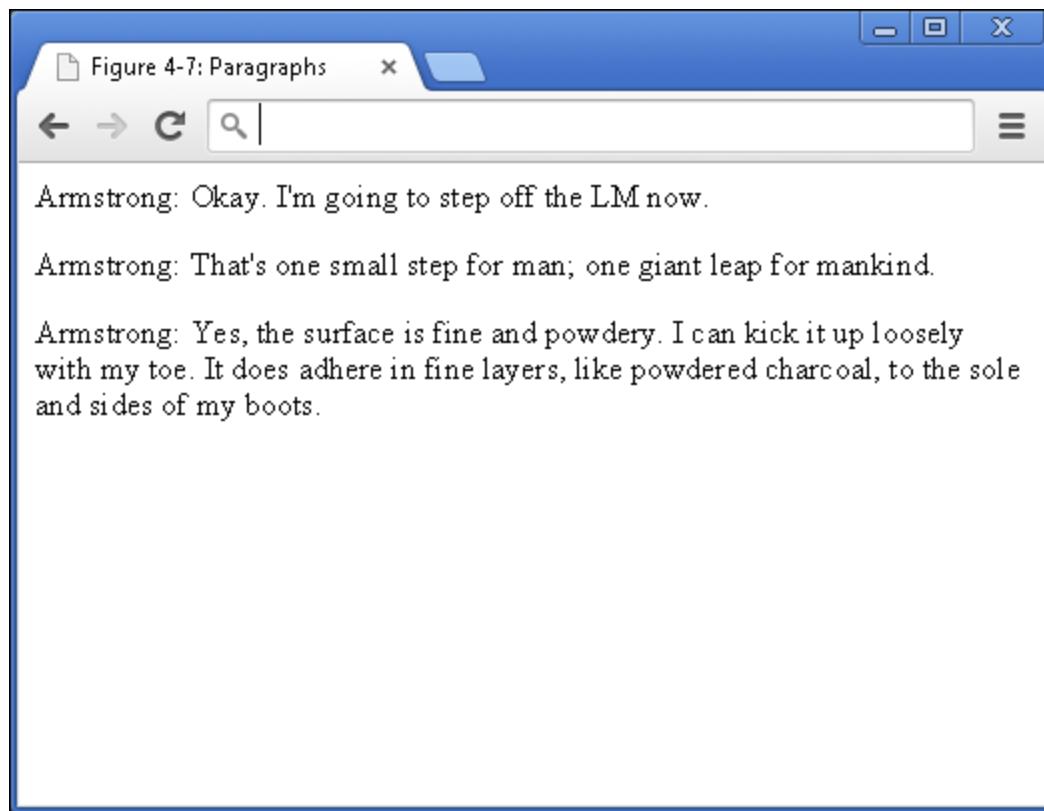
**TIP** To insert a single line break after any element, use the `<br>` tag. The `<br>` tag is self-closing so no closing tag is needed, and `</br>` is not used.

Paragraphs start with an opening paragraph tag, the paragraph text, and then the closing paragraph tag:

```
<p>Paragraph text here</p>
```

Some additional examples of coding a paragraph (see [Figure 4-7](#)):

```
<p>Armstrong: Okay. I'm going to step off the LM now.</p>
<p>Armstrong: That's one small step for man; one giant leap for mankind.</p>
<p>Armstrong: Yes, the surface is fine and powdery. I can kick it up loosely
  with my toe. It does adhere in fine layers, like powdered charcoal, to the
  sole and sides of my boots.</p>
```



**FIGURE 4-7:** Text displayed in paragraphs using the `p` element.

## ***Linking to your (heart's) content***

Hyperlinks are one of HTML's most valuable features. Web pages that include hyperlinked references to other sources allow the reader to access those sources with just a click, a big advantage over printed pages.

Hyperlinks have two parts:

- » **Link destination:** The web page the browser visits once the link is clicked.

To define the link destination in HTML, start with an opening anchor tag (`<a>`) that has an `href` attribute. Then, add the value of the `href` attribute, which is the website the browser will go to once the link is clicked.

- » **Link description:** The words used to describe the link.

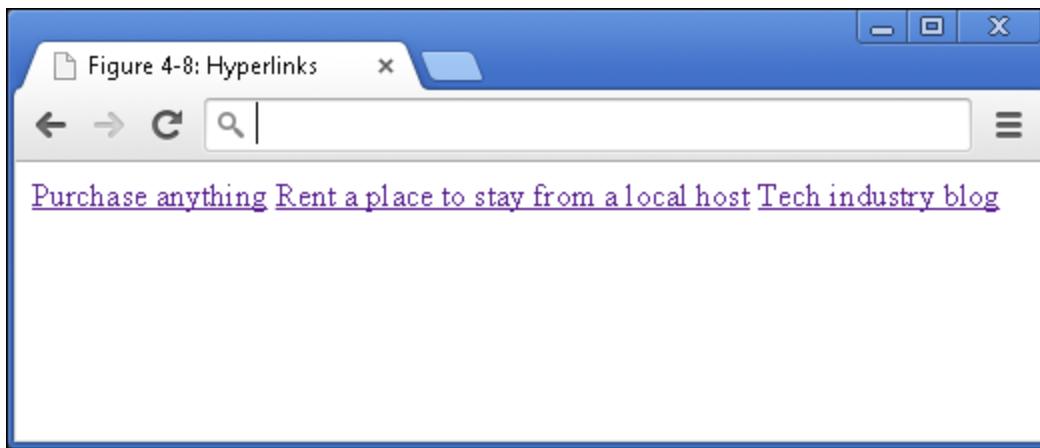
To do this, add text to describe the link after the opening anchor tag, and then add the closing anchor tag.

The resulting HTML should look something like this:

```
<a href="website url">Link description</a>
```

Three more examples of coding a hyperlink (see [Figure 4-8](#)):

```
<a href="http://www.amazon.com">Purchase anything</a>
<a href="http://www.airbnb.com">Rent a place to stay from a local host</a>
<a href="http://www.techcrunch.com">Tech industry blog</a>
```



**FIGURE 4-8:** Three hyperlinks created using the `a` element.

When rendering hyperlinks, the browser, by default, will underline the link and color the link blue. To change these default properties, see [Chapter 6](#).



**REMEMBER** The `<a>` tag does not include a line break after the link.



**TECHNICAL STUFF**

Google's search engine ranks web pages based on the words used to describe a web page between the opening and closing `<a>` tags. This improved on search results from previous methods, which relied primarily on analyzing page content.

## **Adding images**

Images spruce up otherwise plain HTML text pages. To include an image on your web page — your own or someone else's — you must obtain the image's web address. Websites like Google Images ([images.google.com](http://images.google.com)) and Flickr ([www.flickr.com](http://www.flickr.com)) allow you to search for online images based on keywords. When you find an image you like, right-click on the image, and select Copy Image URL.



**WARNING** Make sure you have permission to use an online image. Flickr has tools that allow you to search for images with few to no license restrictions. Additionally, websites pay to host images, and incur charges when a website directly links to an image. For this reason, some websites do not allow *hotlinking*, or linking directly from third-party websites (like you) to an image.

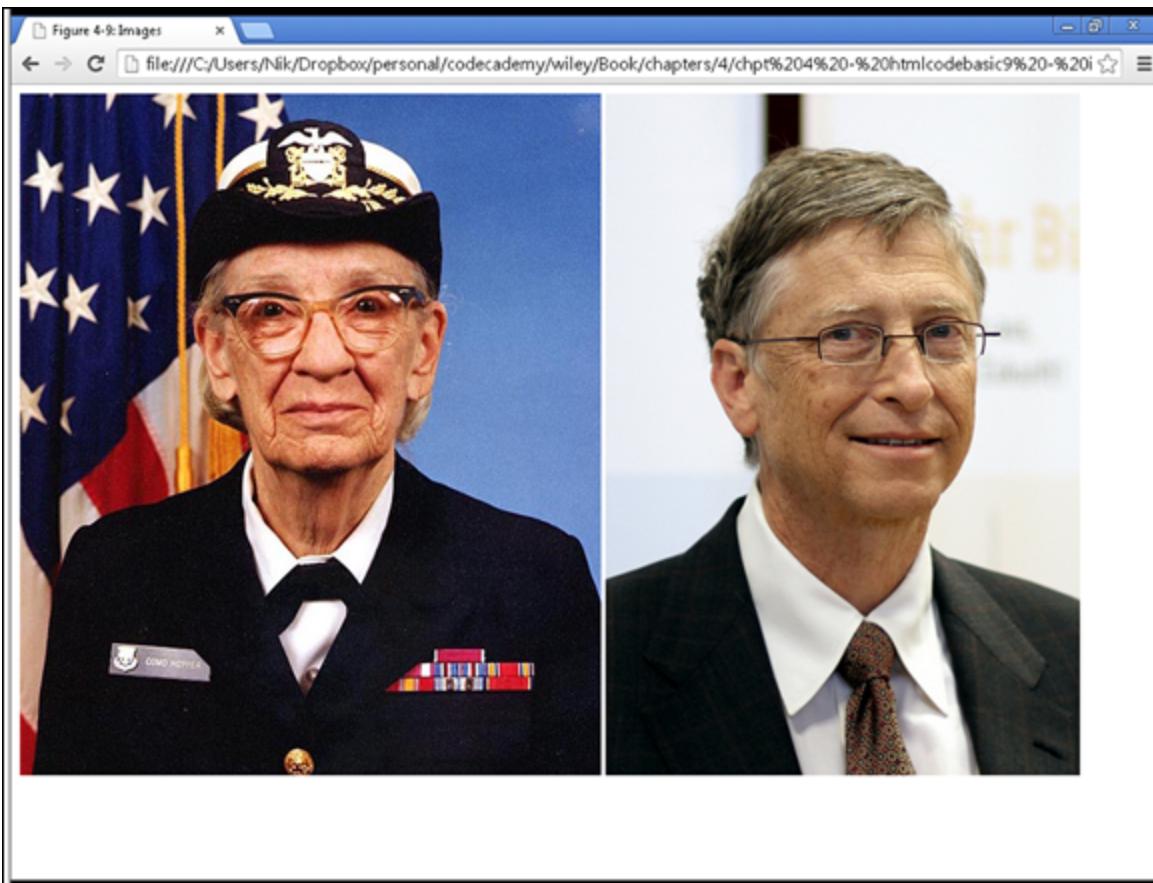


**TIP** If you want to use an image that has not already been uploaded to the Internet, you can use a site like [www.imgur.com](http://www.imgur.com) to upload the image. After uploading, you will be able to copy the image URL and use it in your HTML.

To include an image, start with an opening image tag `<img>`, define the source of the image using the `src` attribute, and include a forward slash at the end of the opening tag to close the tag (see [Figure 4-9](#)):

```
  

```



**FIGURE 4-9:** Images of Grace Hopper, a US Navy rear admiral, and Bill Gates, the co-founder of Microsoft, rendered using `<img>`.



**TIP** The image tag is self-closing, which means a separate `</img>` closing image tag is not used. The image tag is one of the exceptions to the always-close-what-you-open rule!

## ***Styling Me Pretty***

Now that you know how to display basic text and images in a browser, you should understand how to further customize and style them. HTML has basic capabilities to style content, and later chapters show you how to use CSS to style and position your content down to the last pixel. Here, however, I explain how to do some basic text formatting in HTML, and then you'll build your first web page.

## ***Highlighting with bold, italics, underline, and strikethrough***

HTML allows for basic text styling using the following elements:

- » **strong** marks important text, which the browser displays as bold.
- » **em** marks emphasized text, which the browser displays as italicized.
- » **u** marks text as underlined.
- » **del** marks deleted text, which the browser displays as strikethrough.



**REMEMBER** The underline element is not typically used for text because it can lead to confusion. Hyperlinks, after all, are underlined by default.

To use these elements, start with the element's opening tag, followed by the affected text, and then a closing tag, as follows:

```
<element name>Affected text</element name>
```

Some examples (see [Figure 4-10](#)):

```
Grace Hopper, <strong> a US Navy rear admiral </strong>, popularized the term "debugging."  
Bill Gates co-founded a company called <em>Microsoft</em>.  
Stuart Russell and Peter Norvig wrote a book called <u>Artificial Intelligence: A Modern Approach</u>.  
Mark Zuckerberg created a website called <del>Nosebook</del> Facebook.  
Steve Jobs co-founded a company called <del><em>Peach</em></del><em>Apple</em>
```



**FIGURE 4-10:** Sentences formatted using bold, italics, underline, and strikethrough.



**TIP** You can apply multiple effects to text by using multiple HTML tags. Always close the most recently opened tag first and then the next most recently used tag. For an example, look at the last line of code in [Figure 4-10](#), and the tags applied to the word Peach.

## ***Raising and lowering text with superscript and subscript***

Reference works like *Wikipedia*, and technical papers often use superscript for footnotes and subscript for chemical names. To apply these styles, use the elements

- » sup for text marked as superscript
- » sub for text marked as subscript

To use these elements, start with the element's opening tag, followed by the affected text, and then a closing tag as follows:

```
<element name>Affected text</element name>
```

Two examples (see [Figure 4-11](#)):

```
<p>The University of Pennsylvania announced to the public the first  
electronic general-purpose computer, named ENIAC, on February 14, 1946.  
<sup>1</sup></p>
```

```
<p>The Centers for Disease Control and Prevention recommends drinking several glasses of H2O per day.</p>
```



**FIGURE 4-11:** Text formatted to show superscript and subscript effects.



**TIP** When using the superscript element to mark footnotes, use an  anchor tag to link directly to the footnote so the reader can view the footnote easily.

## ***Building Your First Website Using HTML***

Now that you have learned the basics, you can put that knowledge to use. You can practice directly on your computer by following these steps:

- 1. Open any text editor, such as Notepad (on a PC) or TextEdit (on a Mac).**

On a PC running Microsoft Windows, you can access Notepad by clicking the Start button and selecting Run; in the search box, type *Notepad*. On a Macintosh, select the Spotlight Search (hourglass icon on the top-right corner of the toolbar), and type *TextEdit*.

- 2. Enter into the text editor any of the code samples you have seen in this chapter, or create your own combination of the code.**

3. Once you have finished, save the file and make sure to include “.html” at the end of the filename.
4. Double-click on the file, which should open in your default browser.

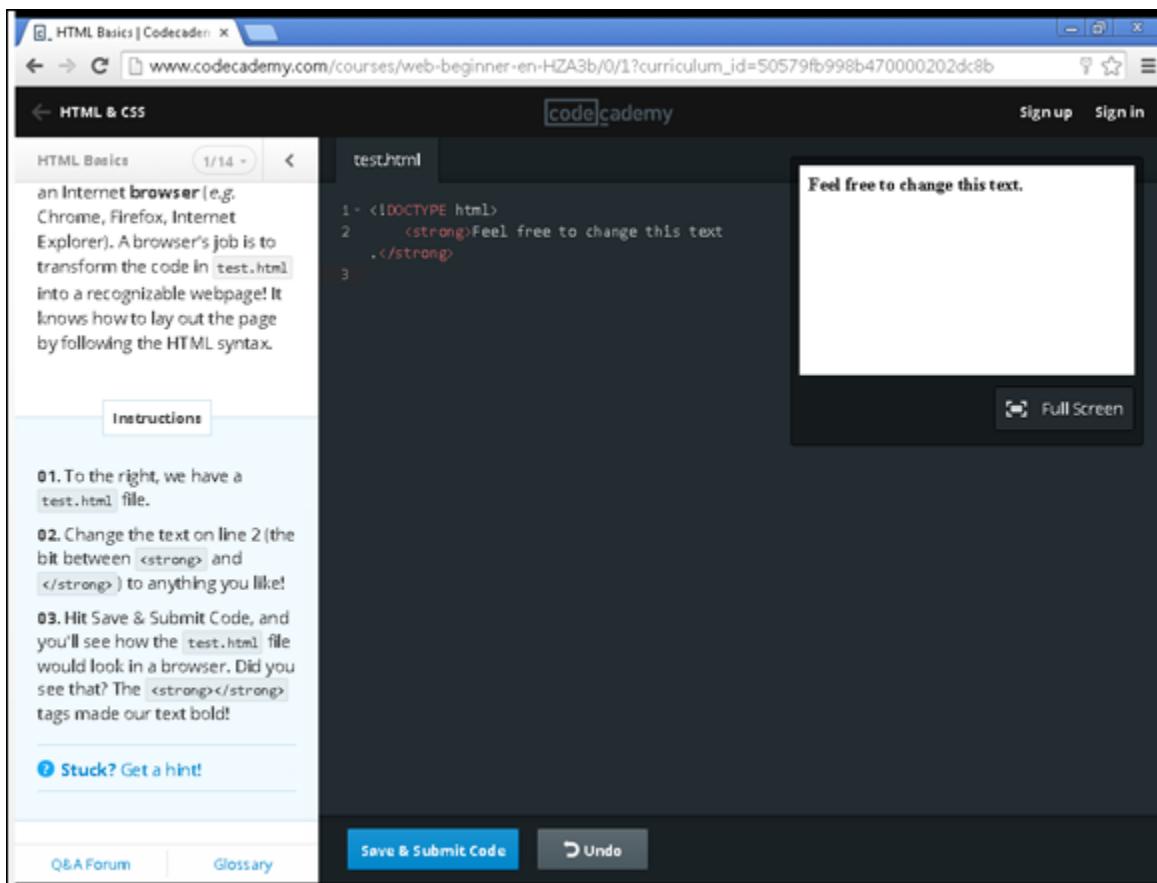


**TIP** You can download at no cost specialized text editors that have been created specifically for writing code. For PCs, you can download Notepad++ at [www.notepad-plus-plus.org](http://www.notepad-plus-plus.org). For Mac computers, you can download TextMate at <http://macromates.com/download>.

If you would like to practice your HTML online, you can use the Codecademy website. Codecademy is a free website created in 2011 to allow anyone to learn how to code right in the browser, without installing or downloading any software. (See [Figure 4-12](#).) Practice all of the tags (and a few more) that you learned in this chapter by following these steps:

1. Open your browser, go to [www.dummies.com/go/coding](http://www.dummies.com/go/coding), and click on the Codecademy link.
2. Sign up for a Codecademy account or sign in if you already have an account. Creating an account allows you to save your progress as you work, but it's optional.
3. Navigate to and click on HTML Basics.
4. Background information is presented in the upper-left portion of the site, and instructions are presented in the lower-left portion of the site.
5. Complete the instructions in the main coding window. As you type, a live preview of your code is generated.
6. After you have finished completing the instructions, click the Save and Submit Code button.

If you have followed the instructions correctly, a green checkmark appears, and you proceed to the next exercise. If an error exists in your code a warning appears with a suggested fix. If you run into a problem, or have a bug you cannot fix, click on the hint, use the Q&A Forums, or tweet me at @nikhilgabraham and include hashtag #codingFD.



**FIGURE 4-12:** Codecademy in-browser exercises.

## HISTORY OF HTML

A computer engineer, Tim Berners-Lee, wanted academics to easily access academic papers and collaborate with each other. To accomplish this goal, in 1989 Mr. Berners-Lee created the first version of HTML, which had the same hyperlink elements you learned in this chapter, and hosted the first website in 1991. Unlike most other computer software, Mr. Berners-Lee made HTML available royalty-free, allowing widespread adoption and use around the world. Shortly after creating the first iteration of HTML, Mr. Berners-Lee formed the W3C ("World Wide Web Consortium"), which is a group of people from academic institutions and corporations who define and maintain

the HTML language. The W3C continues to develop the HTML language, and has defined more than 100 HTML elements, far more than the 18 Mr. Berners-Lee originally created. The latest version of HTML is HTML5, and it has considerable new functionality. In addition to supporting elements from previous HTML versions, HTML5 allows browsers to play audio and video files, easily locate a user's physical location, and build charts and graphs.

# Chapter 5

## Getting More Out of HTML

---

### IN THIS CHAPTER

**Organizing content in a web page**

**Writing HTML lists**

**Creating HTML tables**

**Filling out HTML forms**

---

*I'm controlling, and I want everything orderly, and I need lists.*

— SANDRA BULLOCK

Even your best content needs structure to increase readability for your users. This book is no exception. Consider the “In This Chapter” bulleted list of items at the top of this page, or the table of contents at the beginning of the book. Lists and tables make things easier for you to understand at a glance. By mirroring the structure you find in a book or magazine, web elements let you precisely define how content, such as text and images, appear on the web.

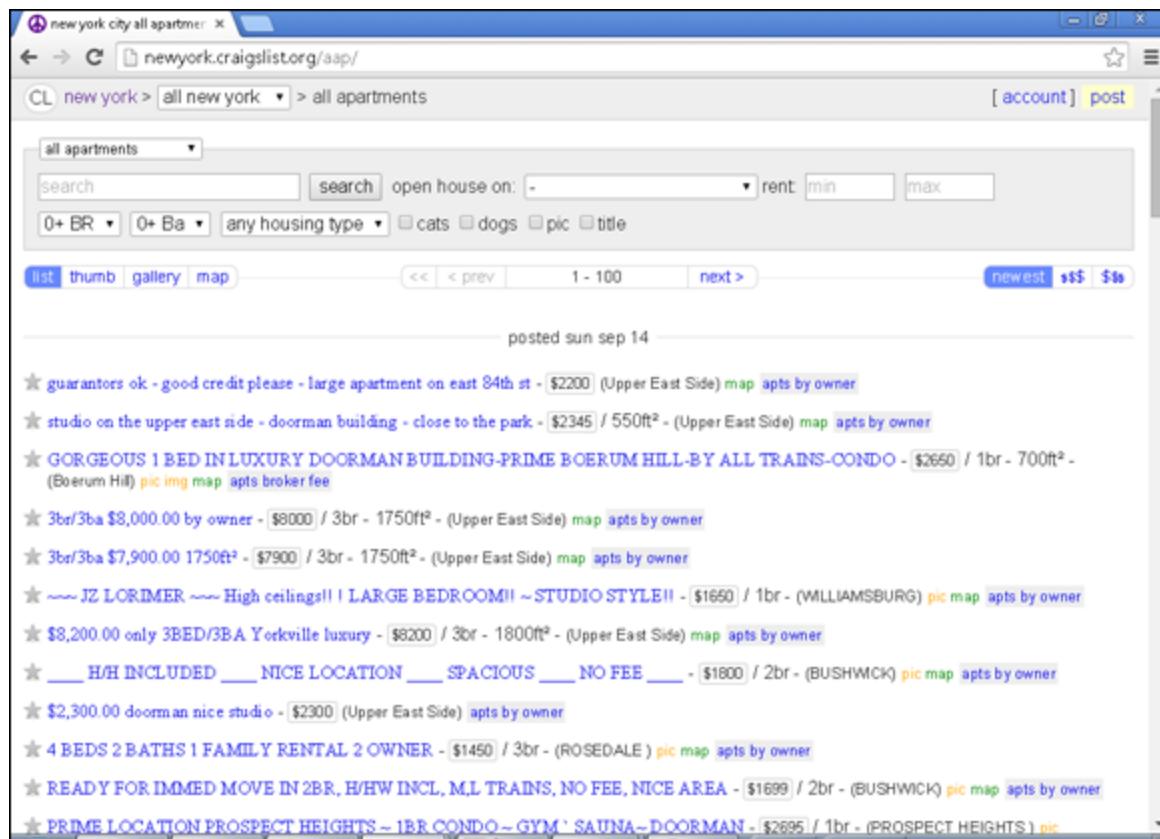
In this chapter, you learn how to use HTML elements such as lists, tables, and forms, and how to know when these elements are appropriate for your content.

### ***Organizing Content on the Page***

Readability is the most important principle for organizing and displaying content on your web page. Your web page should allow visitors to easily read, understand, and act on your content. The desired action you have in mind for your visitors may be to click on and read additional content, share the content with others, or perhaps make a purchase. Poorly

organized content will lead users to leave your website before engaging with your content for long enough to complete the desired action.

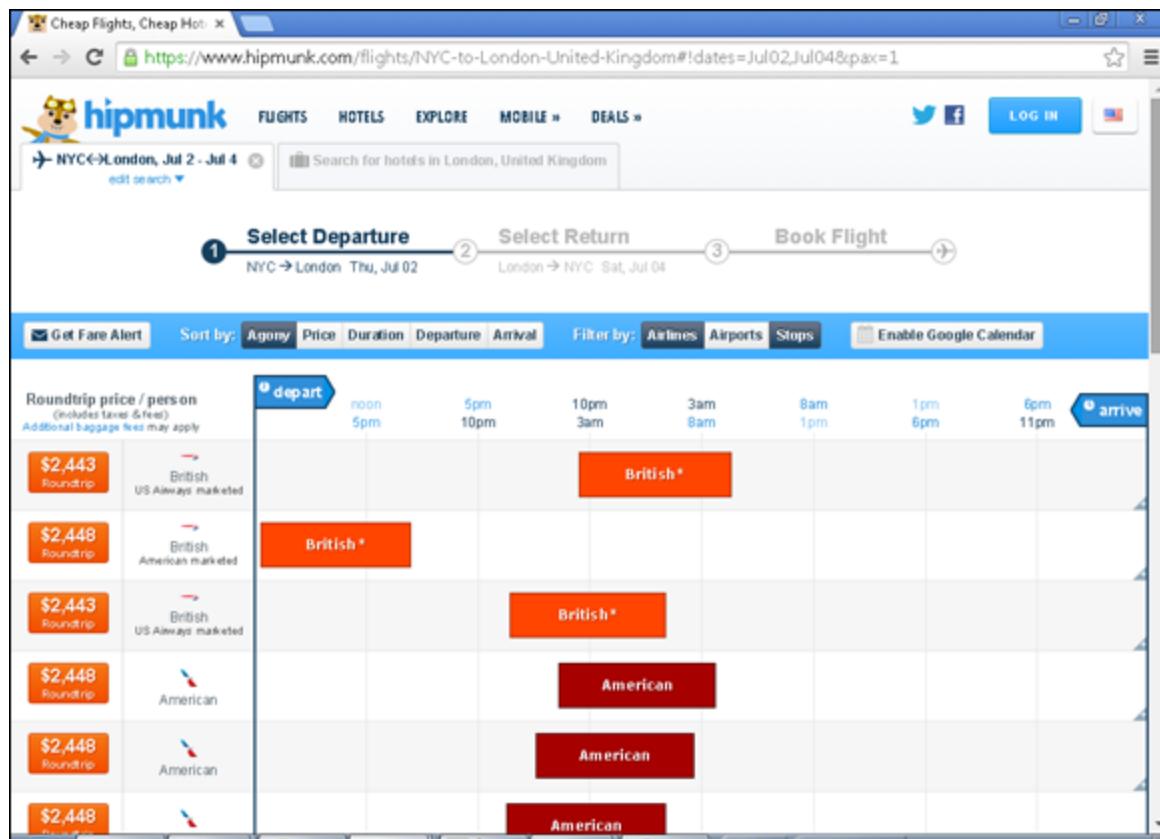
Figures 5-1 and 5-2 show two examples of website readability. In Figure 5-1, I searched Craigslist.org for an apartment in New York. The search results are structured like a list, and you can limit the content displayed using the filters and search forms. Each listing has multiple attributes, such as a description, the number of bedrooms, the neighborhood, and, most importantly, the price. Comparing similar attributes from different listings takes some effort — notice the jagged line your eye must follow.



The screenshot shows a web browser window displaying a Craigslist search results page for 'new york city all apartments' in New York. The URL is [newyork.craigslist.org/asp](http://newyork.craigslist.org/asp). The search filters are set to 'all apartments'. The results list shows several apartment listings, each with a star icon, a brief description, price, location, and links for 'map' and 'apts by owner'. The interface includes a search bar, filters for '0+ BR', '0+ Ba', 'any housing type', and checkboxes for 'cats', 'dogs', 'pic', and 'title'. Below the search bar are buttons for 'list', 'thumb', 'gallery', and 'map'. A pagination bar shows '1 - 100' with 'next >' and 'newest' and price range buttons ('\$\$', '\$\$'). The results are sorted by 'newest' and posted on 'sun sep 14'. The listings include:

- ★ guarantors ok - good credit please - large apartment on east 84th st - \$2200 (Upper East Side) [map](#) [apts by owner](#)
- ★ studio on the upper east side - doorman building - close to the park - \$2345 / 550ft<sup>2</sup> - (Upper East Side) [map](#) [apts by owner](#)
- ★ GORGEOUS 1 BED IN LUXURY DOORMAN BUILDING-PRIME BOERUM HILL-BY ALL TRAINS-CONDO - \$2650 / 1br - 700ft<sup>2</sup> - (Boerum Hill) [pic](#) [img](#) [map](#) [apts by owner](#)
- ★ 3br/3ba \$8,000.00 by owner - \$8000 / 3br - 1750ft<sup>2</sup> - (Upper East Side) [map](#) [apts by owner](#)
- ★ 3br/3ba \$7,900.00 1750ft<sup>2</sup> - \$7900 / 3br - 1750ft<sup>2</sup> - (Upper East Side) [map](#) [apts by owner](#)
- ★ ~~ JZ LORIMER ~~ High ceilings!! ! LARGE BEDROOM!! ~ STUDIO STYLE!! - \$1650 / 1br - (WILLIAMSBURG) [pic](#) [map](#) [apts by owner](#)
- ★ \$8,200.00 only 3BED/3BA Yorkville luxury - \$8200 / 3br - 1800ft<sup>2</sup> - (Upper East Side) [map](#) [apts by owner](#)
- ★ \_\_\_ H/H INCLUDED \_\_\_ NICE LOCATION \_\_\_ SPACIOUS \_\_\_ NO FEE \_\_\_ - \$1800 / 2br - (BUSHWICK) [pic](#) [map](#) [apts by owner](#)
- ★ \$2,300.00 doorman nice studio - \$2300 (Upper East Side) [apts by owner](#)
- ★ 4 BEDS 2 BATHS 1 FAMILY RENTAL 2 OWNER - \$1450 / 3br - (ROSEDALE) [pic](#) [map](#) [apts by owner](#)
- ★ READY FOR IMMED MOVE IN 2BR, H/HW INCL, M/L TRAINS, NO FEE, NICE AREA - \$1699 / 2br - (BUSHWICK) [pic](#) [map](#) [apts by owner](#)
- ★ PRIME LOCATION PROSPECT HEIGHTS - 1BR CONDO - GYM, SAUNA - DOORMAN - \$2695 / 1br - (PROSPECT HEIGHTS) [pic](#)

**FIGURE 5-1:** A Craigslist.org listing of apartments in New York (2014).



**FIGURE 5-2:** A Hipmunk.com listing of flights from New York to London (2014).

Figure 5-2 shows the results of a search I conducted at Hipmunk.com for flights from New York to London. As with the Craigslist search results, you can limit the content displayed using the filters and search forms. Additionally, each flight listing has multiple attributes, including price, carrier, departure time, landing time, and duration, which are similar to the attributes of the apartment listings. Comparing similar attributes from different flights is much easier with the Hipmunk layout, however. Notice how the content, in contrast to Craigslist's, has a layout that allows your eye to follow a straight line down the page, so you can easily rank and compare different options.



**TIP** Don't underestimate the power of simplicity when displaying content. Although Craigslist's content layout may look almost too simple, the site is one of the top 50 most visited websites in the world. Reddit.com is another example of a top 50 website with a simple layout.

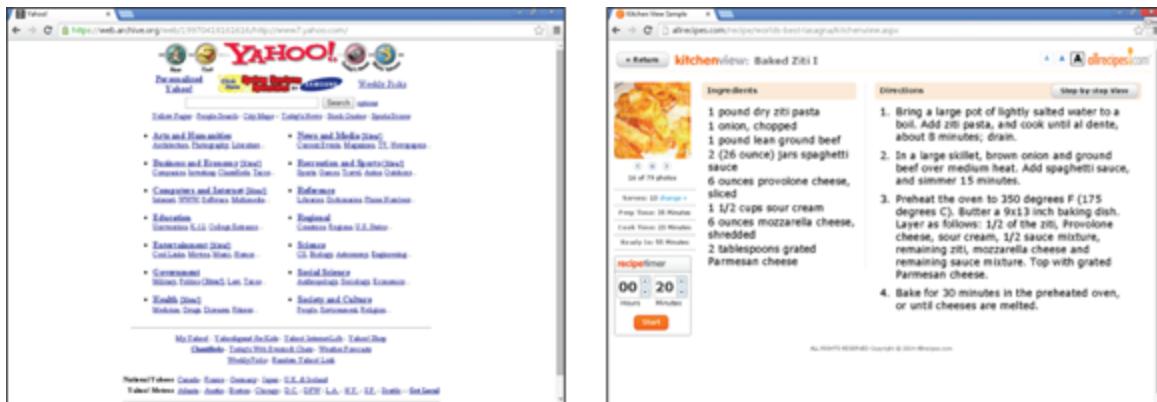
Before displaying your content, ask yourself a few questions first:

- » **Does your content have one attribute with related data, or does it follow sequential steps?** If so, consider using lists.
- » **Does your content have multiple attributes suitable for comparison?** If so, consider using tables.
- » **Do you need to collect input from the visitor?** If so, consider using forms.

Don't let these choices overwhelm you. Pick one, see how your visitors react, and if necessary change how you display the content. The process of evaluating one version against another version of the same web page is called *A/B testing*.

## ****Listing Data****

Websites have used lists for decades to convey related or hierarchical information. In [Figure 5-3](#), you can see an older version of Yahoo.com that uses bulleted lists to display various categories and today's Allrecipes.com recipe page, which uses lists to display various ingredients.



**FIGURE 5-3:** Yahoo's 1997 homepage using an unordered list (left) and Allrecipes.com's 2014 recipe using an ordered list (right).

Lists begin with a symbol, an indentation, and then the list item. The symbol used can be a number, letter, bullet, or no symbol at all.

## ***Creating ordered and unordered lists***

The two most popular types of lists are:

- » **Ordered:** Ordered lists are numerical or alphabetical lists in which the sequence of list items is important.
- » **Unordered:** These lists are usually bulleted lists in which the sequence of list items has no importance.

You create lists by specifying the type of list as ordered or unordered, and then adding each list item using the `li` tag, as shown in the following steps:

### **1. Specify the type of list.**

Add opening and closing list tags that specify either an ordered (`ol`) or unordered (`ul`) list, as follows:

- `ol` to specify the beginning and end of an ordered list.
- `ul` to specify the beginning and end of an unordered list.

### **2. Add an opening and closing tag (that is, `<li>` and `</li>`) for each item in the list.**

For example, here's an ordered list:

```
<ol>
  <li> List item #1 </li>
  <li> List item #2 </li>
  <li> List item #3 </li>
</ol>
```

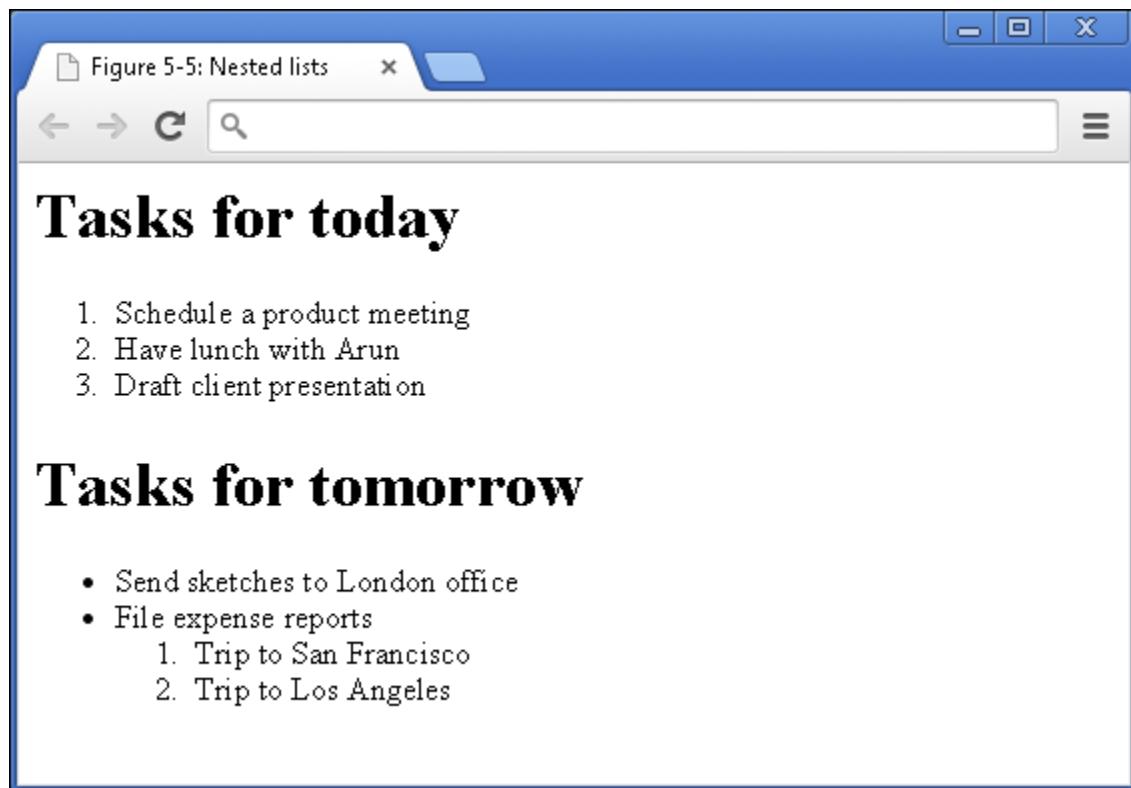
## Nesting lists

Additionally, you can nest lists within lists. A list of any type can be nested inside another list; to nest a list, replace the list item tag `<li>` with a list type tag, either `<ol>` or `<ul>`.

The example code in [Figure 5-4](#) shows various lists types including a nested list. (See [Figures 5-4](#) and [5-5](#).)

```
1  <!--Ordinary list-->
2  <h1>Tasks for today</h1>
3  <ol>
4    <li>Schedule a product meeting</li>
5    <li>Have lunch with Arun</li>
6    <li>Draft client presentation</li>
7  </ol>
8
9  <!--Nested list-->
10 <h1>Tasks for tomorrow</h1>
11 <ul>
12   <li>Send sketches to London office</li>
13   <li>File expense reports</li>
14   <ol>
15     <li>Trip to San Francisco</li>
16     <li>Trip to Los Angeles</li>
17   </ol>
18 </ul>
```

**FIGURE 5-4:** Coding an ordered list and a nested list.



**FIGURE 5-5:** The page produced by the code in [Figure 5-4](#).



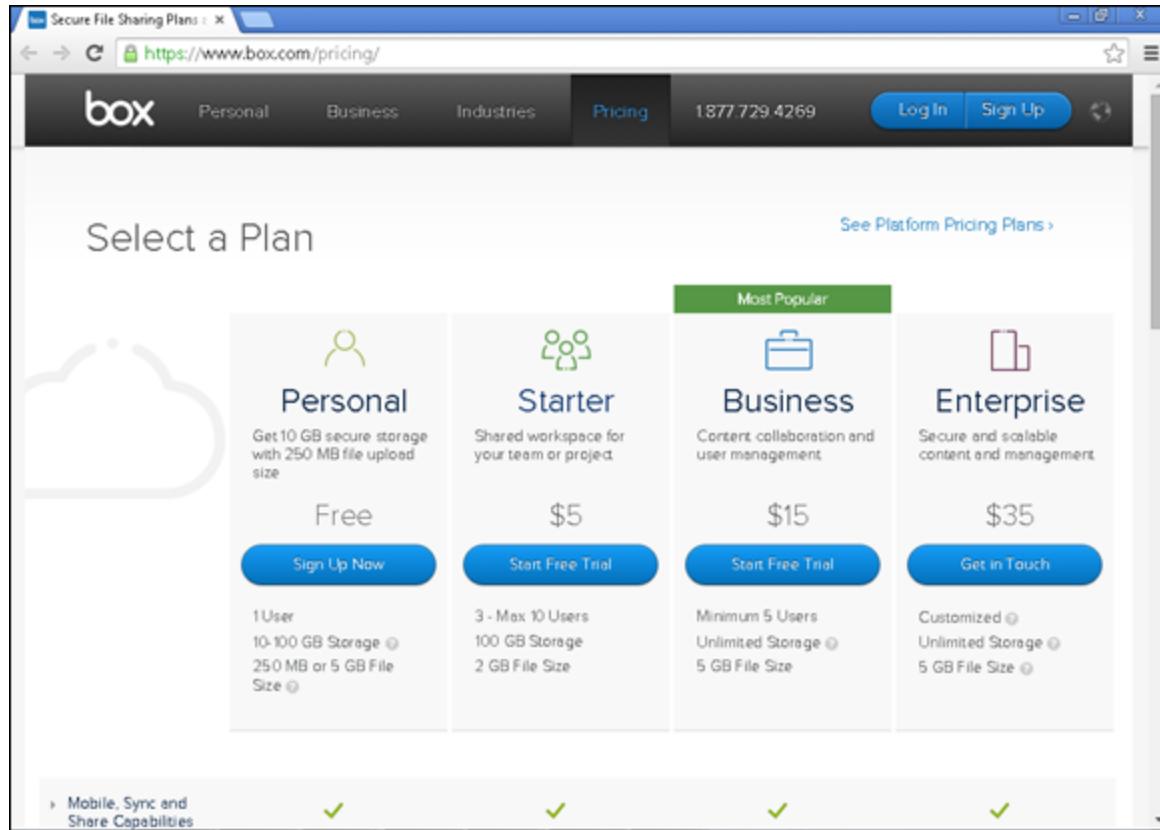
**TIP** The `<h1>` tag shown in this code sample is not necessary to create a list. I use it here only to name each list.

Every opening list or list item tag must be followed with a closing list or list item tag.

## ***Putting Data in Tables***

Tables help further organize text and tabular data on the page. (See [Figure 5-6](#).) The table format is especially appropriate when displaying pricing information, comparing features across products, or in any situation where the columns or rows share a common attribute. Tables act as containers, and can hold and display any type of content, including text, such as heading and lists, and images. For example, the table in [Figure 5-6](#) includes additional content and styling like icons at the top of

each column, gray background shading, and rounded buttons. This content and styling can make tables you see online differ from tables you ordinarily see in books.



Select a Plan			
See Platform Pricing Plans >			
Most Popular			
 <b>Personal</b> Get 10 GB secure storage with 250 MB file upload size	 <b>Starter</b> Shared workspace for your team or project	 <b>Business</b> Content, collaboration and user management	 <b>Enterprise</b> Secure and scalable content and management
<b>Free</b> <a href="#">Sign Up Now</a>	<b>\$5</b> <a href="#">Start Free Trial</a>	<b>\$15</b> <a href="#">Start Free Trial</a>	<b>\$35</b> <a href="#">Get in Touch</a>
1 User 10-100 GB Storage ⓘ 250 MB or 5 GB File Size ⓘ	3 - Max 10 Users 100 GB Storage 2 GB File Size	Minimum 5 Users Unlimited Storage ⓘ 5 GB File Size	Customized ⓘ Unlimited Storage ⓘ 5 GB File Size ⓘ
Mobile, Sync and Share Capabilities			
✓	✓	✓	✓

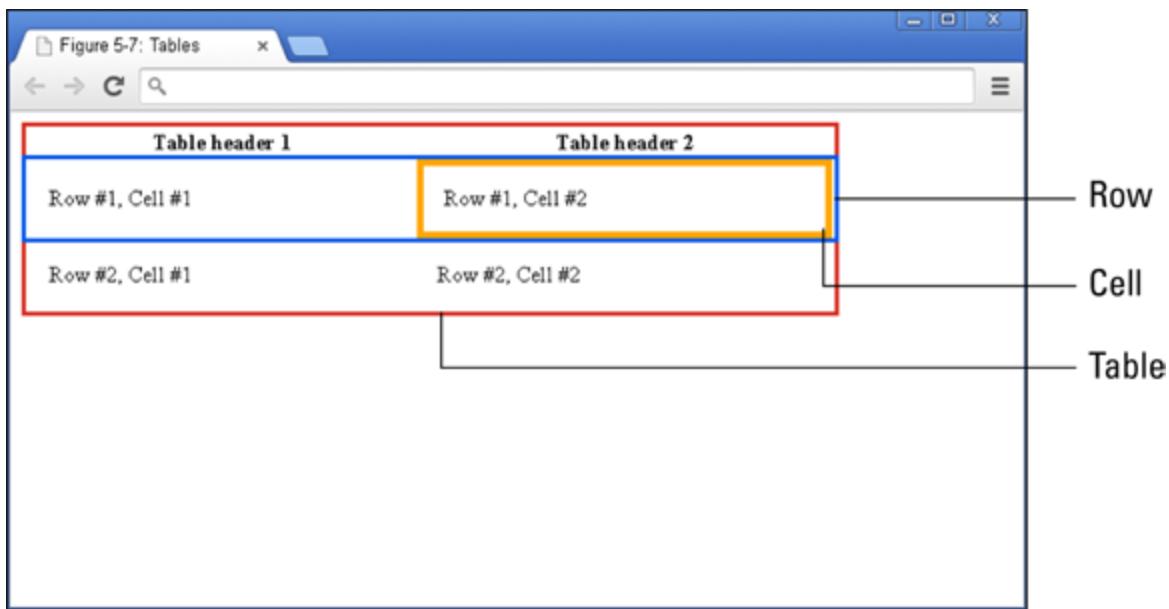
**FIGURE 5-6:** Box.net uses tables to display pricing information.



**TIP** Avoid using tables to create page layouts. In the past, developers created multi-column layouts using tables, but today developers use CSS (see [Chapter 7](#)) for layout-related tasks.

## ***Basic table structuring***

Tables are comprised of several parts, like the one shown in [Figure 5-7](#).



**FIGURE 5-7:** The different parts of a table.

You create a table by using the following basic steps:

**1. Define a table with the `table` element.**

To do this, add the opening and closing `<table>` tags.

**2. Divide the table into rows with the `tr` element.**

Between the opening and closing `table` tags, create opening `<tr>` tags and closing `</tr>` tags for each row of your table.

**3. Divide rows into cells using the `td` element.**

Between the opening and closing `tr` tags, create opening and closing `td` tags for each cell in the row.

**4. Highlight cells that are headers using the `th` element.**

Finally, specify any cells that are headers by replacing the `td` element with a `th` element.



**REMEMBER** Your table will have only one opening and closing `<table>` tag; however, you can have one or more table rows (`tr`) and cells (`td`).

The following example code shows the syntax for creating the table shown in [Figure 5-7](#).

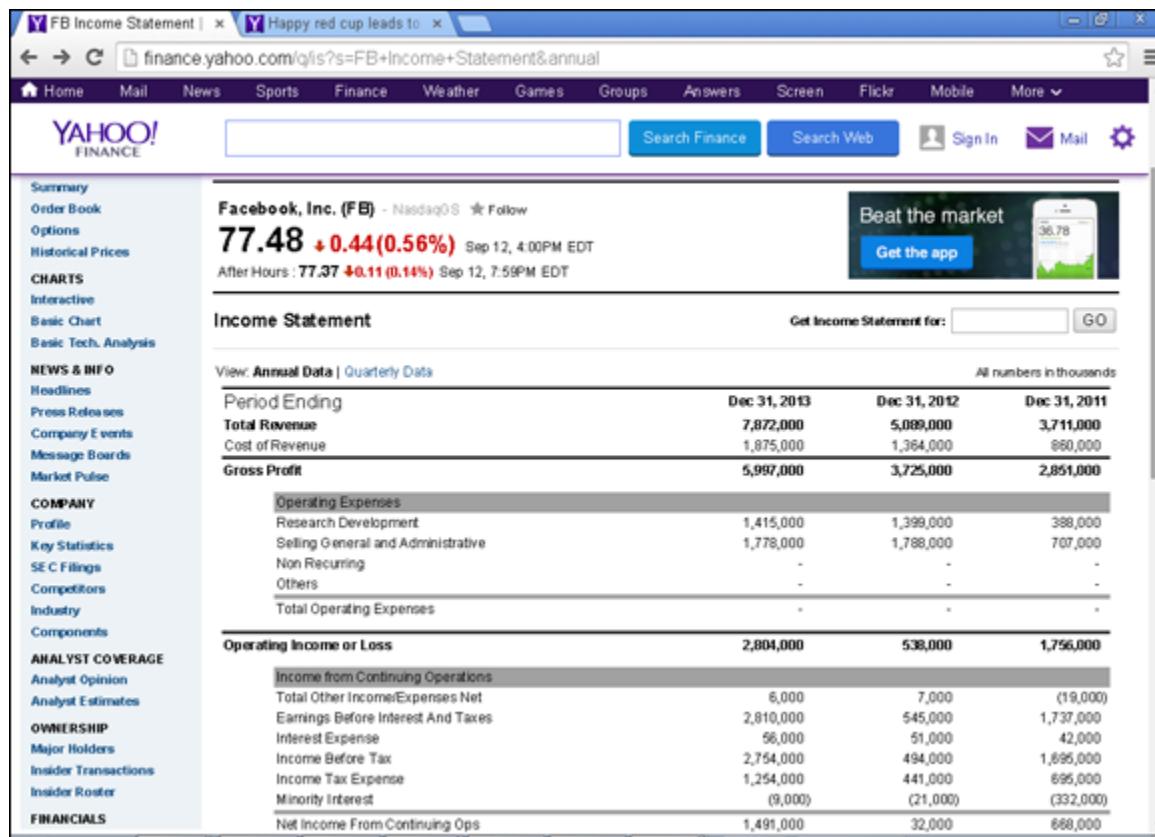
```
<Table>
  <tr>
    <th>Table header 1</th>
    <th>Table header 2</th>
  </tr>
  <tr>
    <td>Row #1, Cell #1</td>
    <td>Row #1, Cell #2</td>
  </tr>
  <tr>
    <td>Row #2, Cell #1</td>
    <td>Row #2, Cell #2</td>
  </tr>
</table>
```



**TIP** After you've decided how many rows and columns your table will have, make sure to use an opening and closing `<tr>` tag for each row, and an opening and closing `<td>` tag for each cell in the row.

## ***Stretching table columns and rows***

Take a look at the table describing Facebook's income statement in [Figure 5-8](#). Data for 2011, 2012, and 2013 appears in individual columns of equal-sized width. Now look at Total Revenue, which appears in a cell that stretches or spans across several columns.



Period Ending	Dec 31, 2013	Dec 31, 2012	Dec 31, 2011
<strong>Total Revenue</strong>	<strong>7,872,000</strong>	<strong>5,089,000</strong>	<strong>3,711,000</strong>
Cost of Revenue	1,875,000	1,364,000	860,000
<strong>Gross Profit</strong>	<strong>5,997,000</strong>	<strong>3,725,000</strong>	<strong>2,851,000</strong>
Operating Expenses			
Research Development	1,415,000	1,399,000	388,000
Selling General and Administrative	1,778,000	1,788,000	707,000
Non Recurring	-	-	-
Others	-	-	-
<strong>Total Operating Expenses</strong>	<strong>-</strong>	<strong>-</strong>	<strong>-</strong>
<strong>Operating Income or Loss</strong>	<strong>2,804,000</strong>	<strong>538,000</strong>	<strong>1,756,000</strong>
Income from Continuing Operations			
Total Other Income/Expenses Net	6,000	7,000	(19,000)
Earnings Before Interest And Taxes	2,810,000	545,000	1,737,000
Interest Expense	56,000	51,000	42,000
Income Before Tax	2,754,000	494,000	1,695,000
Income Tax Expense	1,254,000	441,000	695,000
Minority Interest	(9,000)	(21,000)	(332,000)
<strong>Net Income From Continuing Ops</strong>	<strong>1,491,000</strong>	<strong>32,000</strong>	<strong>668,000</strong>

**FIGURE 5-8:** An income statement in a table with columns of different sizes.



TECHNICAL STUFF

Stretching a cell across columns or rows is called *spanning*.

The `colspan` attribute spans a column over subsequent vertical columns. The value of the `colspan` attribute is set equal to the number of columns you want to span. You always span a column from left to right. Similarly, the `rowspan` attribute spans a row over subsequent horizontal rows. Set `rowspan` equal to the number of rows you want to span.

The following code generates a part of the table shown in [Figure 5-8](#). You can see the `colspan` attribute spans the Total Revenue cell across two columns. As described in [Chapter 4](#), the `<strong>` tag is used to mark important text, and is shown as bold by the browser.

```
<tr>
  <td colspan="2">
```

```
        <strong>Total Revenue</strong>
    </td>
    <td>
        <strong>7,872,000</strong>
    </td>
    <td>
        <strong>5,089,000</strong>
    </td>
    <td>
        <strong>3,711,000</strong>
    </td>
</tr>
```



**REMEMBER** If you set a column or row to span by more columns or rows than are actually present in the table, the browser will insert additional columns or rows, changing your table layout.



**TIP** CSS helps size individual columns and rows, as well as entire tables. See [Chapter 7](#).

## *Aligning tables and cells*



**WARNING** The latest version of HTML does not support the tags and attributes in this section. Although your browser may correctly render this code, there is no guarantee your browser will correctly render it in the future. I include these attributes because as of this writing, HTML code on the Internet, including the Yahoo Finance site in the previous examples, still use these deprecated (older) attributes in tables. This code is similar to expletives — recognize them but try not to use them. Refer to [Chapter 6](#) to see modern techniques using Cascading Style Sheets (CSS) for achieving the identical effects.

The `table` element has three deprecated attributes to know — `align`, `width`, and `border`. These attributes are described in [Table 5-1](#).

## **TABLE 5-1 Table Attributes Replaced by CSS**

<b>Attribute Name</b>	<b>Possible Values</b>	<b>Description</b>
align	left center right	Position of table relative to the containing document according to the value of the attribute. For example, <code>align="right"</code> positions the table on the right side of the web page.
width	pixels (#) %	Width of table measured either in pixels on-screen or as a percentage of the browser window or container tag.
border	pixels (#)	Width of table border in pixels.

The following example code shows the syntax for creating the table in [Figure 5-9](#) with `align`, `width`, and `border` attributes.



**FIGURE 5-9:** A table with deprecated `align`, `width`, and `border` attributes.

```

<Table align="right" width=50% border=1>
  <tr>
    <td>The Social Network</td>
    <td>Generation Like</td>
  </tr>
  <tr>
    <td>Tron</td>
    <td>War Games</td>
  </tr>
</table>

```



**REMEMBER** Always insert attributes inside the opening `<html>` tag, and enclose words in quotes.

The `tr` element has two deprecated attributes to know — `align`, and `valign`. These are described in [Table 5-2](#).

**TABLE 5-2 Table Row Attributes Replaced by CSS**

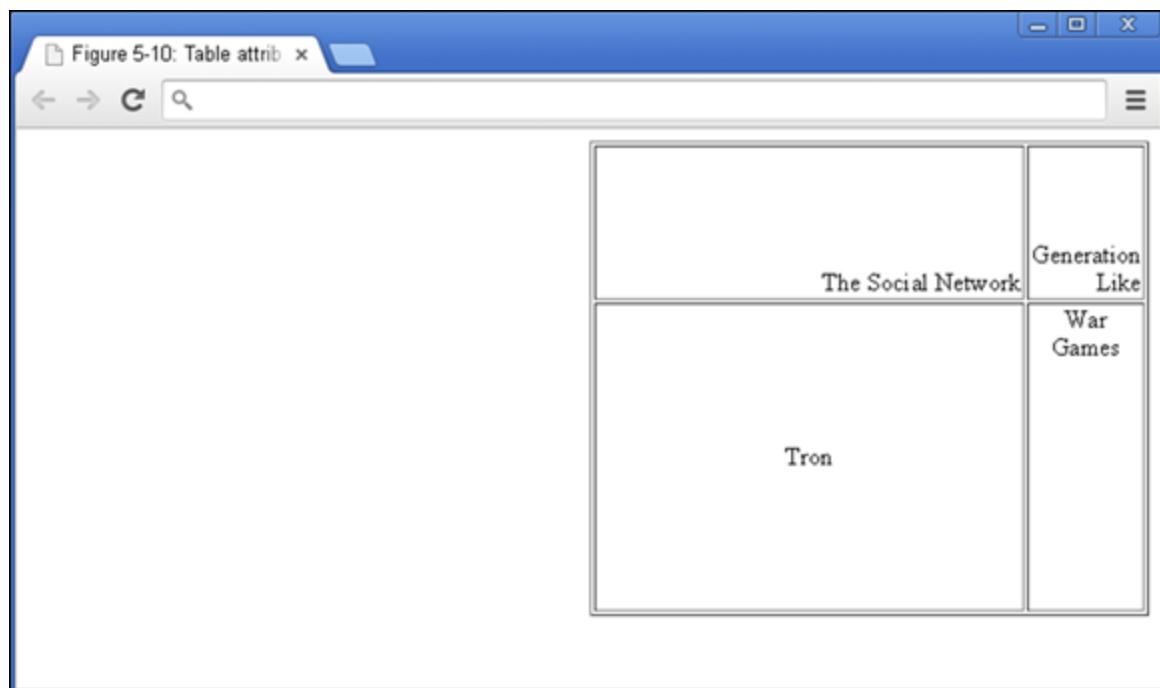
<i>Attribute Name</i>	<i>Possible Values</i>	<i>Description</i>
<code>align</code>	<code>left</code> <code>right</code> <code>center</code> <code>justify</code>	Horizontal alignment of a row's cell contents according to the value of the attribute. For example, <code>align="right"</code> positions a row's cell contents on the right side of each cell.
<code>valign</code>	<code>top</code> <code>middle</code> <code>bottom</code>	Vertical alignment of a row's cell contents according to the value of the attribute. For example, <code>align="bottom"</code> positions a row's cell contents on the bottom of each cell.

The `td` element has four deprecated attributes to know — `align`, `valign`, `width`, and `height`. These are described in [Table 5-3](#).

**TABLE 5-3 Table Cell Attributes Replaced by CSS**

<b>Attribute Name</b>	<b>Possible Values</b>	<b>Description</b>
align	left right center justify	Horizontal alignment of a cell's contents according to the value of the attribute. For example, align="center" positions the cell's contents in the center of the cell.
valign	top middle bottom	Vertical alignment of a cell's contents according to the value of the attribute. For example, align="middle" positions a cell's contents in the middle of the cell.
width	pixels (#) %	Width of a cell measured either in pixels on-screen or as a percentage of the table width.
height	pixels (#) %	Height of a cell measured either in pixels on-screen or as a percentage of the table width.

The following example code shows the syntax for creating the table in [Figure 5-10](#) with align, valign, width, and height attributes.



**FIGURE 5-10:** A table with deprecated align, valign, width, and height attributes.

```

<Table align="right" width=50% border=1>
  <tr align="right" valign="bottom">
    <td height=100>The Social Network</td>
    <td>Generation Like</td>
  </tr>
  <tr>
    <td height=200 align="center" valign="middle">Tron</td>
    <td align="center" valign="top" width=20%>War Games</td>
  </tr>
</table>

```



**WARNING** Remember, these attributes are no longer supported and should not be used in your code.

## *Filling Out Forms*

Forms allow you to capture input from your website visitors. Until now we have displayed content as-is, but capturing input from visitors allows you to:

- » **Modify existing content on the page.** For example, price and date filters on airline websites allow for finding a desired flight more quickly.
- » **Store the input for later use.** For example, a website may use a registration form to collect your email, username, and password information to allow you to access it at a later date.

### *Understanding how forms work*

Forms pass information entered by a user to a server by using the following process:

1. The browser displays a form on the client machine.
2. The user completes the form and presses the submit button.
3. The browser submits the data collected from the form to a server.

4. The server processes and stores the data and sends a response to the client machine.
5. The browser displays the response, usually indicating whether the submission was successful.



**TIP** See [Chapter 2](#) for an additional discussion about the relationship between the client and server.



**REMEMBER** A full description of how the server receives and stores data (Steps 3 to 5) is beyond the scope of this book. For now, all you need to know is that server-side programming languages such as Python, PHP, and Ruby are used to write scripts that receive and store form submissions.

Forms are very flexible, and can record a variety of user inputs. Input fields used in forms can include free text fields, radio buttons, checkboxes, drop-down menus, range sliders, dates, phone numbers, and more. (See [Table 5-4](#).) Additionally, input fields can be set to initial default values without any user input.

**TABLE 5-4 Selected Form Attributes**

<b>Attribute Name</b>	<b>Possible Values</b>	<b>Description</b>

<b>Attribute Name</b>	<b>Possible Values</b>	<b>Description</b>
	checkbox email submit text password radio	Defines the type of input field to display in the form. For example, text is used for free text fields, and submit is used to create a submit button.
type	(a complete list of values has been omitted here for brevity)	
value	text	The initial value of the input control.



**TIP** View the entire list of form input types and example code at [www.w3schools.com/tags/att\\_input\\_type.asp](http://www.w3schools.com/tags/att_input_type.asp).

## *Creating basic forms*

You create a basic form by

### 1. Defining a form with the `form` element.

Start by adding an opening `<form>` tag and closing `</form>` tag.

### 2. Using the `action` attribute, specify in the `form` element where to send form data.

Add an action attribute to your opening `<form>` tag and set it equal to the URL of a script that will process and store the user input.

### 3. Using the `method` attribute, specify in the `form` element how to send form data.

Add a method attribute to your opening `<form>` tag and set it equal to POST.



**TECHNICAL STUFF**

The `method` attribute is set equal to `GET` or `POST`. The technicalities of each are beyond the scope of this book, but, in general, `POST` is used for storing sensitive information (such as credit card numbers), whereas `GET` is used to allow users to bookmark or share with others the results of a submitted form (such as, for example, airline flight listings).

#### 4. Providing a way for users to input and submit responses with the `input` element.

Between the opening `<form>` and closing `</form>` tags, create one `<input>` tag.



**REMEMBER** Your form will have only one opening and closing `<form>` tag; however, you will have at least two `<input>` tags to collect and submit user data.

#### 5. Specify input types using the `type` attribute in the `input` element.

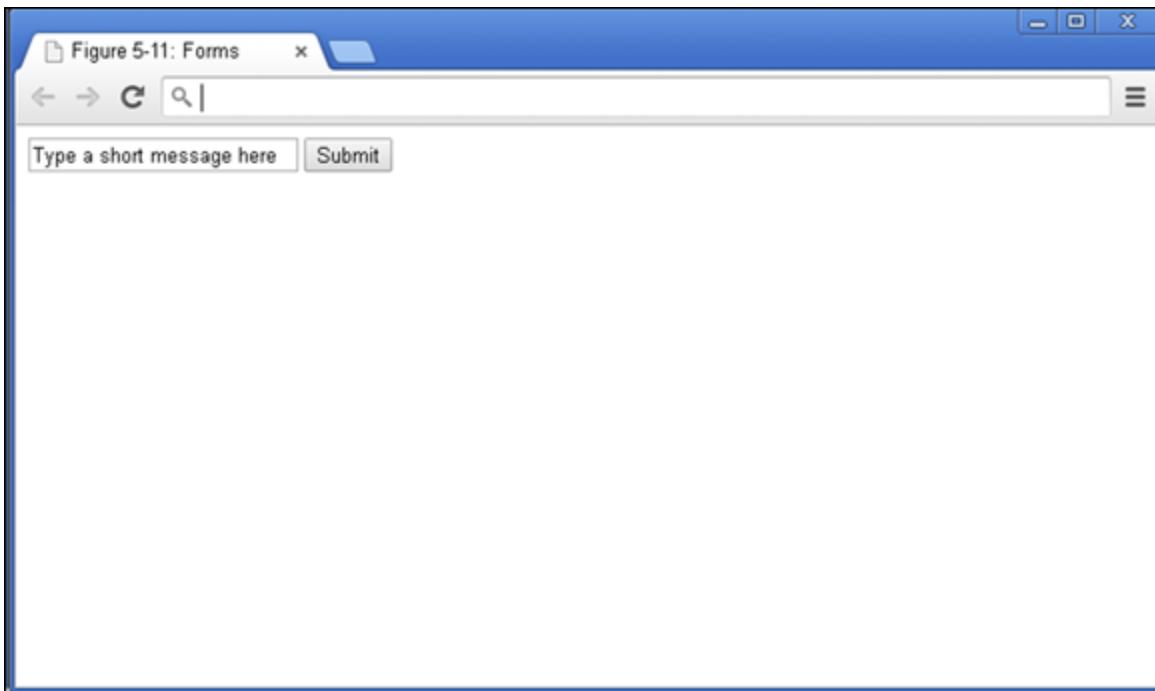
For this example, set the `type` attribute equal to "text".



**TIP** The `<input>` tag does not have a closing tag, which is an exception to the "close every tag you open" rule. These tags are called self-closing tags, and you can see more examples in [Chapter 4](#).

#### 6. Finally, create another `<input>` tag and set the `type` attribute equal to `submit`.

The following example code shows the syntax for creating the form shown in [Figure 5-11](#).



**FIGURE 5-11:** A form with one user input and a submit button.

```
<form action="mailto:nikhil.abraham@gmail.com" method="POST">
  <input type="text" value="Type a short message here">
  <input type="submit">
</form>
```



TECHNICAL STUFF

The action attribute in this form is set equal to mailto, which signals to the browser to send an email using your default mail client (such as Outlook or Gmail). If your browser is not configured to handle email links, then this form won't work. Ordinarily, forms are submitted to a server to process and store the form's contents, but in this example form the contents are submitted to the user's email application.

## ***Practicing More with HTML***

Practice your HTML online using the Codecademy website. Codecademy is a free website created in 2011 to allow anyone to learn

how to code right in the browser, without installing or downloading any software. Practice all of the tags (and a few more) that you learned in this chapter by following these steps:

- 1. Open your browser, go to [www.dummies.com/go/coding](http://www.dummies.com/go/coding), and click on the link to Codecademy.**
- 2. Sign in to your Codecademy account.**  
Signing up is discussed in [Chapter 3](#). Creating an account allows you to save your progress as you work, but it's optional.
- 3. Navigate to and click on HTML Basics II to practice creating lists, and HTML Basics III to practice creating tables.**
- 4. Background information is presented in the upper left portion of the site, and instructions are presented in the lower left portion of the site.**
- 5. Complete the instructions in the main coding window. As you type, a live preview of your code is generated.**
- 6. After you have finished completing the instructions, click the Save and Submit Code button.**

If you have followed the instructions correctly, a green checkmark appears, and you proceed to the next exercise. If an error exists in your code a warning appears with a suggested fix. If you run into a problem or a bug you cannot fix, click on the hint, use the Q&A Forum, or tweet me at @nikhilgabraham and include hashtag #codingFD.

# Chapter 6

# Getting Stylish with CSS

---

## IN THIS CHAPTER

**Understanding CSS and its structure**

**Formatting text size, color, and style**

**Styling images**

**Using CSS in three different contexts**

---

*Create your own style ... let it be unique for yourself and yet identifiable for others.*

— ANNA WINTOUR

The website code examples I have shown you in the preceding chapters resemble websites you may have seen from a previous era. Websites you browse today are different, and have a more polished look and feel.

Numerous factors enabled this change. Twenty years ago you might have browsed the Internet with a dial-up modem, but today you likely use a very fast Internet connection and a more powerful computer.

Programmers have used this extra bandwidth and speed to write code to further customize and style websites.

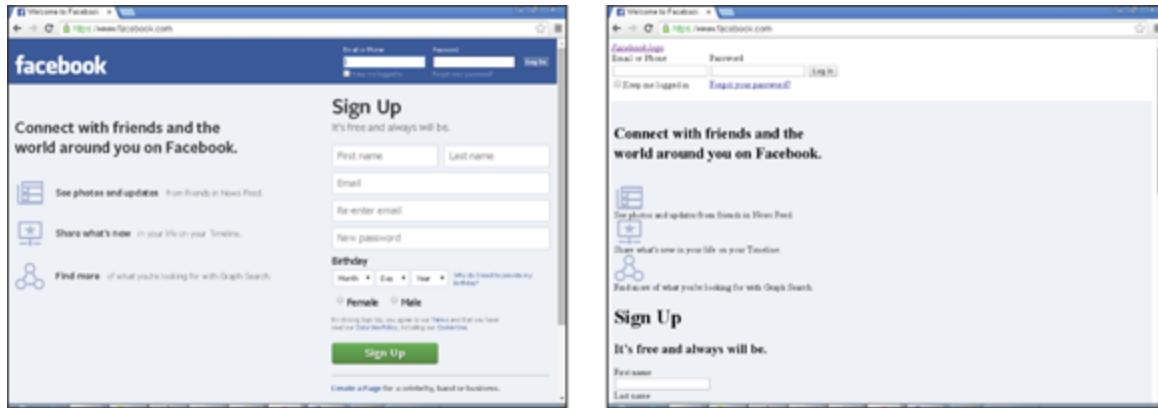
In this chapter you learn modern techniques to style websites using Cascading Style Sheets (CSS). First, I discuss basic CSS structure, and then the CSS rules to style your content. Finally, I show you how to apply these rules to your websites.

## **What Does CSS Do?**

CSS styles HTML elements with greater control than just using HTML.

Take a look at [Figure 6-1](#). On the left, Facebook appears as it currently exists; on the right, however, the same Facebook page is shown without

all the CSS styling. Without the CSS, all the images and text appear left-justified, borders and shading disappear, and text has minimal formatting.



**FIGURE 6-1** Left Facebook with CSS. Right: Facebook without CSS.

CSS can style almost any HTML tag that creates a visible element on the page, including all the HTML tags used to create headings, paragraphs, links, images, lists, and tables that I showed you in previous chapters. Specifically, CSS allows you to style:

- » Text size, color, style, typeface, and alignment
- » Link color and style
- » Image size and alignment
- » List bullet styles and indentation
- » Table size, shading, borders, and alignment



**REMEMBER** CSS styles and positions the HTML elements that appear on a web page. However, some HTML elements (such as, for example, `<head>`) are not visible on the page and are not styled using CSS.

You may wonder why creating a separate language like CSS to handle styling was considered a better approach than expanding the capabilities of HTML. There are three reasons:

- » **History:** CSS was created four years after HTML as an experiment to see whether developers and consumers wanted extra styling effects. At the time, it was unclear whether CSS would be useful, and only some major browsers supported it. As a result, CSS was created separately from HTML to allow developers to build sites using just HTML.
- » **Code management:** Initially, some CSS functionality overlapped with existing HTML functionality. However, specifying styling effects in HTML results in cluttered and messy code. For example, specifying a particular font typeface in HTML requires that you include the font typeface attribute in every paragraph (`<p>`) tag. Styling a single paragraph this way is easy, but applying the font to a series of paragraphs (or an entire page or website) quickly becomes tedious. By contrast, CSS requires the typeface to be specified only once, and it automatically applies to all paragraphs. This feature makes it easier for developers to write and maintain code. In addition, separating the styling of the content from the actual content itself has allowed search engines and other automated website agents to more easily process the content on web pages.
- » **Inertia:** Currently millions of web pages use HTML and CSS separately, and every day that number grows. CSS started as a separate language for reasons stated above, and it remains a separate language because its popularity continues to grow.

## ***CSS Structure***

CSS follows a set of rules to ensure that websites will be displayed in the same way no matter the browser or computer used. Sometimes, because of varying support of the CSS standard, browsers can and do display web pages differently. Nevertheless, generally speaking, CSS ensures that users have a consistent experience across all browsers.



**TIP** You can use any browser to see CSS you write style your HTML files, though I strongly recommend you download, install, and use Chrome or Firefox.

## ***Choosing the element to style***

CSS continues to evolve and support increased functionality, but the basic syntax for defining CSS rules remains the same. CSS modifies HTML elements with rules that apply to each element. These rules are written as follows:

```
selector {  
  property: value;  
}
```

A CSS rule is comprised of three parts:

- » **Selector:** The HTML element you want to style.
- » **Property:** The feature of the HTML element you want to style, such as, for example, font typeface, image height, or color.
- » **Value:** The options for the property that the CSS rule sets. For example, if color was the property, the value could be red.

The selector identifies which HTML element you want to style. In HTML, an element is surrounded by angle brackets, but in CSS the selector stands alone. The selector is followed by a space, an opening left curly bracket ({), property with a value, and then a closing right curly bracket (}). The line break after the opening curly bracket, and before the closing curly bracket is not required by CSS — in fact, you could put all your code on one line with no line breaks or spaces. Using line breaks is convention followed by developers to make CSS easier to modify and read.



**TIP** You can find curly brackets on most keyboards to the right of the P key.

The following code shows you an example of CSS modifying a specific HTML element. The CSS code appears first, followed by the HTML code that it modifies:

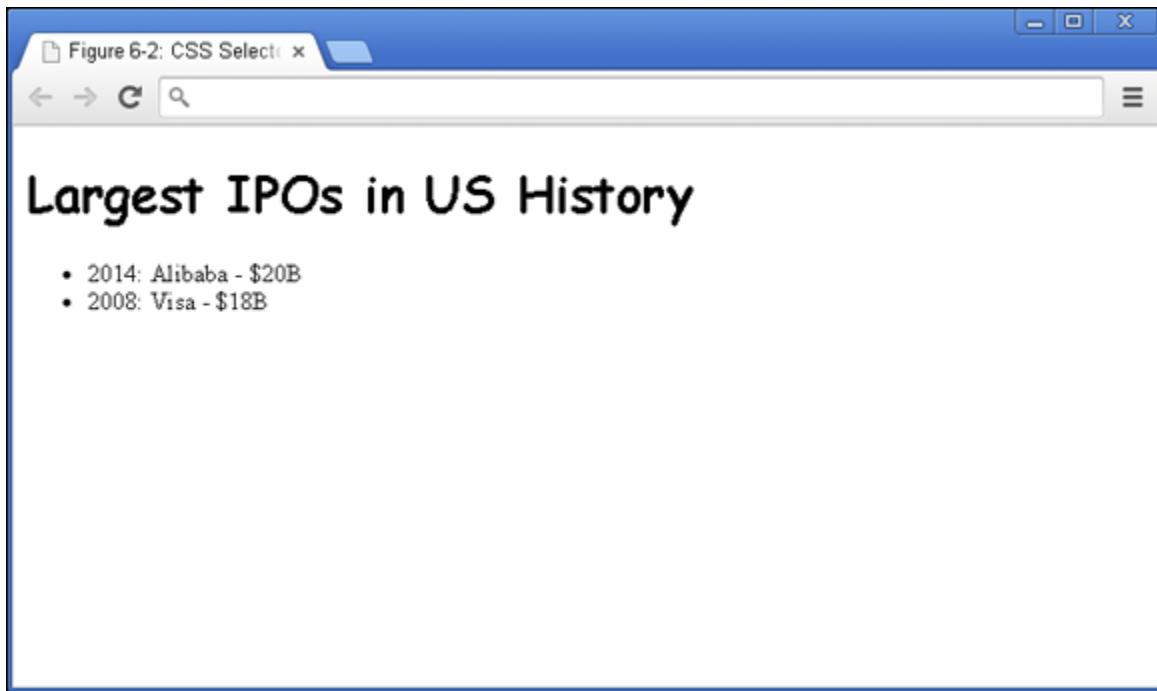
The CSS:

```
h1 {  
    font-family: cursive;  
}
```

And now the HTML:

```
<h1>  
    Largest IPOs in US History  
</h1>  
<ul>  
    <li>2014: Alibaba - $20B</li>  
    <li>2008: Visa - $18B</li>  
</ul>
```

The CSS selector targets and styles the HTML element with the same name (in this case, `<h1>` tags). For example, in [Figure 6-2](#), the heading “Largest IPOs in US History,” created using the opening and closing `<h1>` tag is styled using the `h1` selector, and the `font-family` property with `cursive` value.



**FIGURE 6-2:** CSS targeting the heading `h1` element.



**REMEMBER** CSS uses a colon instead of the equals sign (=) to set values against properties.



**TIP** The font in [Figure 6-2](#) likely does not appear to be cursive, as defined in the code above, because cursive is the name of a generic font family, and not a specific font. Generic font families are described later in this chapter.

## *My property has value*

CSS syntax requires that a CSS property and its value appear within opening and closing curly brackets. After each property is a colon, and after each value is a semi-colon. This combination of property and value together is called a *declaration*, and a group of properties and values is called a *declaration block*.

Let us look at a specific example with multiple properties and values:

```
h1 {  
    font-size: 15px;  
    color: blue;  
}
```

In this example, CSS styles the `h1` element, changing the `font-size` property to `15px`, and the `color` property to `blue`.



**TIP** You can improve the readability of your code by putting each declaration (each property/value combination) on its own line. Additionally, adding spaces or tabs to indent the declarations also improves the readability. Adding these line breaks and indentations doesn't affect browser performance in any way, but it will make it easier for you and others to read your code.

## ***Hacking the CSS on your favorite website***

In [Chapter 2](#), you modified a news website's HTML code. In this chapter, you modify its CSS. Let's take a look at some CSS rules in the wild. In this example, you change the CSS on [huffingtonpost.com](#) (or your news website of choice) using the Chrome browser. Just follow these steps:

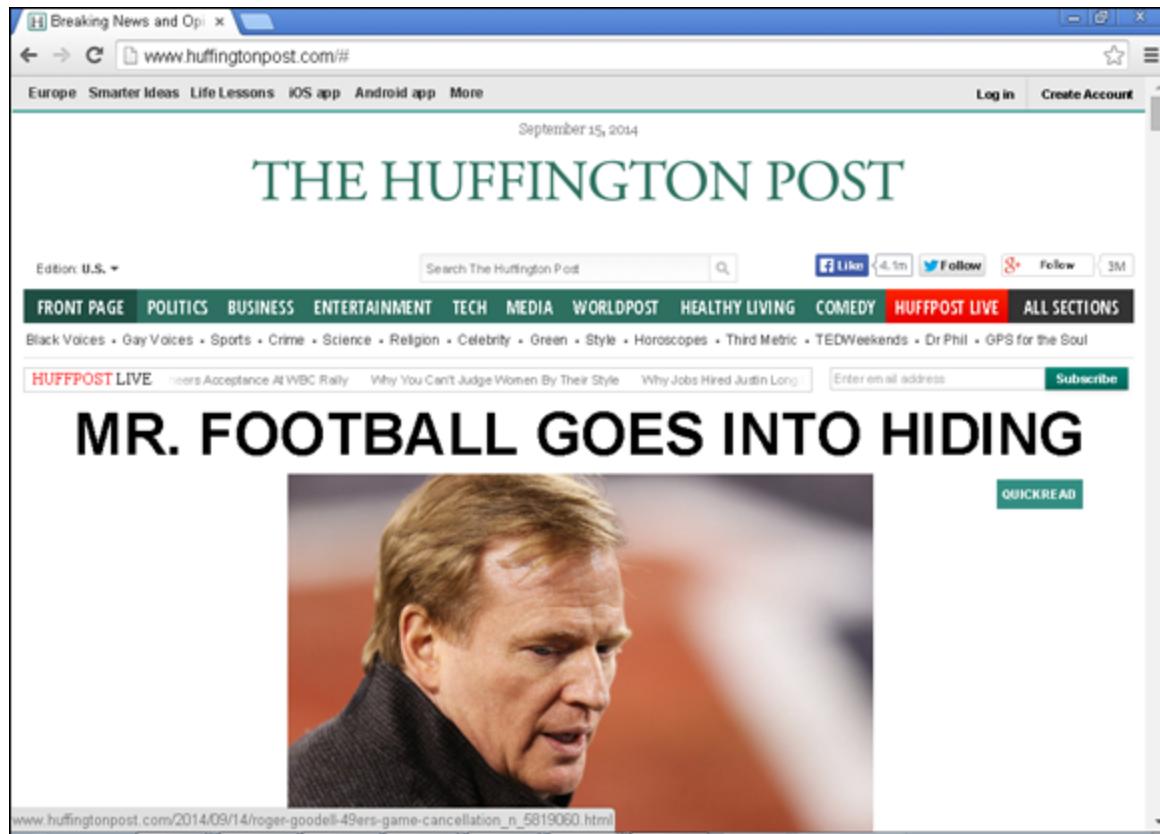
- 1. Using a Chrome browser, navigate to your favorite news website, ideally one with many headlines. (See [Figure 6-3](#).)**
- 2. Place your mouse pointer over a headline, right-click, and from the menu that appears select Inspect Element.**  
A window opens at the bottom of your browser.
- 3. Click the Style tab on the right side of this window to see the CSS rules being applied to HTML elements. (See [Figure 6-4](#).)**
- 4. Change the color of the headline using CSS. To do this, first find the `color` property in the `element.style` section; note the square color box within that property that displays a sample of the**

**current color. Click on this box and change the value by selecting a new color from the pop-up menu, and then press Enter.**

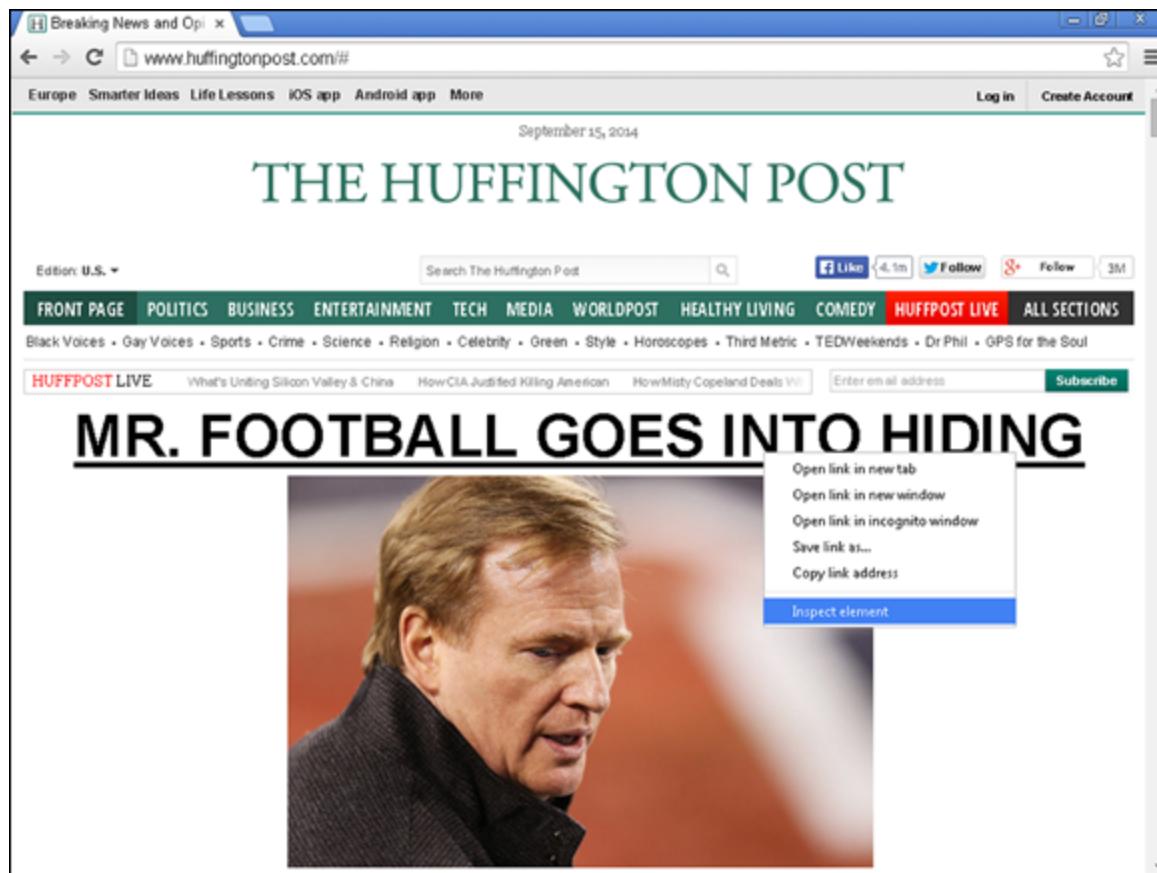
Your headline now appears in the color you picked. (See [Figure 6-5](#).)



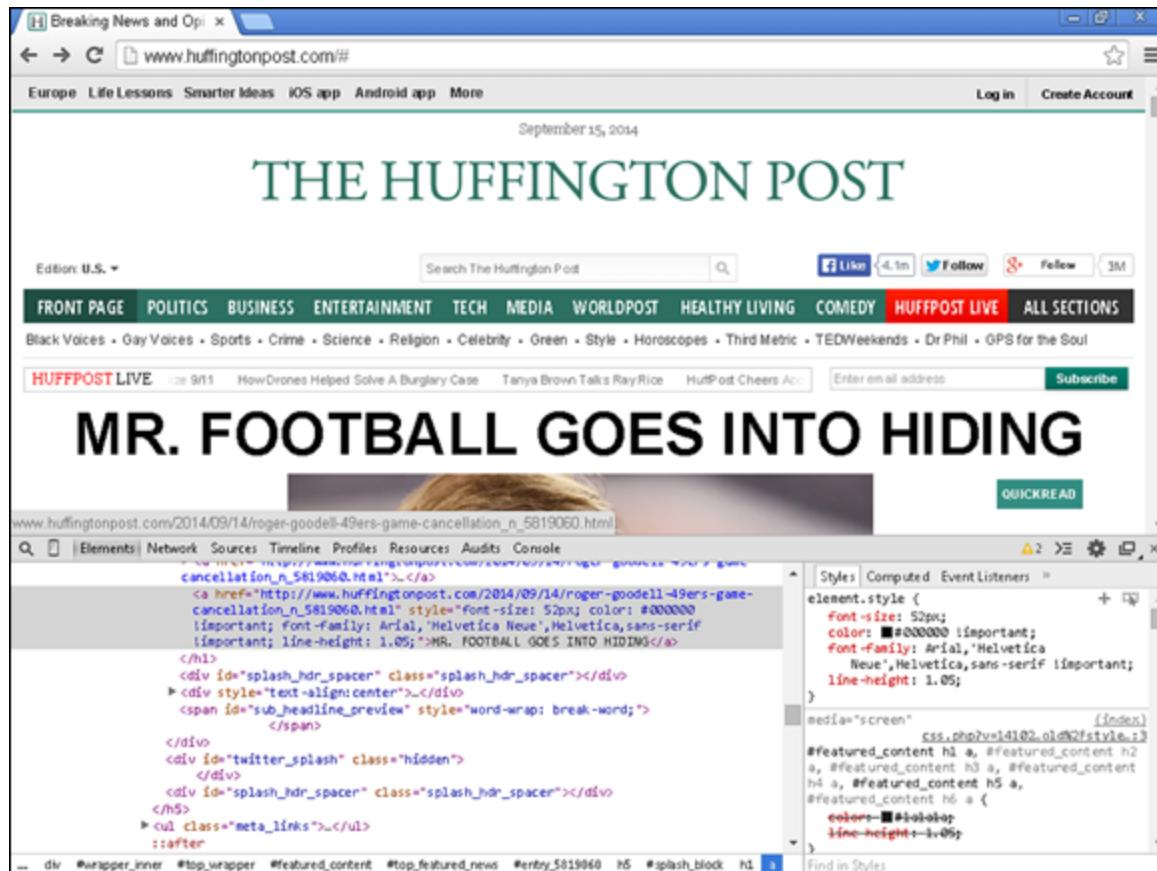
**TIP** If the element.style section is blank and no color property appears, you can still add it manually. To do so, click once in the element.style section, and when the blinking cursor appears, type color: purple. The headline changes to purple.



**FIGURE 6-3:** The Huffington Post website before modification.



**FIGURE 6-4:** The CSS rules that style the Huffington Post website.



**FIGURE 6-5:** Changing the CSS changes the color of the headline.



**TIP** As with HTML, you can modify any website's CSS using Chrome's Inspect Element feature, also known as Developer Tools. Most modern browsers, including Firefox, Safari, and Opera, have a similar feature.

## Common CSS Tasks and Selectors

Although CSS includes over 150 properties, and many values for each property, on modern websites a handful of CSS properties and values do the majority of the work. In the previous section, when you “hacked” the CSS on a live website, you changed the heading color — a common task in CSS. Other common tasks performed with CSS include:

- » Changing font size, style, font family, and decoration
- » Customizing links including color, background color, and link state
- » Adding background images and formatting foreground images

## ***Font gymnastics: size, color, style, family, and decoration***

CSS lets you control text in many HTML elements. The most common text-related CSS properties and values are shown in [Table 6-1](#). I describe these properties and values more fully in the sections that follow.

**TABLE 6-1** Common CSS Properties and Values for Styling Text

<b>Property Name</b>	<b>Possible Values</b>	<b>Description</b>
font-size	pixels (#px) % em (#em)	Specifies the size of text measured either in pixels, as a percentage of the containing element's font size, or with an em value which is calculated by desired pixel value divided by containing element font size in pixels. Example: <code>font-size: 16px;</code>
color	name hex code rgb value	Changes the color of the text specified using names ( <code>color: blue;</code> ), hexadecimal code ( <code>color: #0000FF;</code> ), or RGB (red, green, and blue) value ( <code>color: rgb(0, 0, 255);</code> ).
font-style	normal italic	Sets font to appear in italics (or not).
font-weight	normal bold	Sets font to appear as bold (or not).
font-family	font name	Sets the font typeface. Example: <code>font-family: "serif";</code>
text-decoration	none underline line-through	Sets font to have an underline or strikethrough (or not).

## ***Setting the font-size***

As in a word processor, you can set the size of the font you're using with CSS's font-size property. You have a few options for setting the font size, and the most common is to use pixels, as in the following:

```
p {  
  font-size: 16px;  
}
```

In this example, I used the p selector to size the paragraph text to 16 pixels. One disadvantage of using pixels to size your font occurs when users who prefer a large font size for readability have changed their browser settings to a default font size value that's larger than the one you specify on your site. In these situations, the font size specified in the browser takes precedence, and the fonts on your site will not scale to adjust to these preferences.

Percentage-sizing and em values, the other options to size your fonts, are considered more accessibility-friendly. The default browser font-size of normal text is 16 pixels. With percentage-sizing and em values, fonts can be sized relative to the user-specified default. For example, the CSS for percentage-sizing looks like this:

```
p {  
  font-size: 150%;  
}
```

In this example, I used the p selector to size the paragraph text to 150% of the default size. If the browser's default font size was set at 16 pixels, this paragraph's font would appear sized at 24 pixels (150% of 16).



**TECHNICAL STUFF**

A font-size equal to 1px is equivalent to one pixel on your monitor, so the actual size of the text displayed varies according to the size of the monitor. Accordingly, for a fixed font size in pixels, the text appears smaller as you increase the screen resolution.

## ***Setting the color***

The `color` property sets the color in one of three ways:

- » **Name:** 147 colors can be referenced by name. You can reference common colors, such as black, blue, and red, along with uncommon colors, such as burlywood, lemon chiffon, thistle, and rebeccapurple.



TECHNICAL STUFF Rebecca Meyer, the daughter of prominent CSS standards author Eric Meyer, passed away in 2014 from brain cancer at the age of six. In response, the CSS standardization committee approved adding a shade of purple called rebeccapurple to the CSS specification in Rebecca's honor. All major Internet browsers have implemented support for the color.

- » **Hex code:** Colors can be defined by component parts of red, green, and blue, and when using hexadecimal code over 16 million colors can be referenced. In the code example, I set the `h1` color equal to `#FF0000`. After the hashtag, the first two digits (FF) refers to the red in the color, the next two digits (00) refers to the green in the color, and the final two digits (00) refers to the blue in the color.
- » **RGB value:** Just like hex codes, RGB values specify the red, green, and blue component parts for over 16 million colors. RGB values are the decimal equivalent to hexadecimal values.



TIP Don't worry about trying to remember hex codes or RGB values. You can easily identify colors using an online color picker such as the one at [www.w3schools.com/tags/ref\\_colorpicker.asp](http://www.w3schools.com/tags/ref_colorpicker.asp).

The following example shows all three types of color changes:

```
p {  
  color: red  
}  
h1 {
```

```
    color: #FF0000
}
li {
    color: rgb(255, 0, 0)
}
```



**REMEMBER** li is the element name for a list item in ordered or unordered lists.



**TIP** All three colors in the code example above reference the same shade of red. For the full list of colors that can be referenced by name see here: [www.w3.org/TR/css3-color/#svg-color](http://www.w3.org/TR/css3-color/#svg-color).

## ***Setting the font-style and font-weight***

The font-style property can set text to italics, and the font-weight property can set text to bold. For each of these properties, the default is normal, which doesn't need to be specified. In the example below, the paragraph is styled so the font appears italicized and bold. Here's an example of each:

```
p {
    font-style: italics;
    font-weight: bold;
}
```

## ***Setting the font-family***

The font-family property sets the typeface used for text. The property is set equal to one font, or to a list of fonts separated by commas. Your website visitors will have a variety of different fonts installed on their computers, but the font-family property displays your specified font only if that font is already installed on their system.

The font-family property can be set equal to two types of values:

- » **Font name:** Specific font names such as Times New Roman, Arial, and Courier.
- » **Generic font family:** Modern browsers usually define one installed font for each generic font family. These five generic font families include
  - serif (Times New Roman, Palantino)
  - sans-serif (Helvetica, Verdana)
  - monospace (Courier, Andale Mono)
  - cursive (Comic Sans, Florence)
  - fantasy (Impact, Oldtown)

When using `font-family` it's best to define two or three specific fonts followed by a generic font family as a fallback in case the fonts you specify aren't installed, as in the following example:

```
p {  
  font-family: "Times New Roman", Helvetica, serif;  
}
```

In this example, the paragraph's font family is defined as Times New Roman. If Times New Roman isn't installed on the user's computer, the browser then uses Helvetica. If Helvetica is not installed, the browser will use any available font in the generic serif font family.



**TIP** When using a font name with multiple words (such as Times New Roman) enclose the font name in quotes.

## ***Setting the text-decoration***

The `text-decoration` property sets any font underlining or strikethrough. By default, the property is equal to `none`, which does not have to be specified. In the following example, any text with an `h1` heading is underlined whereas any text inside a paragraph tag is made strikethrough:

```
h1 {  
    text-decoration: underline;  
}  
p {  
    text-decoration: line-through;  
}
```

## Customizing links

In general, browsers display links as blue underlined text. Originally, this default behavior minimized the confusion between content on the page and an interactive link. Today, almost every website styles links in its own way. Some websites don't underline links; others retain the underlining but style links in colors other than blue, and so on.



**REMEMBER** The HTML anchor element (`a`) is used to create links. The text between the opening and closing anchor tag is the link description, and the URL set in the `href` attribute is the address the browser visits when the link is clicked.

The anchor tag has evolved over time and today has four states:

- » **link:** A link that a user has not clicked or visited.
- » **visited:** A link that a user has clicked or visited.
- » **hover:** A link that the user hovers the mouse cursor over without clicking.
- » **active:** A link the user has begun to click but hasn't yet released the mouse button.

CSS can style each of these four states, most often by using the properties and values shown in [Table 6-2](#).

### **TABLE 6-2 Common CSS Properties and Values for Styling Links**

---

---

<b>Property Name</b>	<b>Possible Values</b>	<b>Description</b>
color	name hex code rgb value	Link color specified using names (color: blue;), hexadecimal code (color: #0000FF;), or RGB value (color: rgb(0, 0, 255);).
text-decoration	none underline	Sets link to have an underline (or not).

The following example styles links in a way that's similar to the way they're styled in articles at Wikipedia, where links appear blue by default, underlined on mouse hover, and orange when active. As shown in [Figure 6-6](#), the first link to Chief Technology Officer of the United States appears underlined as it would if my mouse was hovering over it. Also, the link to Google appears orange as it would if active and my mouse was clicking it.

```
a:link{
  color: rgb(6,69,173);
  text-decoration: none;
}
a:visited {
  color: rgb(11,0,128)
}
a:hover {
  text-decoration: underline
}
a:active {
  color: rgb(250,167,0)
}
```

This article is about a technology executive. For the actress, see [Meagan Smith](#).

**Megan J. Smith** (born October 1964<sup>[1]</sup>) is the [Chief Technology Officer of the United States](#). She was previously a vice president of Google<sup>[x]</sup> at Google, was vice president of business development at Google for nine years, and was general manager of Google.org<sup>[2]</sup> and the former CEO of Planet Out.<sup>[3][4]</sup> She serves on the boards of MIT<sup>[5]</sup> [Vital Voices](#), is a member of the USAID Advisory Committee on Voluntary Aid<sup>[6]</sup> and co-founded the Malala Fund.<sup>[7][8]</sup> On September 4, 2014, she was named as the third (and first female) Chief Technology Officer of the United States, succeeding Todd Park.<sup>[9][10]</sup>

**Contents** [hide]

- 1 Early life and education
- 2 Career
- 3 Recognition
- 4 Personal life
- 5 References
- 6 External links

**Early life and education** [\[edit\]](#)

Smith grew up in Buffalo, New York, and Fort Erie, Ontario.<sup>[citation needed]</sup> and spent many summers at the Chautauqua Institution in Chautauqua, New York, where her mother, Joan Aspell Smith, was director of the Chautauqua

[https://en.wikipedia.org/w/index.php?title=Chief\\_Technology\\_Officer\\_of\\_the\\_United\\_States&oldid=5800000](https://en.wikipedia.org/w/index.php?title=Chief_Technology_Officer_of_the_United_States&oldid=5800000)

<b>3rd Chief Technology Officer of the United States</b>
<b>Incumbent</b>
<b>Assumed office</b>

**FIGURE 6-6:** Wikipedia.org page showing link, visited, hover, and active states.



**REMEMBER** Remember to include the colon between the a selector and the link state.



**TECHNICAL STUFF** Although explaining why is out of the scope of this book, CSS specifications insist that you define the various link states in the order shown here — link, visited, hover, and then active. However, it is acceptable to not define a link state, as long as this order is preserved.

The various link states are known as *pseudo-class selectors*. Pseudo-class selectors add a keyword to CSS selectors and allow you to style a

special state of the selected element.

## ***Adding background images and styling foreground images***

You can use CSS to add background images behind HTML elements. Most commonly, the `background-image` property is used to add background images to individual HTML elements such as `div`, `table`, and `p`, or (when applied to the `body` element) to entire web pages.



**TIP** Background images with smaller file sizes load more quickly than larger images. This is especially important if your visitors commonly browse your website using a mobile phone, which typically has a slower data connection.

The properties and values in [Table 6-3](#) show the options for adding background images.

**TABLE 6-3 CSS Properties and Values for Background Images**

<b>Property Name</b>	<b>Possible Values</b>	<b>Description</b>
<code>background-image</code>	<code>url("URL")</code>	Adds a background image from the image link specified at <code>URL</code> .
<code>background-size</code>	<code>auto</code> <code>contain</code> <code>cover</code> <code>width</code> <code>height</code> <code>(#px, %)</code>	Sets background size according to the value: <code>auto</code> (default value) displays the image as originally sized. <code>contain</code> scales the image's width and height so that it fits inside element. <code>cover</code> scales the image so element background is not visible. Background size can also be set by specifying width and height in pixels or as a percentage.

Property Name	Possible Values	Description
background-position	keywords position (#px, %)	Positions the background in element using keywords or exact position. <i>Keywords</i> are comprised of horizontal keywords (left, right, center), and vertical keywords (top, center, and bottom). The placement of the background can also be exactly defined using pixels or a percentage to describe the horizontal and vertical position relative to the element.
background-repeat	repeat repeat-x repeat-y no-repeat	Sets the background image to <i>tile</i> , or repeat, as follows: horizontally (repeat-x) vertically (repeat-y) horizontally and vertically (repeat) don't repeat at all (no-repeat).
background-attachment	scroll fixed	Sets the background to scroll with other content (scroll), or to remain fixed (fixed).

## Setting the `background-image`

As shown in the following example, the `background-image` property can set the background image for the entire web page or a specific element.

```
body {
background-image:
url("http://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/e/e5/Chrysler_Building_Mid
town_Manhattan_New_York_City_1932.jpg");
}
```



**TIP** You can find background images at sites such as [images.google.com](http://images.google.com), [www.flickr.com](http://www.flickr.com), or [publicdomainarchive.com](http://publicdomainarchive.com).



**WARNING** Check image copyright information to see if you have permission to use the image, and comply with image's licensing terms, which can include attributing or identifying the author.

Additionally, directly linking to images on other servers is called *hotlinking*. It is preferable to download the image, and host and link to the image on your own server.

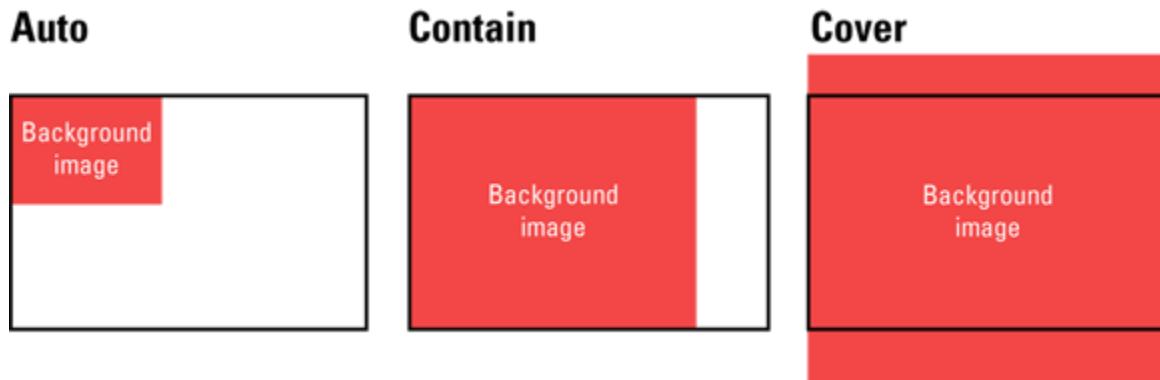


**TIP** If you'd prefer a single-color background instead of an image, use the `background-color` property. This property is defined in much the same way as the `background-image` property. Just set it equal to a color name, RGB value, or hex code, as I describe earlier in this chapter in the section "[Setting the color](#)."

### ***Setting the background-size***

By specifying exact dimensions using pixels or percentages, the `background-size` property can scale background images to be smaller or larger, as needed. In addition, this property has three dimensions commonly used on web pages, as follows (see [Figure 6-7](#)):

- » `auto`: This value maintains the original dimensions of an image.
- » `cover`: This value scales an image so all dimensions are greater than or equal to the size of the container or HTML element.
- » `contain`: This value scales an image so all dimensions are less than or equal to the size of the container or HTML element.



**FIGURE 6-7:** Setting the background size to three different values.

### ***Setting the background-position***

The `background-position` sets the initial position of the background image. The default initial position is in the top left corner of the web page or specific element. You change the default position by specifying a pair of keyword or position values, as follows:

- » **Keywords:** The first keyword (left, center, or right) represents the horizontal position, and the second keyword (top, center, or bottom) represents the vertical position.
- » **Position:** The first position value represents the horizontal position, and the second value represents the vertical. Each value is defined using pixels or percentages, representing the distance from the top-left of the browser or the specified element. For example, `background-position: center center` is equal to `background-position: 50% 50%`. (See [Figure 6-8](#).)



**FIGURE 6-8:** The initial background image positions specified using keywords or position.

## ***Setting the background-repeat***

The background-repeat property sets the direction the background will tile as follows:

- » **repeat**: This value (the default) repeats the background image both horizontally and vertically.
- » **repeat-x**: This value repeats the background image only horizontally.
- » **repeat-y**: This repeats the background image only vertically.
- » **no-repeat**: This value prevents the background from repeating at all.

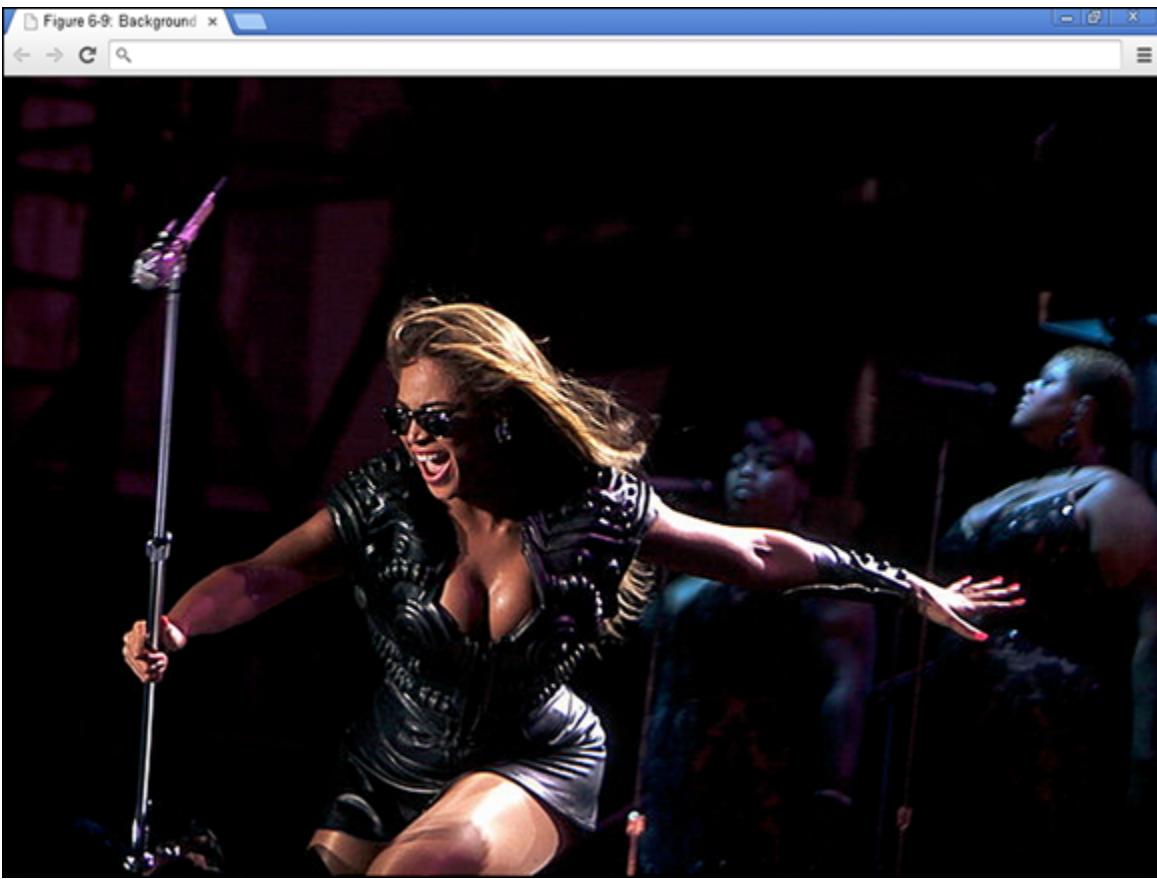
## ***Setting the background-attachment***

The background-attachment property sets the background image to move (or not) when the user scrolls through content on the page. The property can be set to:

- » **scroll**: The background image moves when the user scrolls.
- » **fixed**: The background image does not move when the user scrolls.

The following code segment uses several of the properties discussed earlier to add a background image that stretches across the entire web page, is aligned in the center, does not repeat, and does not move when the user scrolls. (See [Figure 6-9](#).)

```
body {  
background-image:  
url("http://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/thumb/a/a0/USMC-090807-  
M-8097K-022.jpg/640px-USMC-090807-M-8097K-022.jpg");  
background-size: cover;  
background-position: center center;  
background-repeat: no-repeat;  
background-attachment: fixed;  
}
```



**FIGURE 6-9:** An image set as the background for entire page.

## ***Styling Me Pretty***

The CSS rules discussed in this chapter give you a taste of a few common styling properties and values. Although you aren't likely to remember every property and value, with practice the property and value names will come to you naturally. After you understand the basic syntax, the next step is to actually incorporate CSS into your web page and try your hand at styling HTML elements.

### ***Adding CSS to your HTML***

There are three ways to apply CSS to a website to style HTML elements:

- » **In-line CSS:** CSS can be specified within an HTML file on the same line as the HTML element it styles. This method requires placing the `style` attribute inside the opening HTML tag. Generally, in-line CSS

is the least preferred way of styling a website because the styling rules are frequently repeated. Here's an example of in-line CSS:

```
<!DOCTYPE html>
<html>
<head>
  <title>Record IPOs</title>
</head>
<body>
  <h1 style="color: red;">Alibaba IPO expected to be biggest IPO of
  all time</h1>
</body>
</html>
```

» **Embedded CSS:** With this approach, CSS appears within the HTML file, but separated from the HTML tags it modifies. The CSS code appears within the HTML file between an opening and closing `<style>` tag, which itself is located between an opening and closing `<head>` tag. Embedded CSS is usually used when styling a single HTML page differently than the rest of your website.

In this example, the embedded CSS styles the header red, just like the in-line CSS does above.

```
<!DOCTYPE html>
<html>
<head>
  <title>Record IPOs</title>
  <style type="text/css">
    h1 {
      color: red;
    }
  </style>
</head>
<body>
  <h1>Alibaba IPO expected to be biggest IPO of all time</h1>
</body>
</html>
```

» **Separate style sheets:** CSS can be specified in a separate *style sheet* — that is, in a separate file. Using a separate style sheet is the preferred approach to storing your CSS because it makes

maintaining the HTML file easier and allows you to quickly make changes. In the HTML file, the `<link>` tag is used to refer to the separate style sheet, and has three attributes:

- `href`: Specifies the CSS filename.
- `rel`: Should be set equal to "stylesheet".
- `type`: Should be set equal to "text/css".



With three different ways of styling HTML elements with CSS, all three ways could be used with contradictory styles. For example, say your in-line CSS styles `h1` elements as red, whereas embedded CSS styles them as blue, and a separate style sheet styles them as green. To resolve these conflicts, in-line CSS has the highest priority and overrides any other CSS rules. If no in-line CSS is specified, then embedded CSS has the next highest priority, and finally in the absence of in-line or embedded CSS, the styles in a separate style sheet are used. In the example, with the presence of all three styles, the `h1` element text would appear red because in-line CSS has the highest priority and overrides the embedded CSS blue styling, and the separate CSS green styling.

The following example uses a separate CSS style sheet to style the header red, as in the previous two examples:

### CSS: style.css

```
h1 {  
    color: red;  
}
```

### HTML: index.html

```
<!DOCTYPE html>  
<html>  
<head>  
<title>Record IP0s</title>
```

```
<link href="style.css" text="text/css" rel="stylesheet">
</head>
<body>
    <h1>Alibaba IPO expected to be biggest IPO of all time</h1>
</body>
</html>
```

## ***Building your first web page***

Practice your HTML online using the Codecademy website.

Codecademy is a free website created in 2011 to allow anyone to learn how to code right in the browser, without installing or downloading any software. You can practice all of the tags (and a few more) discussed in this chapter by following these steps:

- 1. Open your browser, go to [www.dummies.com/go/codingfd](http://www.dummies.com/go/codingfd), and click on the Codecademy link.**
- 2. Sign in to your Codecademy account.**  
Signing up is discussed in [Chapter 3](#). Creating an account allows you to save your progress as you work, but it's optional.
- 3. Navigate to and click on Get Started with HTML.**
- 4. Background information is presented in the upper left portion of the site, and instructions are presented in the lower left portion of the site.**
- 5. Complete the instructions in the main coding window. As you type, a live preview of your code is generated.**
- 6. After you have finished completing the instructions, click the Save and Submit Code button.**

If you have followed the instructions correctly, a green checkmark appears, and you proceed to the next exercise. If an error exists in your code a warning appears with a suggested fix. If you run into a problem, or have a bug you cannot fix, click on the hint, use the Q&A Forums, or tweet me at @nikhilgabraham and include hashtag #codingFD.

# Chapter 7

## Next Steps with CSS

---

### IN THIS CHAPTER

**Formatting lists and tables**

**Styling web pages using parent and child selectors**

**Naming pieces of code using `id` and `class`**

**Using the box model to position HTML elements on the page**

---

*Design is not just what it looks like and feels like. Design is how it works.*

—STEVE JOBS

In this chapter, you continue building on the CSS you learned in the previous chapter. So far, the CSS rules you've seen applied to the entire web page, but now they get more specific. You learn how to style several more HTML elements, including lists, tables, and forms, and how to select and style specific parts of a web page, such as the first paragraph in a story or the last row of a table. Finally, you learn how professional web developers use CSS and the box model to control down to the pixel the positioning of elements on the page. Understanding the box model is not necessary to build our app in [Chapter 10](#).

Before diving in, remember the big picture: HTML puts content on the web page, and CSS further styles and positions that content. Instead of trying to memorize every rule, use this chapter to understand CSS basics. CSS selectors have properties and values that modify HTML elements. There is no better way to learn than by doing, so feel free to skip ahead to the Codecademy practice lessons at the end of the chapter. Then, use this chapter as a reference when you have questions about specific elements you are trying to style.

# ***Styling (More) Elements on Your Page***

In this section, you discover common ways to style lists and tables. In the previous chapter, the CSS properties and rules you learned like `color` and `font-family` can apply to any HTML element containing text. By contrast, some of the CSS shown here is used only to style lists, tables, and forms.

## ***Styling lists***

In [Chapter 5](#) you learned how to create ordered lists, which start with markers like letters or numbers, and unordered lists, which start with markers like bullet points. By default, list items in an ordered list use numbers (for example, 1, 2, 3), whereas list items in unordered lists use a solid-black-circle (•).

These defaults may not be appropriate for all circumstances. In fact, the two most common tasks when styling a list include:

- » **Changing the marker used to create a list:** For unordered lists, like this one, you can use a solid disc, empty circle, or square bullet point. For ordered lists, you can use numbers, roman numerals (upper or lower case), or case letters (upper or lower).
- » **Specifying an image to use as the bullet point:** You can create your own marker for ordered and unordered lists instead of using the default option. For example, if you created an unordered bulleted list for a burger restaurant, instead of using a solid circle as a bullet point you could use a color hamburger icon image.

You can accomplish either of these tasks by using the properties in [Table 7-1](#) with an `ol` or `ul` selector to modify the list type.

---

## **TABLE 7-1 Common CSS Properties and Values for Styling Lists**

---

<b>Property Name</b>	<b>Possible Values</b>	<b>Description</b>
list-style-type (unordered list)	disc circle square none	Sets the markers used to create list items in an unordered list to disc (●), circle (○), square (■), or none.
list-style-type (ordered list)	decimal upper-roman lower-roman upper-alpha lower-alpha	Sets the markers used to create list items in an ordered list to decimal (1, 2, 3), uppercase roman numerals (I, II, III), lowercase roman numerals (i, ii, iii), uppercase letters (A, B, C), or lowercase letters (a, b, c).
list-style-type image	url("URL")	When <i>URL</i> is replaced with the image link sets an image as the marker used to create a list item.



**REMEMBER** CSS selectors using properties and rules modify HTML elements by the same name. For example, [Figure 7-1](#) has HTML `<ul>` tags that are referred to in CSS with the `ul` selector, and styled using the properties and rules in [Table 7-1](#).

```

1  <html>
2  <head>
3  <title>Figure 7-1: Lists</title>
4  <style>
5  ul {
6      list-style-type: square;
7  }
8  ol {
9      list-style-type: upper-roman;
10 }
11 li {
12     font-size: 27px;
13 }
14 </style>
15 </head>
16 <body>
17 <h1>Ridesharing startups</h1>
18 <ul>
19     <li>Hailo: book a taxi on your phone</li>
20     <li>Lyft: request a peer to peer ride</li>
21     <li style="list-style-image: url('car.png');">Uber: request a drivers for hire</li>
22 </ul>
23 <h1>Food startups</h1>
24 <ol>
25     <li>Grubhub: order takeout food online</li>
26     <li style="list-style-image: url('burger.png');">Blue Apron: subscribe to weekly meal
27         delivery</li>
28     <li>Instacart: request groceries delivered the same day</li>
29 </ol>
30 </body>
31 </html>

```

**FIGURE 7-1:** Embedded and in-line CSS.



**TIP** Many text website navigation bars are created using unordered bulleted lists with the marker set to none. You can see an example in the Codecademy CSS Positioning course starting with exercise 21.

CSS properties and values apply to a CSS selector and modify an HTML element. In the following example, embedded CSS (between the opening and closing `<style>` tags) and in-line CSS (defined with the `style` attribute in the HTML) is used to:

- » Change the marker in an unordered list to a square using `list-style-type`
- » Change the marker in an ordered list to uppercase roman numerals again using `list-style-type`
- » Set a custom marker to an icon using `list-style-image`

The code for this is shown below and in [Figure 7-1](#). [Figure 7-2](#) shows this code rendered in the browser.

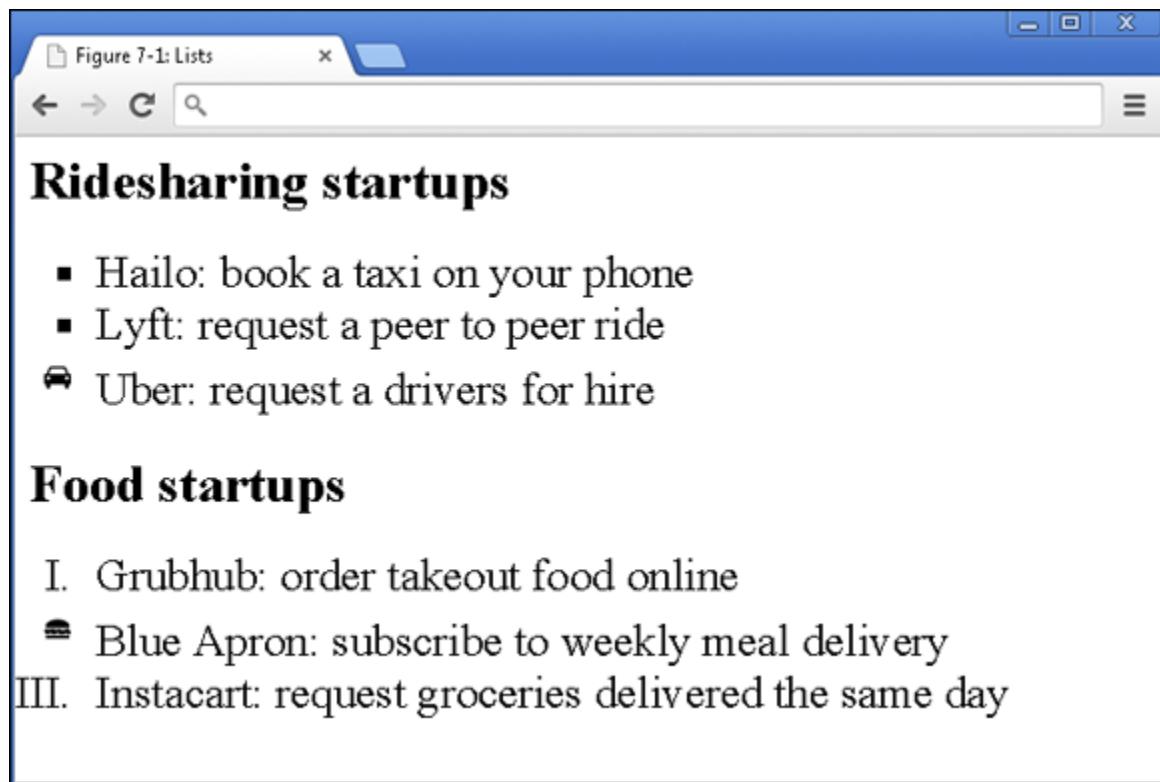
```
<html>
<head>
<title>Figure 7-1: Lists</title>
<style>
ul {
    list-style-type: square;
}

ol {
    list-style-type: upper-roman;
}
li {
    font-size: 27px;
}

</style>
</head>
<body>

<h1>Ridesharing startups</h1>
<ul>
    <li>Hailo: book a taxi on your phone</li>
    <li>Lyft: request a peer to peer ride</li>
    <li style="list-style-image: url('car.png');">Uber: hire a driver</li>
</ul>

<h1>Food startups</h1>
<ol>
    <li>Grubhub: order takeout food online</li>
    <li style="list-style-image: url('burger.png');">Blue Apron: subscribe to
        weekly meal delivery</li>
    <li>Instacart: request groceries delivered the same day</li>
</ol>
</body>
</html>
```



**FIGURE 7-2:** Ordered and unordered lists modified to change the marker type.



**TIP** If the custom image for your marker is larger than the text, your text may not align vertically with the marker. To fix this, you can either increase the font size of each list item using `font-size`, as shown in the example, increase the margin between each list item using `margin`, or set `list-style-type` to `none` and set a background image on the `ul` element using `background-image`.



**REMEMBER** There are three ways to apply CSS — inline CSS using the `style` attribute, embedded CSS using an opening and closing `<style>` tag, and in a separate CSS style sheet.

## *Designing tables*

In [Chapter 5](#), you found out how to create basic tables. By default, the width of these tables expands to fit content inside the table, content in individual cells is left aligned, and no borders are displayed.

These defaults may not be appropriate for all circumstances. Deprecated (unsupported) HTML attributes can modify these defaults, but at any time browsers could stop recognizing these attributes, and any tables created with these attributes would display incorrectly. As a safer alternative, CSS can style tables with greater control. Three common tasks CSS can perform for tables include the following:

- » Setting the width of a table, table row, or individual table cell with the `width` property.
- » Aligning text within the table with the `text-align` property.
- » Displaying borders within the table with the `border` property. (See [Table 7-2](#).)

**TABLE 7-2** Common CSS Properties and Values for Styling Tables

<b>Property Name</b>	<b>Possible Values</b>	<b>Description</b>
width	<code>pixels</code> (#px) %	Width of table measured either in pixels on-screen or as a percentage of the browser window or container tag.
text-align	<code>left</code> <code>right</code> <code>center</code> <code>justify</code>	Position of text relative to the table according to the value of the attribute. For example, <code>text-align="center"</code> positions the text in the center of the table cell.
border	<code>width</code> <code>style</code> <code>color</code>	Defines three properties in one — <code>border-width</code> , <code>border-style</code> , and <code>border-color</code> . The values must be specified in this order: Width (pixel), style (none, dotted, dashed, solid), and color (name, hexadecimal code, RGB value). For example, <code>border: 1px solid red</code> .

In the following example, the table is wider than the text in any cell, the text in each cell is centered, and the table border is applied to header cells:

```
<html>
<head>
<title>Figure 7-2: Tables</title>
<style>
  table {
    width: 700px;
  }
  table, td {
    text-align: center;
    border: 1px solid black;
    border-collapse: collapse;
  }
</style>
</head>
<body>
<SPiTable>
  <caption>Desktop browser market share (August 2014)</caption>
  <tr>
    <th>Source</th>
    <th>Chrome</th>
    <th>IE</th>
    <th>Firefox</th>
    <th>Safari</th>
    <th>Other</th>
  </tr>
  <tr>
    <td>StatCounter</td>
    <td>50%</td>
    <td>22%</td>
    <td>19%</td>
    <td>5%</td>
    <td>4%</td>
  </tr>
  <tr>
    <td>W3Counter</td>
    <td>38%</td>
```

```

<td>21%</td>
<td>16%</td>
<td>16%</td>
<td>9%</td>
</tr>
</table>
</body>
</html>

```



**TIP** The HTML tag `<caption>` and the CSS property `border-collapse` further style the table below. The `<caption>` tag adds a title to the table. Although you can create a similar effect using the `<h1>` tag, `<caption>` associates the title with the table. The CSS `border-collapse` property can have a value of `separate` or `collapse`. The `separate` value renders each border separately (refer to [Figure 5-9](#)), whereas `collapse` draws a single border when possible (see [Figure 7-3](#)).

The screenshot shows a web browser window with the title "Figure 7-2: Tables". The content is a table titled "Desktop browser market share (August 2014)". The table has six columns: Source, Chrome, IE, Firefox, Safari, and Other. There are two rows of data: one for StatCounter and one for W3Counter. The data is as follows:

Source	Chrome	IE	Firefox	Safari	Other
StatCounter	50%	22%	19%	5%	4%
W3Counter	38%	21%	16%	16%	9%

**FIGURE 7-3:** Table with width, text alignment, and border modified using CSS.

## Selecting Elements to Style

Currently, the CSS you have seen styles every HTML element that matches the CSS selector. For example, in [Figure 7-3](#) the table and `td` selectors have a `text-align` property that centered text in every table

cell. Depending on the content, you may want to only center text in the header row, but left-align text in subsequent rows. Two ways to accomplish this include:

- » Styling specific HTML elements based on position to other elements.
- » Naming HTML elements, and only styling elements by name.

## ***Styling specific elements***

When styling specific elements, it is helpful to visualize the HTML code as a family tree with parents, children, and siblings. In the following code example (also shown in [Figure 7-4](#), the tree starts with the `html` element, which has two children `head` and `body`. The `head` has a child `title`. The `body` has `h1`, `ul`, and `p` elements as children. Finally, the `ul` element has `li` elements as children, and the `p` element has `a` elements as children. [Figure 7-4](#) shows how the following code appears in the browser, and [Figure 7-5](#) shows a depiction of the following code using the tree metaphor. Note that [Figure 7-6](#) shows each relationship once. For example, in the code below there is an `a` element inside each of three `li` elements, and [Figure 7-6](#) shows this `ul li a` relationship once.

```
<html>
<head>
  <title>Figure 7-3: DOM</title>
</head>
<body>

<h1>Parody Tech Twitter Accounts</h1>
<ul>
  <li>
    <a href="http://twitter.com/BoredElonMusk">Bored Elon Musk</a>
  </li>
  <li>
    <a href="http://twitter.com/VinodColeslaw">Vinod Coleslaw</a>
  </li>
  <li>
    <a href="http://twitter.com/Horse\_ebooks">horse ebooks</a>
  </li>
</ul>
```

```

        </li>
    </ul>
    <h1>Parody Non-Tech Twitter Accounts</h1>
    <p><a href="http://twitter.com/SeinfeldToday">Modern Seinfeld</a></p>
    <p><a href="http://twitter.com/Lord_Voldemort7">Lord_Voldemort7</a></p>

</body>
</html>

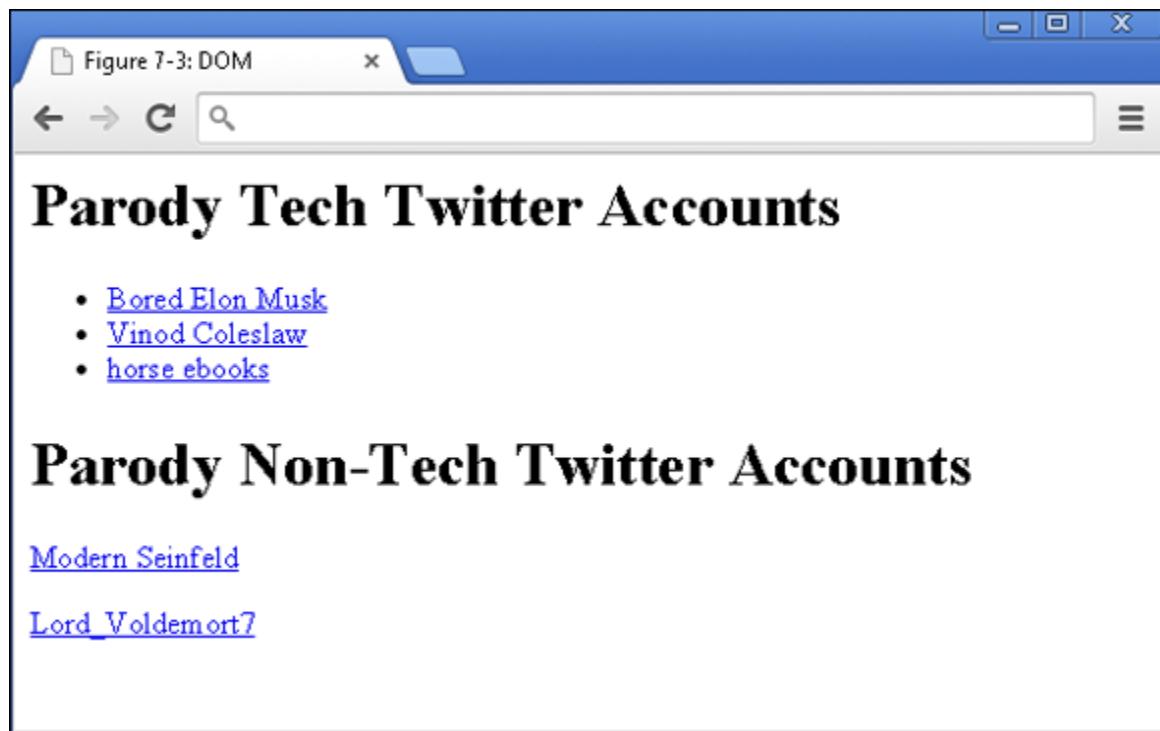
```

```

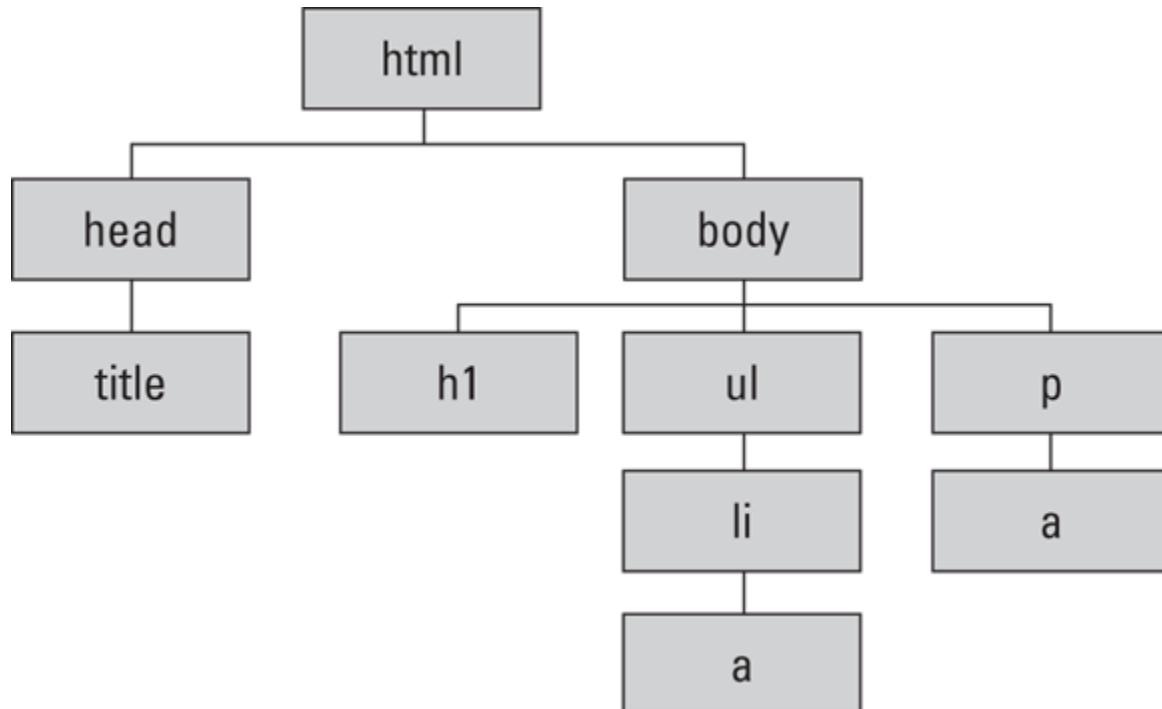
1  <html>
2  <head>
3  <title>Figure 7-3: DOM</title>
4  </head>
5  <body>
6
7  <h1>Parody Tech Twitter Accounts</h1>
8  <ul>
9  <li>
10 <a href="http://twitter.com/BoredElonMusk">Bored Elon Musk</a>
11 </li>
12
13 <li>
14 <a href="http://twitter.com/VinodColeslaw">Vinod Coleslaw</a>
15 </li>
16
17 <li>
18 <a href="http://twitter.com/Horse_ebooks">horse ebooks</a>
19 </li>
20 </ul>
21
22 <h1>Parody Non-Tech Twitter Accounts</h1>
23 <p><a href="http://twitter.com/SeinfeldToday">Modern Seinfeld</a></p>
24 <p><a href="http://twitter.com/Lord_Voldemort7">Lord_Voldemort7</a></p>
25
26 </body>
27 </html>

```

**FIGURE 7-4:** Styling a family tree of elements.



**FIGURE 7-5:** Parody Tech and Non-Tech Twitter accounts (browser view).



**FIGURE 7-6:** Parody Tech and Non-Tech Twitter account (HTML tree or Document Object Model view).



**TIP** Bored Elon Musk is a parody of Elon Musk, the founder of PayPal, Tesla, and SpaceX. Vinod Coleslaw is a parody of Vinod Khosla, the Sun Microsystems co-founder and venture capitalist. Horse ebooks is a spambot that became an Internet phenomenon.



**TECHNICAL STUFF**

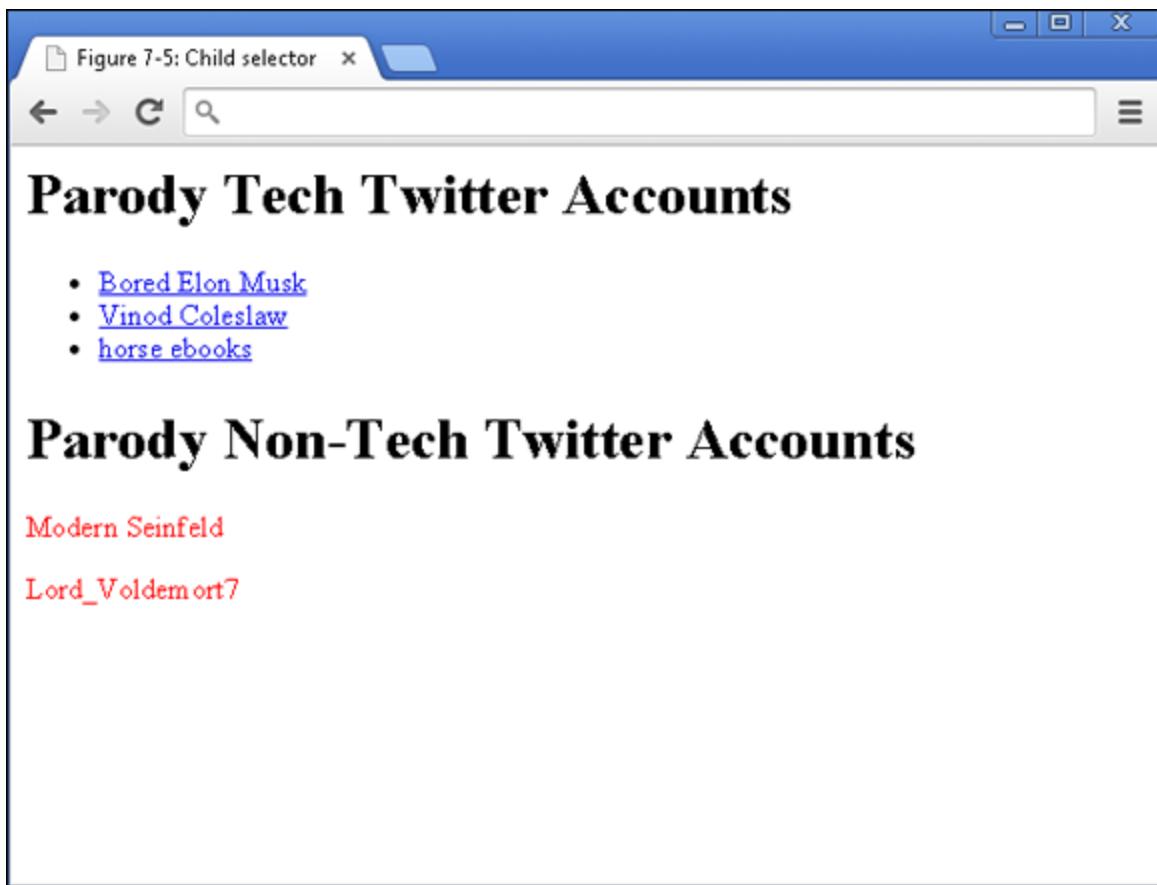
The HTML tree is called the *DOM* or *document object model*.

### ***Child selector***

The Parody Non-Tech Twitter account anchor tags are immediate children of the paragraph tags. If you wanted to style just the Parody Non-Tech Twitter accounts, you can use the *child selector*, which selects the immediate children of a specified element. A child selector is created by first listing the parent selector, then a greater-than sign (>), and finally the child selector.

In the following example, the anchor tags that are immediate children of the paragraph tags are selected, and those hyperlinks are styled with a red font color and without any underline. The Parody Tech Twitter accounts are not styled because they are direct children of the list item tag. (See [Figure 7-7](#).)

```
p > a {  
  color: red;  
  text-decoration: none;  
}
```



**FIGURE 7-7:** Child selector used to style the Parody Non-Tech Twitter accounts.



**REMEMBER** If you use just the `a` selector here, all the links on the page would be styled instead of just a selection.

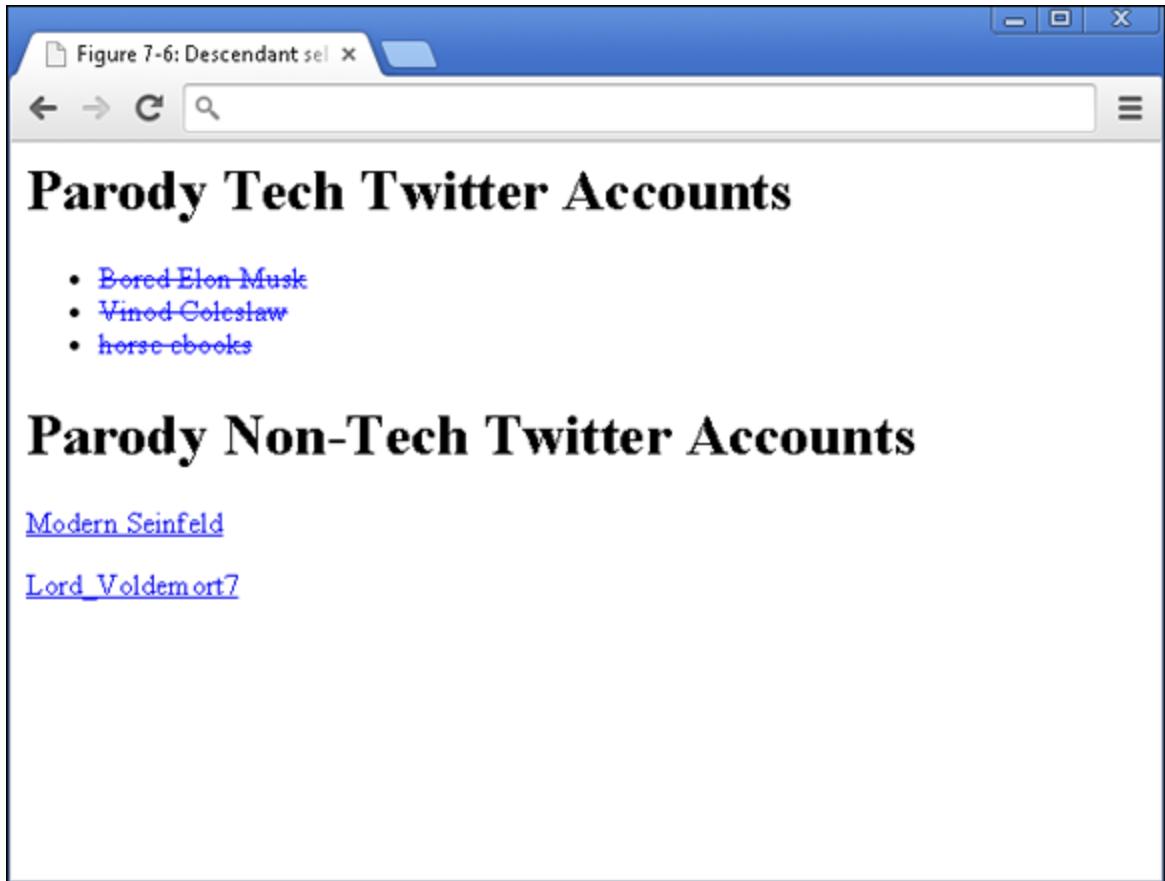
### **Descendant selector**

The Parody Tech Twitter account anchor tags are descendants, or located within, the unordered list. If you wanted to style just the Parody Tech Twitter accounts, you can use the *descendant selector*, which selects not just immediate children of a specified element but all elements nested within the specified element. A descendant selector is created by first listing the parent selector, a space, and finally the descendant selector you want to target.

In the following example, as shown in [Figure 7-8](#), the anchor tags which are descendants of the unordered list are selected, and those hyperlinks

are styled with a blue font color and are crossed out. The Parody Non-Tech Twitter accounts are not styled because they are not descendants of an unordered list.

```
ul a {  
    color: blue;  
    text-decoration: line-through;  
}
```



**FIGURE 7-8:** Child selector used to style the Parody Tech Twitter accounts.



**TIP** Interested in styling just the first anchor tag within a list, like the Modern Seinfeld Twitter account, or the second list item, like the Vinod Coleslaw Twitter account? Go to [w3schools.com](http://w3schools.com) and read more about the `first-child` ([www.w3schools.com/cssref/sel\\_firstchild.asp](http://www.w3schools.com/cssref/sel_firstchild.asp)), and `nth-`

child selectors ([www.w3schools.com/cssref/sel\\_nth-child.asp](http://www.w3schools.com/cssref/sel_nth-child.asp)).

## ***Naming HTML elements***

The other way of styling specific elements in CSS is to name your HTML elements. You name your code by using either the `id` or `class` attribute, and then style your code by referring to the `id` or `class` selector.

### ***Naming your code using the `id` attribute***

Use the `id` attribute to style one specific element on your web page. The `id` attribute can name any HTML element, and is always placed in the opening HTML tag. Additionally, each element can have only one `id` attribute value, and the attribute value must appear only once within the HTML file. After you define the attribute in the HTML file, you refer to the HTML element in your CSS by writing a hashtag (#) followed by the attribute value. Using the `id` attribute, the following code styles the Modern Seinfeld Twitter link the color red with a yellow background:

HTML:

```
<p><a href="http://twitter.com/SeinfeldToday" id="jerry">Modern Seinfeld</a>
</p>
```

CSS:

```
#jerry {
  color: red;
  background-color: yellow;
}
```

### ***Naming your code using the `class` attribute***

Use the `class` attribute to style multiple elements on your web page. The `class` attribute can name any HTML element, and is always placed in the opening HTML tag. The attribute value need not be unique within the HTML file. After you define the attribute in the HTML file, you refer to the HTML element by writing a period (.) followed by the

attribute value. Using the `class` attribute, the following code styles all the Parody Tech Twitter account links the color red with no underline:

HTML:

```
<ul>
  <li>
    <a href="http://twitter.com/BoredElonMusk" class="tech">Bored Elon
    Musk</a>
  </li>
  <li>
    <a href="http://twitter.com/VinodColeslaw" class="tech">Vinod Coleslaw</a>
  </li>
  <li>
    <a href="http://twitter.com/Horse_ebooks" class="tech">Horse ebooks</a>
  </li>
</ul>
```

CSS:

```
.tech {
  color: red;
  text-decoration: none;
}
```



**TIP** Proactively use a search engine, such as Google, to search for additional CSS effects. For example, if you wanted to increase the spacing between each list item, open your browser and search for *list item line spacing css*. Links appearing in the top ten results should include:

- » [www.w3schools.com](http://www.w3schools.com): A beginner tutorial site.
- » [www.stackoverflow.com](http://www.stackoverflow.com): A discussion board for experienced developers.
- » [www.mozilla.org](http://www.mozilla.org): A reference guide initially created by the foundation that maintains the Firefox browser, and now maintained by a community of developers.

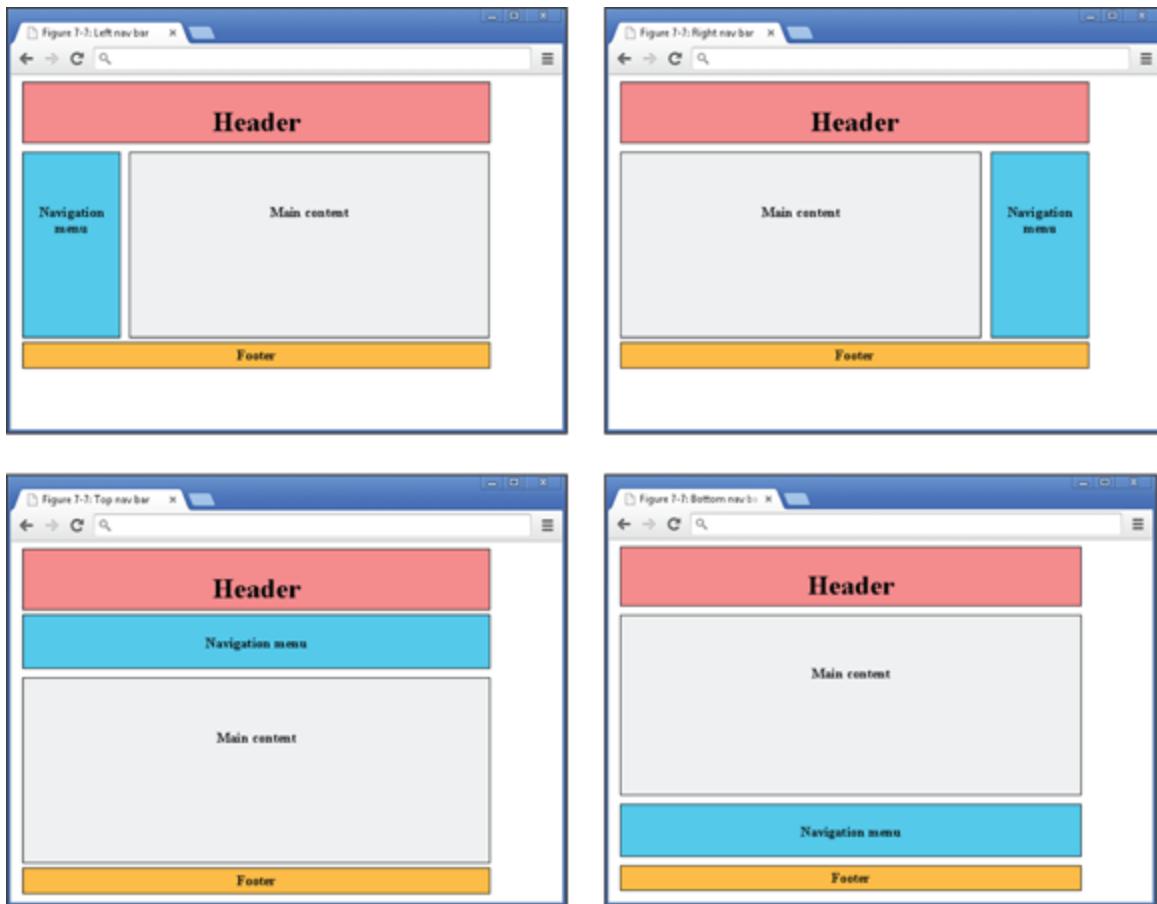
Each of these sites is a good first place to start, and you should look for answers that include example code.

## *Aligning and Laying Out Your Elements*

CSS not only allows control over the formatting of HTML elements, it also allows control over the placement of these elements on the page, known as page layout. Historically, developers used HTML tables to create page layouts. HTML table page layouts were tedious to create, and required that developers write a great deal of code to ensure consistency across browsers. CSS eliminated the need to use tables to create layouts, helped reduce code bloat, and increased control of page layouts.

### *Organizing data on the page*

Before diving in to any code, let's review in [Figure 7-9](#) some of the basic ways we can structure the page and the content on it. Layouts have evolved over time, with some layouts working well on desktop computers but not displaying optimally on tablet or mobile devices.



**FIGURE 7-9:** Vertical and horizontal navigation layouts.



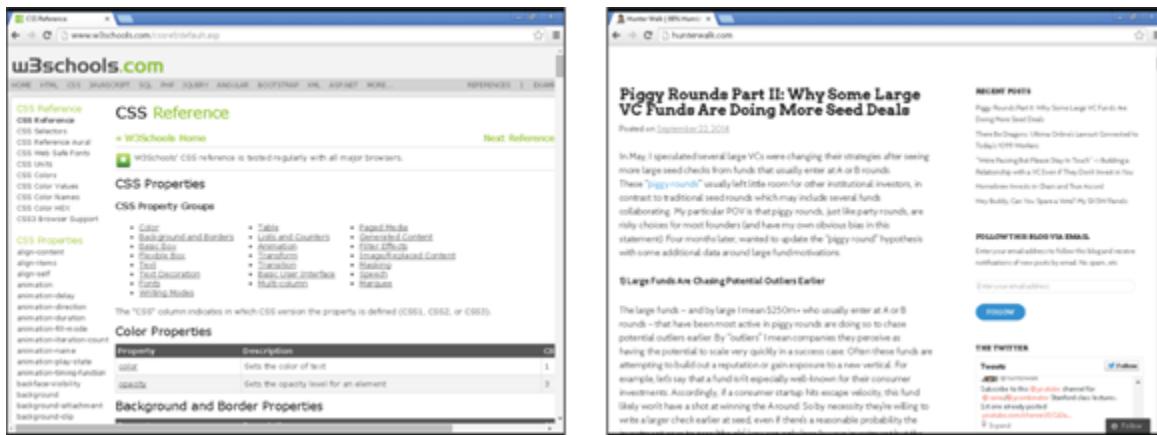
**TIP** Always ask yourself how your intended layout will appear on desktop, tablet, and mobile devices.

Hundreds of different layouts exist, and a few selected page layouts appear here along with example websites:



**TIP** Left and right navigation toolbars are not usually seen on mobile devices. Top navigation toolbars are used both on desktop and mobile devices, and bottom navigation toolbars are most common on mobile devices.

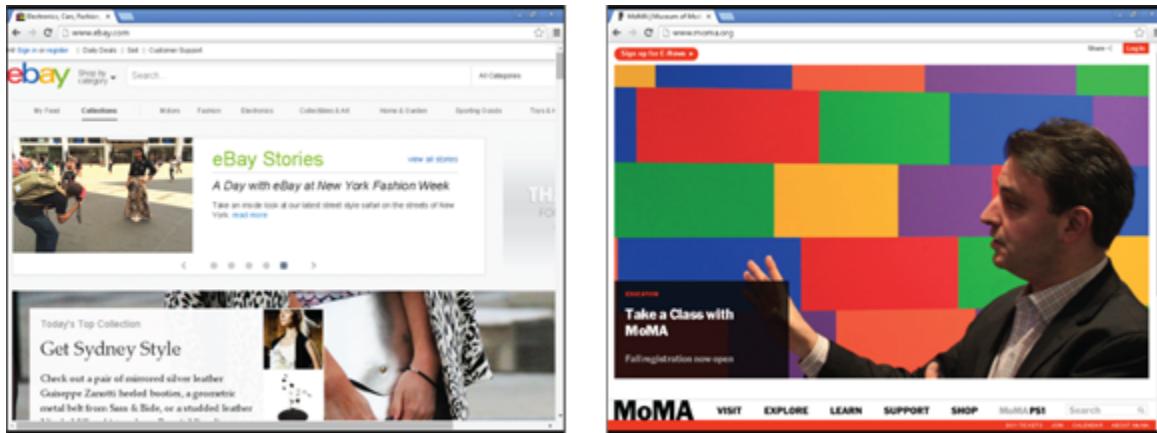
The examples in [Figure 7-10](#) show real websites with these layouts:



**FIGURE 7-10:** Use of left and right navigation toolbar on w3schools.com (left) and hunterwalk.com (right).

Vertical navigation aids reader understanding when hierarchy or relationship exists between navigational topics. In the w3schools.com example, HTML, JavaScript, Server Side, and XML relate to one another, and underneath each topic heading are related sub-topics.

Horizontal or menu navigation, as shown in [Figure 7-11](#), helps reader navigation with weak or disparate relationships between navigational topics. In the eBay example, the Motors, Fashion, and Electronics menu items have different products and appeal to different audiences.



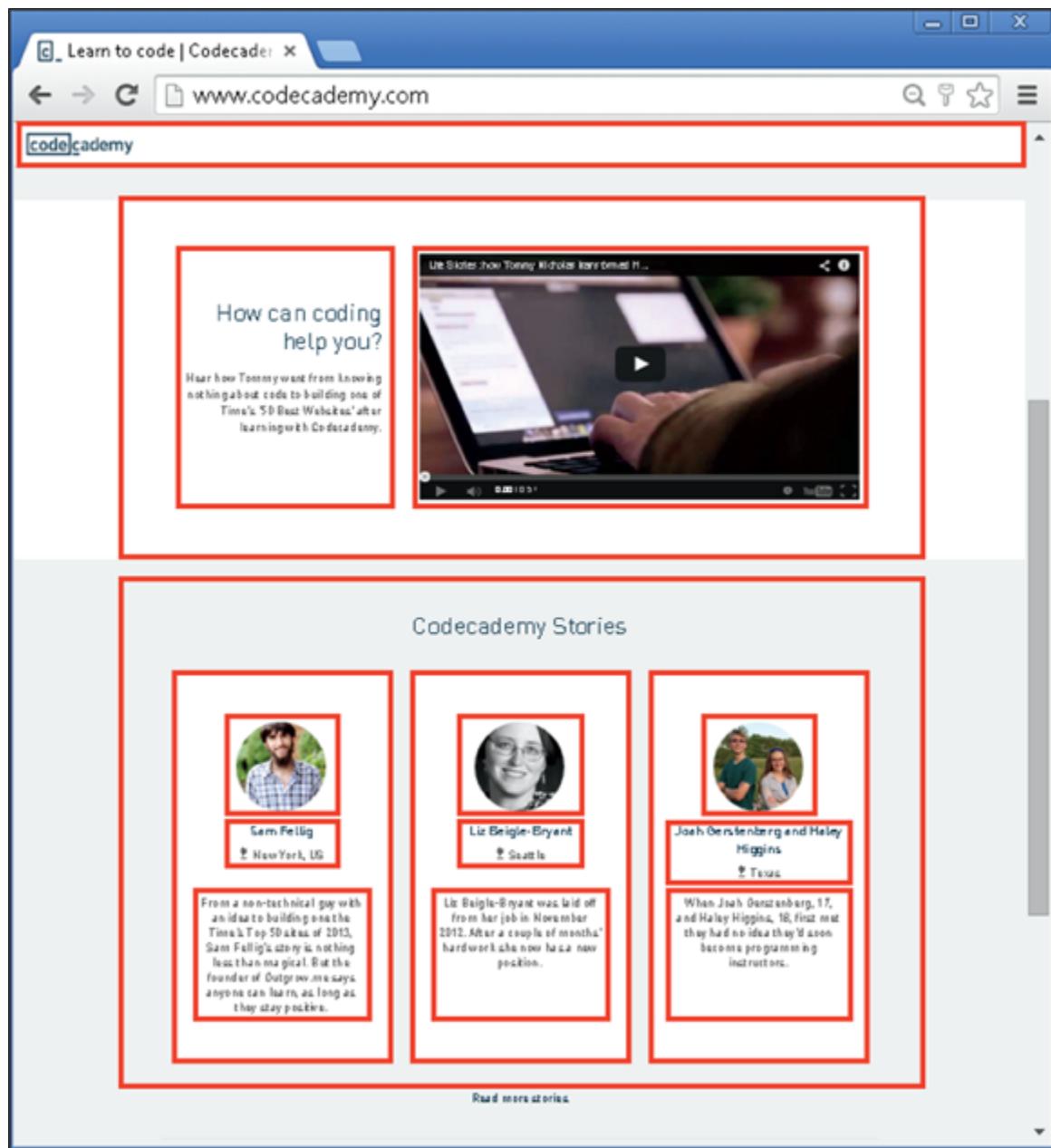
**FIGURE 7-11:** Use of top and bottom navigation toolbar on ebay.com (left) and moma.org (right).



**TIP** Don't spend too much time worrying about what layout to pick. You can always pick one, observe whether your visitors can navigate your website quickly and easily, and change the layout if necessary.

## ***Shaping the div***

The page layouts above are collections of elements grouped together. These elements are grouped together using rectangular containers created with an opening and closing `<div>` tag, and all of the layouts above can be created with these `<div>` tags. By itself, the `<div>` tag does not render anything on the screen, but instead serves as a container for content of any type like HTML headings, lists, tables, or images. To see the `<div>` tag in action, take a look at the [Codecademy.com](http://Codecademy.com) home page in [Figure 7-12](#).

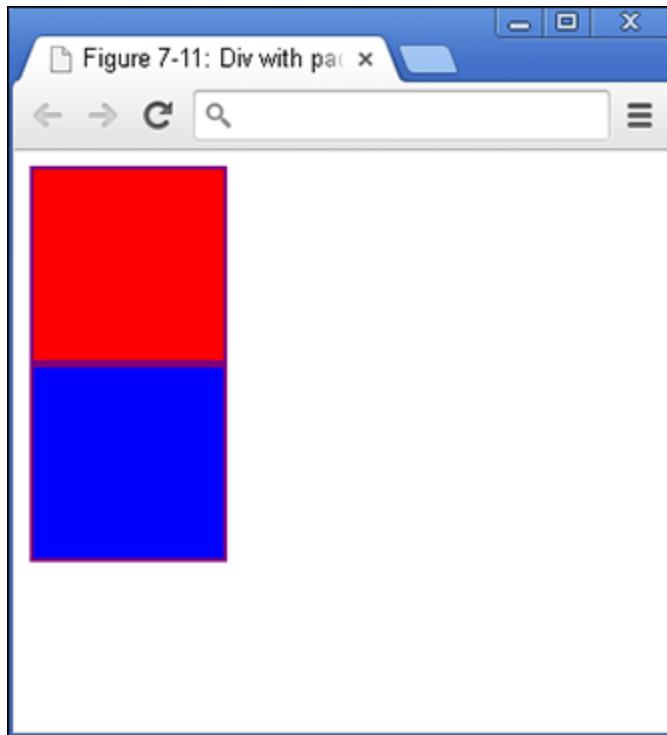


**FIGURE 7-12:** Codecademy.com homepage with visible borders for the `<div>` tags.

Notice how the page can be divided into three parts — the navigation header, the middle video testimonial, and then additional text user testimonials. `<div>` tags are used to outline these major content areas, and additional nested `<div>` tags within each part are used to group content like images and text.

In the following example, as shown in [Figure 7-13](#), HTML code is used to create two containers using `<div>` tags, the `id` attribute names each

div, and CSS sizes and colors the div:



**FIGURE 7-13** Two boxes created with HTML <div> tag and styled using CSS.

HTML:

```
<div id="first"/></div>
<div id="second"/></div>
```

CSS:

```
div {
    height: 100px;
    width: 100px;
    border: 2px solid purple;
}

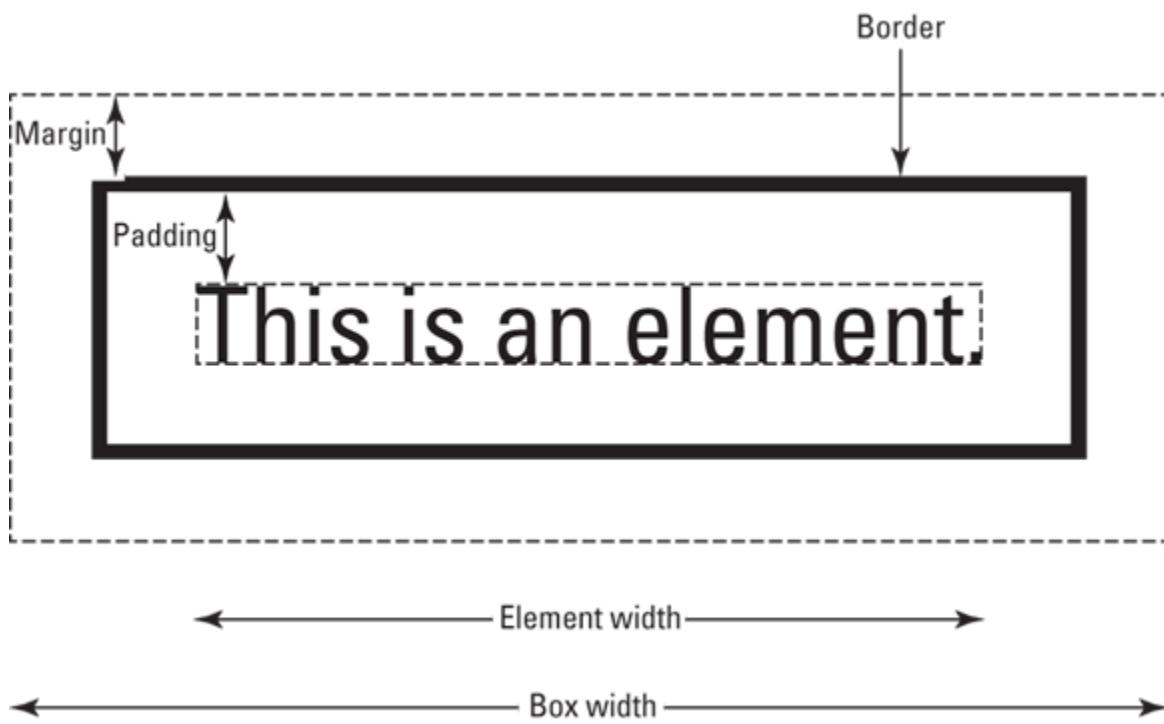
#first {
    background-color: red;
}

#second {
    background-color: blue;
}
```

## Understanding the box model

Just as we created boxes with the `<div>` tags above, CSS creates a box around each and every single element on the page, even text. [Figure 7-14](#) shows the box model for an image that says “This is an element.” These boxes may not always be visible, but are comprised of four parts:

- » **content:** HTML tag that is rendered in the browser
- » **padding:** Optional spacing between content and the border
- » **border:** Marks the edge of the padding, and varies in width and visibility
- » **margin:** Transparent optional spacing surrounding the border



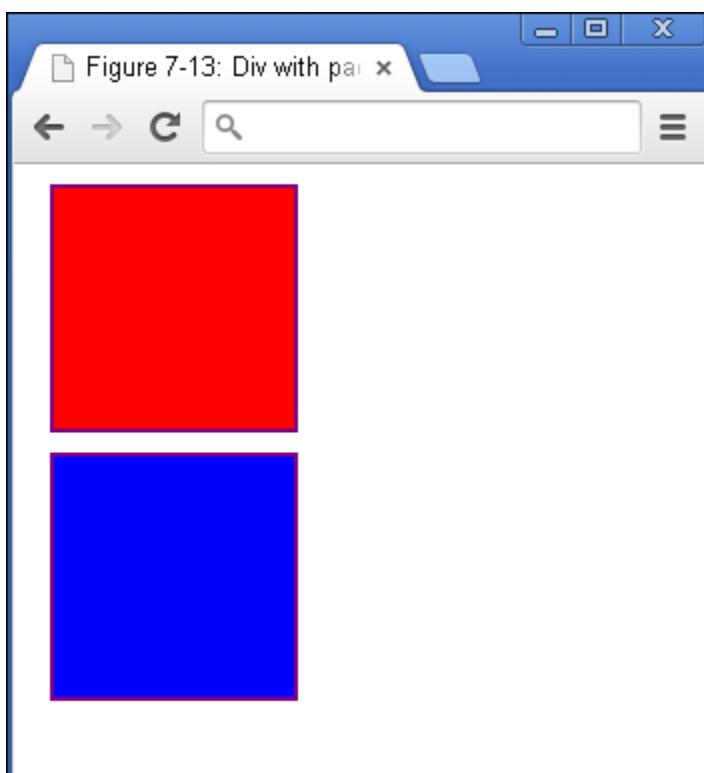
[FIGURE 7-14:](#) Box model for `img` element.



**TIP** Using the Chrome browser, navigate to your favorite news website, then right-click an image and in the context menu choose Inspect Element. On the right side of the screen you see three tabs; click the Computed tab. The box model is displayed for the image you right-clicked, showing the content dimensions, and then dimensions for the padding, border, and margin.

The padding, border, and margin are CSS properties, and the value is usually expressed in pixels. In the following code, shown in [Figure 7-15](#), padding and margins are added to separate each div.

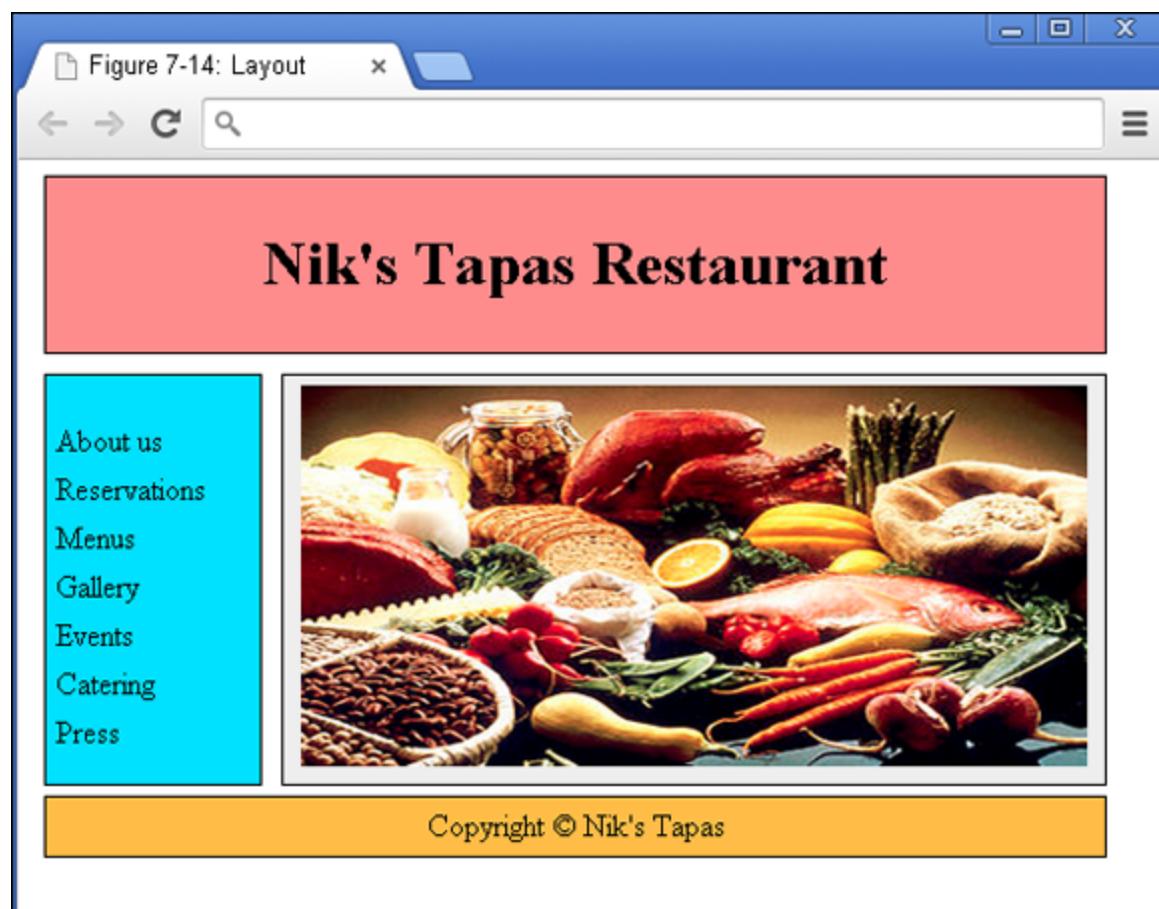
```
div {  
    height: 100px;  
    width: 100px;  
    border: 1px solid black;  
    padding: 10px;  
    margin: 10px;  
}
```



**FIGURE 7-15** Padding and margin added to separate each DIV.

## Positioning the boxes

Now that you understand how to group elements using HTML, and how CSS views elements, the final piece is to position these elements on the page. Various techniques can be used for page layouts, and a comprehensive overview of each technique is out of the scope of this book. However, one technique to create the layouts shown in [Figure 7-16](#) is to use the `float` and `clear` properties (as described in [Table 7-3](#)).



**FIGURE 7-16:** Left navigation web page layout created using `<div>` tags.

**TABLE 7-3** Select CSS Properties and Values for Page Layouts

Property Name	Possible Values	Description
---------------	-----------------	-------------

<b>Property Name</b>	<b>Possible Values</b>	<b>Description</b>
float	left right none	Sends an element to the <code>left</code> or <code>right</code> of the container it is in. The <code>none</code> value specifies the element should not float.
clear	left right both none	Specifies which side of an element to not have other floating elements.

If the width of an element is specified, the `float` property allows elements that would normally appear on separate lines to appear next to each other, such as navigation toolbars and a main content window. The `clear` property is used to prevent any other elements from floating on one or both sides of current element, and the property is commonly set to `both` to place web page footers below other elements.

The following example code uses `<div>` tags, `float`, and `clear` to create a simple left navigation layout. (See [Figure 7-16](#).) Typically, after grouping your content using `<div>` tags, you name each `<div>` tag using `class` or `id` attributes, and then style the `div` in CSS. There is a lot of code below, so let's break it down into pieces:

- » The CSS is embedded between the opening and closing `<style>` tag, and the HTML is between the opening and closing `<body>` tags.
- » Between the opening and closing `<body>` tag, using `<div>` tags, the page is divided into four parts with header, navigation bar, content, and footer.
- » The navigation menu is created with an unordered list, which is left-aligned, with no marker.
- » CSS styles size, color, and align each `<div>` tag.
- » CSS properties, `float`, and `clear`, are used to place the left navigation layout to the left, and the footer below the other elements.

```
<!DOCTYPE html>
<html>
<head>
<title>Figure 7-14: Layout</title>
<style>
    #header{
        background-color: #FF8C8C;
        border: 1px solid black;
        padding: 5px;
        margin: 5px;
        text-align: center;
    }

    #navbar {
        background-color: #00E0FF;
        height: 200px;
        width: 100px;
        float: left;
        border: 1px solid black;
        padding: 5px;
        margin: 5px;
        text-align: left;
    }

    #content {
        background-color: #EEEEEE;
        height: 200px;
        width: 412px;
        float: left;
        border: 1px solid black;
        padding: 5px;
        margin: 5px;
        text-align: center;
    }

    #footer{
        background-color: #FFBD47;
        clear: both;
        text-align: center;
        border: 1px solid black;
        padding: 5px;
    }

```

```

        margin: 5px;
    }
    ul {
        list-style-type: none;
        line-height: 25px;
        padding: 0px;
    }

</style>
</head>
<body>
<div id="header"><h1>Nik's Tapas Restaurant</h1></div>
<div id="navbar">
<ul>
    <li>About us</li>
    <li>Reservations</li>
    <li>Menus</li>
    <li>Gallery</li>
    <li>Events</li>
    <li>Catering</li>
    <li>Press</li>
</ul>
</div>

<div id="content"></div>

<div id="footer">Copyright © Nik's Tapas</div>
</body>
</html>

```

## Writing More Advanced CSS

Practice your CSS online using the Codecademy website. Codecademy is a free website created in 2011 to allow anyone to learn how to code right in the browser, without installing or downloading any software. Practice all of the tags (and a few more) that you learned in this chapter by following these steps:

- 1. Open your browser, go to [www.dummies.com/go/codingfd](http://www.dummies.com/go/codingfd), and click on the Codecademy link.**
- 2. Sign in to your Codecademy account.**  
Signing up is discussed in [Chapter 3](#). Creating an account allows you to save your progress as you work, but it's optional.
- 3. Navigate to and click on CSS: An Overview, CSS Selectors, and CSS Positioning to practice CSS styling and positioning.**
- 4. Background information is presented in the upper left portion of the site, and instructions are presented in the lower left portion of the site.**
- 5. Complete the instructions in the main coding window. As you type, a live preview of your code is generated.**
- 6. After you have finished completing the instructions, click the Save and Submit Code button.**

If you have followed the instructions correctly, a green checkmark appears, and you proceed to the next exercise. If an error exists in your code a warning appears with a suggested fix. If you run into a problem, or have a bug you cannot fix, click on the hint, use the Q&A Forums, or tweet me at @nikhilgabraham and include hashtag #codingFD.

# Chapter 8

# Working Faster with Twitter Bootstrap

---

## IN THIS CHAPTER

**Understanding what Twitter Bootstrap does**

**Viewing layouts created with Twitter Bootstrap**

**Creating web page elements using Twitter Bootstrap**

---

*Speed, it seems to me, provides the one genuinely modern pleasure.*

—ALDOUS HUXLEY

Twitter Bootstrap is a free toolkit that allows users to create web pages quickly and with great consistency. In 2011, two Twitter developers, Mark Otto and Jacob Thornton, created the toolkit for internal use at Twitter, and soon after released it to the general public. Before Bootstrap, developers would create common web page features over and over again and each time slightly differently, leading to increased time spent on maintenance. Bootstrap has become one of the most popular tools used in creating websites, and is used by NASA and Newsweek for their websites. With a basic understanding of HTML and CSS, you can use and customize Bootstrap layouts and elements for your own projects.

In this chapter, you discover what Bootstrap does and how to use it. You also discover the various layouts and elements that you can quickly and easily create when using Bootstrap.

## *Figuring Out What Bootstrap Does*

Imagine you are the online layout developer for *The Washington Post*, responsible for coding the front page of the print newspaper (see [Figure 8-1](#)) into a digital website version. The newspaper consistently uses the same font size and typeface for the main headline, captions, and bylines. Similarly, there are a set number of layouts to choose from, usually with the main headline at the top of the page accompanied by a photo.

# The Washington Post

FRIDAY, JUNE 7, 2013

[www.washingtonpost.com](#) • \$1.25

## U.S. mines Internet firms' data, documents show

Google, Facebook, Apple, Yahoo deny giving NSA direct access to servers

BY BARTON GELLMAN AND LAURA POITRAS

The National Security Agency and the FBI are tapping directly into the central servers of nine leading U.S. Internet companies, including Google, Facebook, Yahoo, Microsoft, Amazon, YouTube, Apple, and AOL.

PRISM has not been made public until now. It may be the first of its kind. The NSA prides itself on stealing secrets and breaking codes, and it is accustomed to corporate partnerships that help it divert data traffic or subvert servers, lawsuits and the Foreign Intelligence Surveillance Court found the president to look for new authorities.

Congress obliged with the Foreign Intelligence Surveillance Act in 2007 and the FISA Amendments Act of 2008, which immunized private companies from legal action if they collected data on behalf of the NSA.

Equally unusual is the way the NSA extracts what it wants, according to the document: "Collecting directly from the servers of these U.S. Service Providers: Microsoft, Yahoo, Google, Facebook, AOL, AOL, Skype, YouTube, Apple."

PRISM was launched from the ashes of President George W. Bush's secret program of warrantless domestic surveillance in 2007, after news media disclosures, lawsuits and the Foreign Intelligence Surveillance Court forced the president to look for new authorities.

NSA CONTINUED ON A12

Defense and criticism

A graphic explains key components of the PRISM collection program.

Online coverage

NSA CONTINUED ON A12

Agency knows much about public, but we know little about it

BY ANNE GEARAN

The National Security Agency, nicknamed "No Such Agency," is the government's eavesdropper-in-chief. Change is coming, with directorates sprouting around the globe as the NSA collects billions of pieces of intelligence from foreign phone calls, e-mail and other communications. But in the past two days, the focus has shifted to its role in compiling massive amounts of the same information on millions of ordinary Americans.

Regarded as the most secretive of the nation's intelligence agencies, the NSA is part of the military but answers to the director of national intelligence. Its major operations are housed in a super-secretive facility at Maryland's Fort Meade Army base, the site of the court-martial of Pfc. Bradley Manning, who is charged with stealing government secrets and handing them to the anti-secrecy organization WikiLeaks.

The agency is so secretive that estimates of the number of employees range from the official SECRET CONTINUED ON A12

### Final trip to the Capitol

ILLUSTRATION: THE WASHINGTON POST

A U.S. military honor guard carries the flag-draped casket of Sen. Frank R. Lautenberg up the steps to the Senate chamber, where he will lie in repose. The U.S. Senate bid farewell to the New Jersey Democrat on Thursday with a rare ceremony held for the last World War II veteran serving in the chamber. Lautenberg, who died Monday at age 89 after a long illness, will be buried Friday morning at Arlington National Cemetery.

### In Golan, Israelis rush to finish fence

Government continues its fortification policy despite criticism

BY WILLIAM BOOTH

MOUNT HAZEKA, ISRAEL — Fearful that the Syrian civil war, jihadis terrorists or Lebanese Hezbollah fighters will spill into Israel, the country's military engineers are rushing to complete their latest "smart fence," this one in the occupied Golan Heights.

Here along the tense boundary with Syria, figures say Thursday day as the rebels and government forces battled for control of a crossing in the latest violent incident that is inching the Syrian war closer to Israeli-held territory.

As the threat of spillover mounts, Israel is replacing an old, broken-down fence — so low that a goat could leap over it — with an

intimidating steel barricade. The fortification features concertina and razor wire, touch sensors, motion detectors, infrared cameras and ground radar.

When the 45-mile fence is finished this summer, the Israeli army will have taken another big step in surrounding itself with barriers. Rather than tearing down old walls, Israel is rebuilding and bolstering its ring of ground fortifications, even as old threats such as Palestinian suicide bombers have receded and new ones such as a potential nuclear-armed Iran arise.

The Israelis build the world's most sophisticated fortifications, drawing international delegations that want to see the latest in barrier technology. But some Israelis worry that the fences are a metaphor for weakness as much as they are for strength and that the barriers have increased a sense of isolation.

ISRAEL CONTINUED ON A12

### In D.C., the puzzling case of the pizzeria patio pilferer

Viral video shows man casually walking up to and robbing 2 diners

BY IAN SHAPIRA

Andrew Swanson had just taken the first bite of a margherita pie on the patio of Pizzini's Pizzeria in Logan Circle on a Friday night when a heavyset man appeared out of nowhere. Swanson, a 23-year-old consulting firm

Student-athlete will not be defined by his sexuality

Openly gay track star is one of T.C. Williams's most popular students

BY ROMAN STURM

in the same 4x400 heat, if Curry, now 18, was going to be a part of the team before the gun went off, he

Robbery caught on camera

To view the surveillance video of two people being robbed at a pizzeria, go to [washingtonpost.com/fact](#).

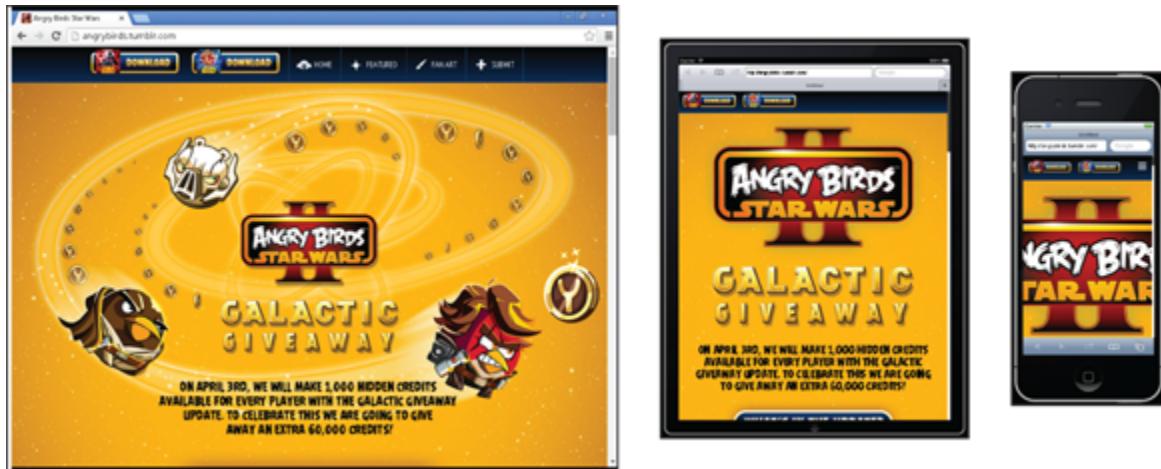
The pizzeria interloper pulls

**FIGURE 8-1:** The front page of *The Washington Post* (June 7, 2013).

Every day you could write your CSS code from scratch, defining font typeface, sizes, paragraph layouts, and the like. However, given that the newspaper follows a largely defined format, it would be easier to define this styling ahead of time in your CSS file with class names, and when necessary refer to the styling you want by name. At its core, this is how Bootstrap functions.

Bootstrap is a collection of standardized prewritten HTML, CSS, and JavaScript code that you can reference using class names (for a refresher, see [Chapter 7](#)) and then further customize. Bootstrap allows you to create and gives you:

- » **Layouts:** Define your web page content and elements in a grid pattern.
- » **Components:** Use existing buttons, menus, and icons that have been tested on hundreds of millions of users.
- » **Responsiveness:** A fancy word for whether your site will work on mobile phones and tablets in addition to desktop computers. Ordinarily, you would write additional code so your website appears properly on these different screen sizes, but Bootstrap code is already optimized to do this for you, as shown in [Figure 8-2](#).
- » **Cross-browser compatibility:** Chrome, Firefox, Safari, Internet Explorer, and other browsers all vary in the way they render certain HTML elements and CSS properties. Bootstrap code is optimized so your web page appears consistently no matter the browser used.



**FIGURE 8-2:** The Angry Birds Star Wars page optimized for desktop, tablet, and mobile using Bootstrap.

## Installing Bootstrap

Install and add Bootstrap to your HTML file by following these two steps:

- 1. Include this line of code between your opening and closing `<head>` tag:**

```
<link rel="stylesheet" href="http://maxcdn.bootstrapcdn.com/bootstrap/3.2.0/css/bootstrap.min.css">
```



**TIP**

The `<link>` tag refers to version 3.2.0 of the Bootstrap CSS file hosted on the Internet, so you must be connected to the Internet for this method to work.

- 2. Include both these lines of code immediately before your closing HTML `</body>` tag.**

```
<!--jQuery (needed for Bootstrap's JavaScript plugins) -->
<script
  src="http://ajax.googleapis.com/ajax/libs/jquery/1.11.1/jquery.min.js"></script>
<!--Bootstrap Javascript plugin file -->
<script
  src="http://maxcdn.bootstrapcdn.com/bootstrap/3.2.0/js/bootstrap.
```

```
min.js"></script>
```

The first `<script>` tag references a JavaScript library called jQuery. JavaScript is covered in [Chapter 9](#). Although jQuery is not covered in this book, at a high level, jQuery simplifies tasks performed using JavaScript. The second `<script>` tag references Bootstrap JavaScript plugins, including animated effects such as drop-down menus. If your website does not use any animated effects or Bootstrap JavaScript plugins, you don't need to include this file.

Bootstrap is free to use for personal and commercial purposes, but does require including the Bootstrap license and copyright notice.

If you will not have reliable access to an Internet connection, you can also download and locally host the Bootstrap CSS and JavaScript files. To do this, after unzipping the Bootstrap file, use the `<link>` and `<script>` tags to link to the local version of your file. Visit [www.getbootstrap.com/getting-started/](http://www.getbootstrap.com/getting-started/) to download the files, and to access additional instructions and examples.

## ***Understanding the Layout Options***

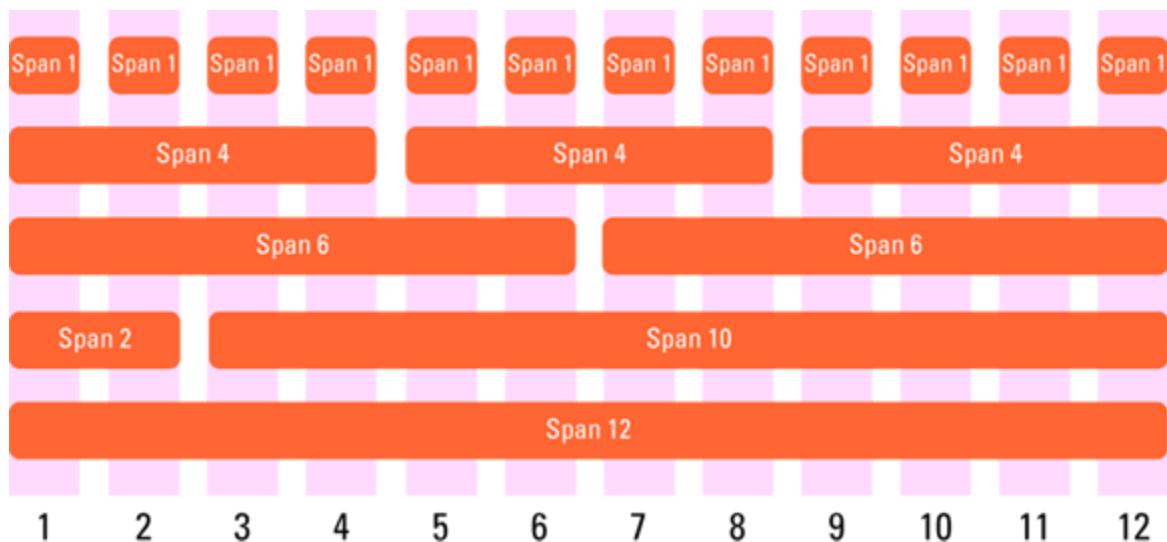
Bootstrap allows you to quickly and easily lay out content on the page using a grid system. You have three options when using this grid system:

- » **Code yourself:** After you learn how the grid is organized, you can write code to create any layout you wish.
- » **Code with a Bootstrap editor:** Instead of writing code in a text editor, drag and drop components and elements to generate Bootstrap code. You can then download and use this code.
- » **Code with a prebuilt theme:** Download free Bootstrap themes or buy a theme where the website has already been created, and you fill in your own content.

### ***Lining up on the grid system***

Bootstrap divides the screen into a grid system of 12 equally-sized columns. These columns follow a few rules:

- » **Columns must sum to a width of 12 columns.** You can use one column that is 12 columns wide, 12 columns that are each one column wide, or anything in between.
- » **Columns can contain content or spaces.** For example, you could have a 4-column-wide column, a space of 4 columns, and another 4-column-wide column.
- » **Unless you specify otherwise, these columns will automatically stack into a single column on smaller browser sizes or screens like mobile devices, and expand horizontally on larger browser sizes or screens like laptop and desktop screens.** See [Figure 8-3](#).



**FIGURE 8-3:** Sample Bootstrap layouts.

Now that you have a sense for how these layouts appear on the screen, let us take a look at example code used to generate these layouts. To create any layout, follow these steps:

1. **Create a `<div>` tag with the attribute `class="container"`.**
2. **Inside the first `<div>` tag, create another nested `<div>` tag with the attribute `class="row"`.**

3. For each row you want to create, create another `<div>` tag with the attribute `class="col-md-X"`. Set X equal to the number of columns you want the row to span.

For example, to have a row span 4 columns, write `<div class="col-md-4">`. The `md` targets the column width for desktops, and I show you how to target other devices later in this section.



**WARNING** You must include `<div class="container">` at the beginning of your page, and have a closing `</div>` tag or your page will not render properly.

The following code, as shown in [Figure 8-4](#), creates a simple three-column centered layout:

```
<div class="container">
  <!-- Example row of columns -->
  <div class="row">
    <div class="col-md-4">
      <h2>Heading</h2>
      <p>Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetur adipisicing elit, sed do eiusmod tempor incididunt ut labore et dolore magna aliqua. Ut enim ad minim veniam, quis nostrud exercitation ullamco laboris nisi ut aliquip ex ea commodo consequat.
    </p>
  </div>
  <div class="col-md-4">
    <h2>Heading</h2>
    <p>Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetur adipisicing elit, sed do eiusmod tempor incididunt ut labore et dolore magna aliqua. Ut enim ad minim veniam, quis nostrud exercitation ullamco laboris nisi ut aliquip ex ea commodo consequat.
  </p>
  </div>
  <div class="col-md-4">
    <h2>Heading</h2>
    <p>Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetur adipisicing elit, sed do eiusmod tempor incididunt ut labore et dolore magna aliqua. Ut enim ad minim veniam, quis nostrud exercitation ullamco laboris nisi ut aliquip ex ea commodo consequat.
  </p>
</div>
```

```

  enim ad minim veniam, quis           nostrud exercitation ullamco laboris
  nisi ut aliquip ex ea commodo consequat.

  </p>
  </div>
  </div>
  </div>

```



**FIGURE 8-4:** Bootstrap three-column layout with desktop (left) and mobile (right) versions.

To see another example, go to the Codecademy site, and resize the browser window. You will notice that as you make the browser window smaller, the columns will automatically stack on top on one another to be readable. Also, the columns are automatically centered. Without Bootstrap, you would need more code to achieve these same effects.



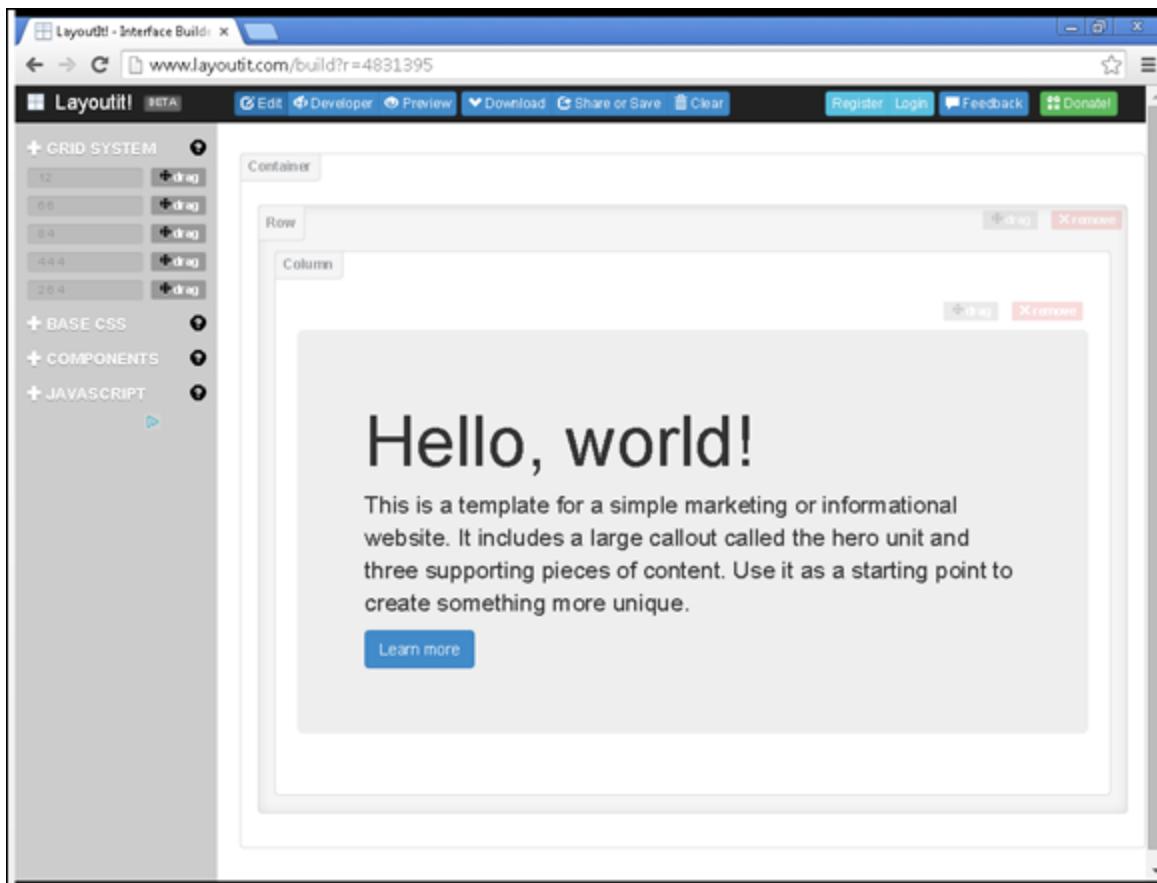
The Lorem ipsum text you see above is commonly used to create filler text. Although the words don't mean anything, the quotation originates from a first-century BC Latin text by Cicero. You can generate filler text when creating your own websites by using [www.lipsum.org](http://www.lipsum.org) or [www.socialgoodipsum.com](http://www.socialgoodipsum.com).

## ***Dragging and dropping to a website***

After looking at the code above, you may want an even easier way to generate the code without having to type it yourself. Bootstrap editors allow you to drag and drop components to create a layout, and after which the editor will generate Bootstrap code for your use.

Bootstrap editors you can use include the following:

- » **Layoutit.com:** Free online Bootstrap editor (as shown in [Figure 8-5](#)) that allows you to drag and drop components and then download the source code.
- » **Jetstrap.com:** Paid online drag and drop Bootstrap editor.
- » **Pingendo.com:** Free downloadable drag and drop Bootstrap editor.
- » **Bootply.com:** Free online Bootstrap editor with built-in templates to modify.



[FIGURE 8-5:](#) Layoutit.com interface with drag and drop Bootstrap components.



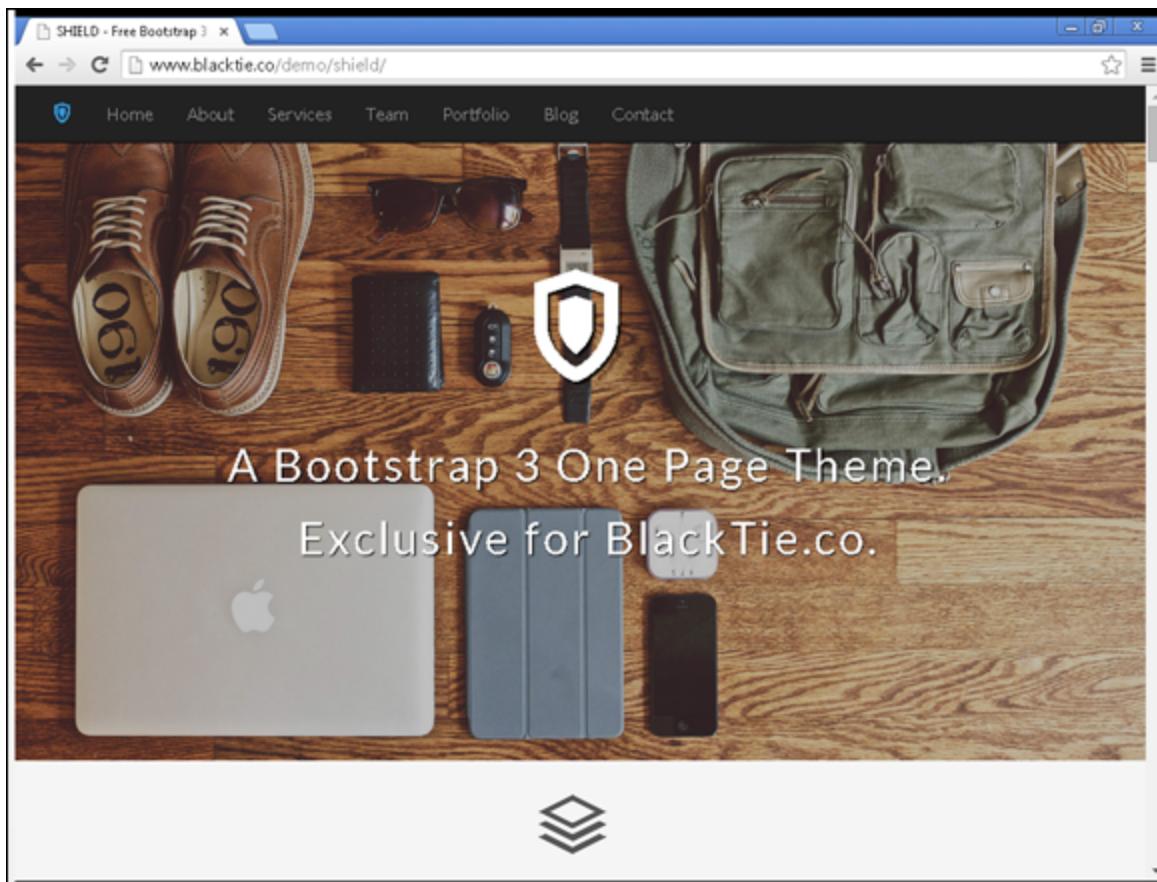
**TIP** These sites are free, and may stop working without notice. You can find additional options by using any search engine to search for

*Bootstrap editors.*

## **Using predefined templates**

Sites exist with ready-to-use Bootstrap themes; all you need to do is add your own content. Of course, you can also modify the theme if you wish. Some of these Bootstrap theme websites are:

- » [Blacktie.co](http://blacktie.co): Free Bootstrap themes (shown in [Figure 8-6](#)), all created by one designer.
- » [Bootstrapzero.com](http://bootstrapzero.com): Collection of free, open-source Bootstrap templates.
- » [Bootswatch.com](http://bootswatch.com) **and** [bootsnipp.com](http://bootsnipp.com): Includes pre-built Bootstrap components that you can assemble for your own site.
- » [Wrapbootstrap.com](http://wrapbootstrap.com): Bootstrap templates available for purchase.



**FIGURE 8-6:** One page Bootstrap template from blacktie.co.



**TIP** Bootstrap themes may be available for free, but follow the licensing terms. The author may require attribution, email registration, or a tweet.

## ***Adapting layout for mobile, tablet, and desktop***

On smaller screens Bootstrap will automatically stack the columns you create for your website. However, you can exercise more control than just relying on the default behavior over how these columns appear. There are four device screen sizes you can target — phones, tablets, desktops, and large desktops. As shown in [Table 8-1](#), Bootstrap uses a different class prefix to target each device.

**TABLE 8-1 Bootstrap Code for Various Screen Sizes**

	<i>Phones (&lt;768 px)</i>	<i>Tablets (≥768px)</i>	<i>Desktops (≥992px)</i>	<i>Large desktops (≥1200 px)</i>
Class prefix	col-sx-	col-sm-	col-md-	col-lg-
Max container width	None (auto)	750px	970px	1170px
Max column width	Auto	~62px	~81px	~97px

Based on [Table 8-1](#), if you wanted your website to have two equal sized columns on tablets, desktops, and large desktops you would use the col-sm- class name as follows:

```
<div class="container">
  <div class="row">
    <div class="col-sm-6">Column 1</div>
    <div class="col-sm-6">Column 2</div>
  </div>
</div>
```

After viewing your code on all three devices, you decide that on desktops you prefer unequal instead of equal columns such that the left

column is half the size of the right column. You target desktop devices using the `col-md-` class name and add it to the class name immediately after `col-sm-:`

```
<div class="container">
  <div class="row">
    <div class="col-sm-6 col-md-4">Column 1</div>
    <div class="col-sm-6 col-md-8">Column 2</div>
  </div>
</div>
```



**TIP** Some elements, such as the `<div>` tag above, can have multiple classes. This allows you to add multiple effects, such as changing the way a column is displayed, to the element. To define multiple classes, use the `class` attribute and set it equal to each class; separate each class with a space. For an example, refer to the preceding code: The third `<div>` element has two classes, `col-sm-6` and `col-md-4`.

Finally, you decide that on large desktop screens you want the left column to be two columns wide. You target large desktop screens using the `col-lg-` class name, as shown in [Figure 8-7](#), and add to your existing class attribute values:

```
<div class="container">
  <div class="row">
    <div class="col-sm-6 col-md-4 col-lg-2">Column 1</div>
    <div class="col-sm-6 col-md-8 col-lg-10">Column 2</div>
  </div>
</div>
```



**FIGURE 8-7:** A two-column site displayed on tablet, desktop, and large desktop.

## *Coding Basic Web Page Elements*

In addition to pure layouts, Bootstrap can also create web page components found on almost every website. The thought here is the same as when working with layouts — instead of recreating the wheel

every time by designing your own button or toolbar, it would be better to use pre-built code, which has already been tested across multiple browsers and devices.

The following examples show how to quickly create common web components.

## ***Designing buttons***

Buttons are a basic element on many web pages, but usually can be difficult to set up and style. As shown in [Table 8-2](#), buttons can have various types and sizes.

**TABLE 8-2 Bootstrap Code for Creating Buttons**

<b>Attribute</b>	<b>Class Prefix</b>	<b>Description</b>
Button type	btn-default btn-primary btn-success btn-danger	Standard button type with hover effect Blue button with hover effect Green button with hover effect Red button with hover effect
Button size	btn-lg btn-default btn-sm	Large button size Default button size Small button size

To create a button, write the following HTML:

- » Begin with the button HTML element.
- » In the opening `<button>` tag include `type="button"`.
- » Include the `class` attribute, with the `btn` class attribute value, and add additional class prefixes based on the effect you want. To add additional styles, continue adding the class prefix name into the HTML class attribute.

As shown in [Figure 8-8](#), the following code combines both button type and button size:

```
<p>
```

```

<button type="button" class="btn btn-primary btn-lg">Large primary
button</button>

<button type="button" class="btn btn-default btn-lg">Large default
button</button>

</p>
<p>

<button type="button" class="btn btn-success">Default Success
button</button>

<button type="button" class="btn btn-default">Default default
button</button>

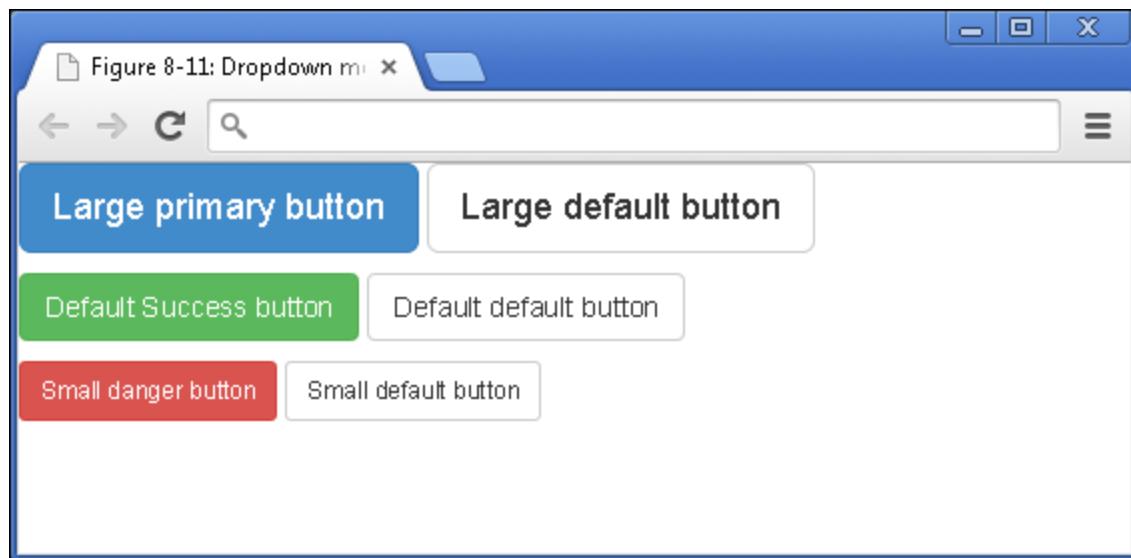
</p>
<p>

<button type="button" class="btn btn-danger btn-sm">Small danger
button</button>

<button type="button" class="btn btn-default btn-sm">Small default
button</button>

</p>

```



**FIGURE 8-8:** Bootstrap button types and sizes.



**TIP** For additional button type, button size, and other button options see <http://getbootstrap.com/css/#buttons>.

## ***Navigating with toolbars***

Web pages with multiple pages or views usually have one or more toolbars to help users with navigation. Some toolbar options are shown in [Table 8-3](#).

**TABLE 8-3** Bootstrap Code for Creating Navigation Toolbars

<b>Attribute</b>	<b>Class Prefix</b>	<b>Description</b>
Toolbar type	nav-tabs nav-pills	Tabbed navigation toolbar Pill, or solid button navigation toolbar
Toolbar button type	dropdown caret dropdown-menu	Marks button or tab as dropdown menu Down-arrow dropdown menu icon Dropdown menu items

To create a pill or solid button navigation toolbar, write the following HTML:

- » Begin an unordered list using the `ul` element.
- » In the opening `<ul>` tag, include `class="nav nav-pills"`.
- » Create buttons using the `<li>` tag. Include `class="active"` in one opening `<li>` tag to designate which tab on the main toolbar should appear as visually highlighted when the mouse hovers over the button.
- » To create a drop-down menu, nest an unordered list. See the code next to “More” with class prefixes “dropdown”, “caret”, and “dropdown-menu”. You can link to other web pages in your drop-down menu by using the `<a>` tag.

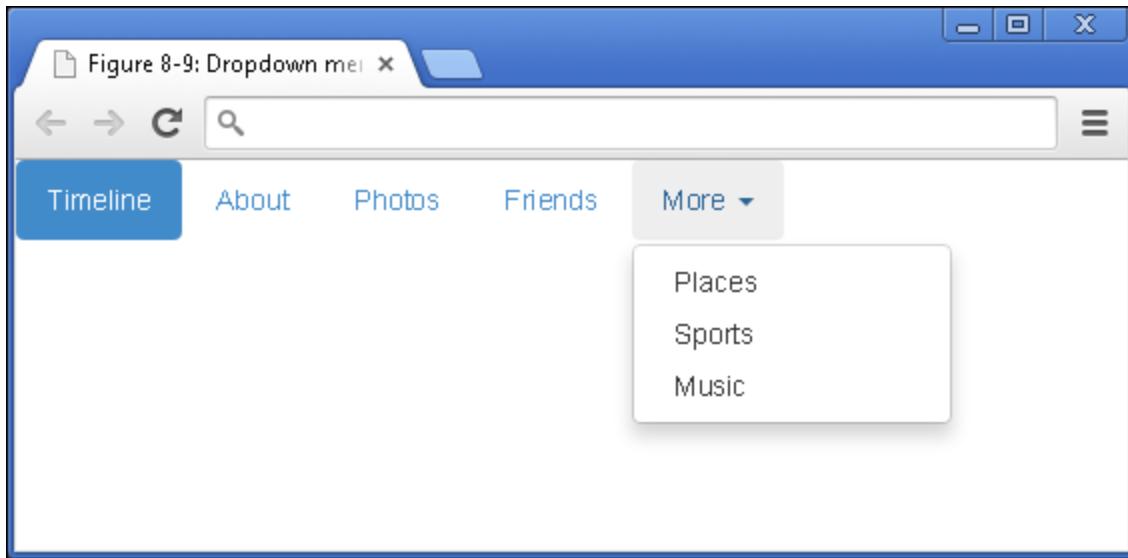
The following code, as shown in [Figure 8-9](#), creates a toolbar using Bootstrap:

```
<ul class="nav nav-pills">
  <li class="active"><a href="timeline.html">Timeline</a></li>
  <li><a href="about.html">About</a></li>
  <li><a href="photos.html">Photos</a></li>
```

```

<li><a href="friends.html">Friends</a></li>
<li class="dropdown">
  <a class="dropdown-toggle" data-toggle="dropdown" href="#">More
  <span class="caret"></span>
  </a>
  <ul class="dropdown-menu">
    <li><a href="places.html">Places</a></li>
    <li><a href="sports.html">Sports</a></li>
    <li><a href="music.html">Music</a></li>
  </ul>
</li>
</ul>

```



**FIGURE 8-9:** Bootstrap toolbar with drop-down menus.



**TIP** The `dropdown-toggle` class and the `data-toggle="dropdown"` attribute and value work together to add drop down menus to elements like links. For additional toolbar options, see <http://getbootstrap.com/components/#nav>.

## Adding icons

Icons are frequently used with buttons to help convey some type of action. For example, your email program likely uses a button with a

trash can icon to delete emails. Icons quickly communicate a suggested action to users without much explanation.

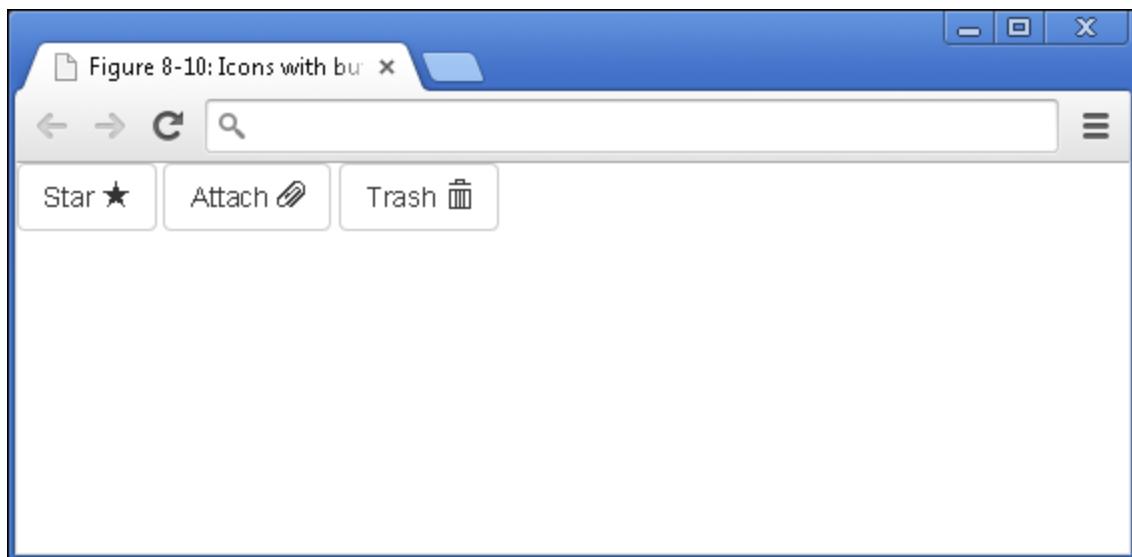


**TECHNICAL STUFF**

These icons are called *glyphs*, and [www.glyphicons.com](http://www.glyphicons.com) provides the glyphs used in Bootstrap.

Bootstrap supports more than 200 glyphs, which you can add to buttons or toolbars using the `<span>` tag. As shown in [Figure 8-10](#), the example code below creates three buttons with a star, paperclip, and trash can glyph.

```
<button type="button" class="btn btn-default">Star
  <span class="glyphicon glyphicon-star"></span>
</button>
<button type="button" class="btn btn-default">Attach
  <span class="glyphicon glyphicon-paperclip"></span>
</button>
<button type="button" class="btn btn-default">Trash
  <span class="glyphicon glyphicon-trash"></span>
</button>
```



**FIGURE 8-10:** Bootstrap buttons with icons



**TIP** For the names of all the Bootstrap glyphs, see [www.getbootstrap.com/components/#glyphicon](http://www.getbootstrap.com/components/#glyphicon).

## ***Build the Airbnb Home Page***

Practice Bootstrap online using the Codecademy website. Codecademy is a free website created in 2011 to allow anyone to learn how to code right in the browser, without installing or downloading any software. Practice all of the tags (and a few more) that you learned in this chapter by following these steps:

- 1. Open your browser, go to [www.dummies.com/go/codingfd](http://www.dummies.com/go/codingfd), and click on the link to Codecademy.**
- 2. Sign in to your Codecademy account.**  
Signing up is discussed in [Chapter 3](#). Creating an account allows you to save your progress as you work, but it's optional.
- 3. Navigate to and click on Make a Website to practice Bootstrap.**
- 4. Background information is presented, and instructions are presented on the site.**
- 5. Complete the instructions in the main coding window.**
- 6. After you have finished completing the instructions, click the Got It or Save and Submit Code button.**

If you have followed the instructions correctly, a green checkmark appears and you proceed to the next exercise. If an error exists in your code a warning appears with a suggested fix. If you run into a problem, or have a bug you cannot fix, click on the hint, use the Q&A Forum, or tweet me at @nikhilgabraham and include hashtag #codingFD.

# Chapter 9

# Adding in JavaScript

---

## IN THIS CHAPTER

**Understanding JavaScript basics and structure**

**Coding with variables, conditional statements, and functions**

**Learning about API basics and structure**

**Viewing an API request and response**

---

*The best teacher is very interactive.*

—BILL GATES

JavaScript, one of the most popular and versatile programming languages on the Internet, adds interactivity to websites. You have probably seen JavaScript in action and not even realized it, perhaps while clicking buttons that change color, viewing image galleries with thumbnail previews, or analyzing charts that display customized data based on your input. These website features and more can be created and customized using JavaScript.

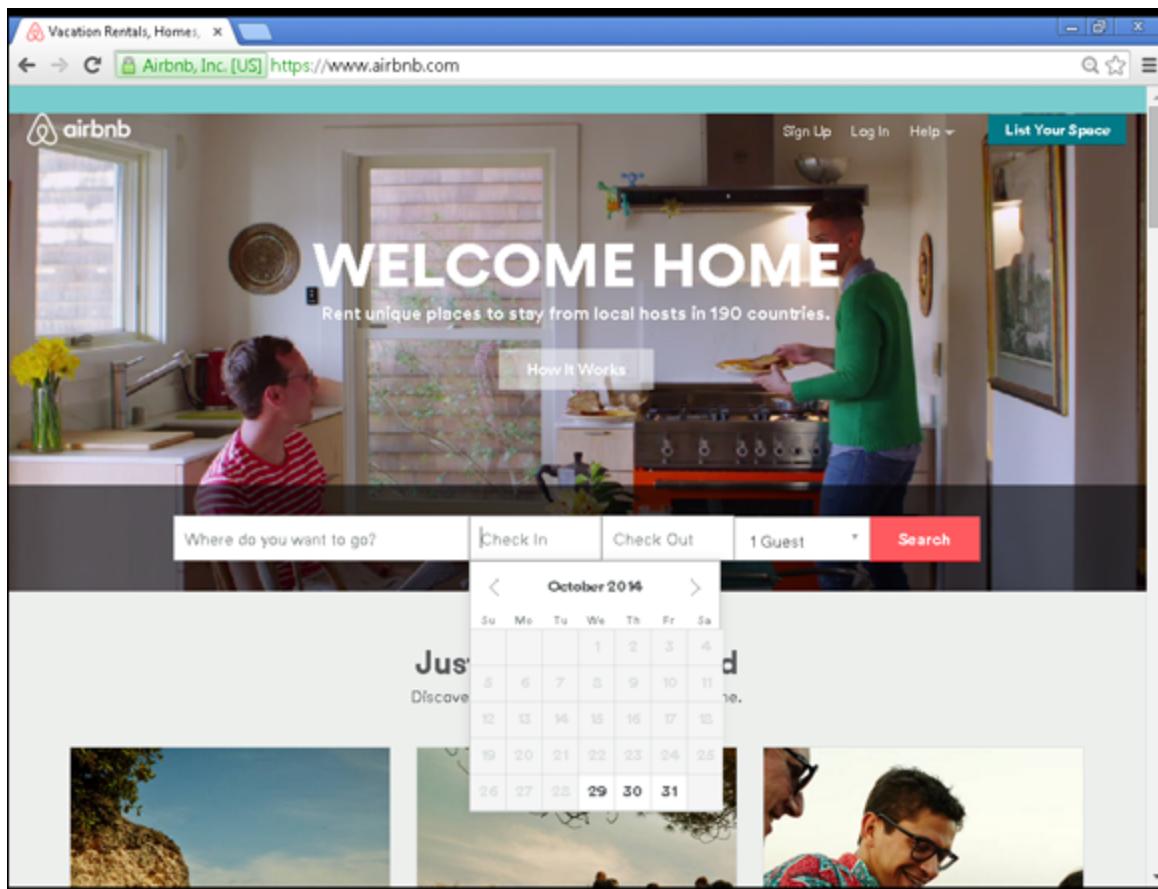
JavaScript is an extremely powerful programming language, and this entire book could have been devoted to the topic. In this chapter, you learn JavaScript basics, including how to write JavaScript code to perform basic tasks, access data using an API, and program faster using a framework.

## ***What Does JavaScript Do?***

JavaScript creates and modifies web page elements, and works with the existing web page HTML and CSS to achieve these effects. When you visit a web page with JavaScript, your browser downloads the JavaScript

code and runs it client-side, on your machine. JavaScript can perform tasks to do any of the following:

- » Control web page appearance and layout by changing HTML attributes and CSS styles.
- » Easily create web page elements like date pickers, as shown in [Figure 9-1](#), and drop-down menus.
- » Take user input in forms, and check for errors before submission.
- » Display and visualize data using complex charts and graphs.
- » Import and analyze data from other websites.



**FIGURE 9-1:** JavaScript can create the date picker found on every travel website.

**TECHNICAL STUFF**

JavaScript is different from another programming language called Java. In 1996, Brendan Eich, at the time a Netscape engineer, created JavaScript, which was originally called LiveScript. As part of a marketing decision, LiveScript was renamed to JavaScript to try and benefit from the reputation of then-popular Java.

JavaScript was created almost 20 years ago, and the language has continued to evolve since then. In the last decade, its most important innovation has allowed developers to add content to web pages without requiring the user to reload the page. This technique, called *AJAX* (asynchronous JavaScript), probably sounds trivial, but has led to the creation of cutting-edge browser experiences such as Gmail (shown in [Figure 9-2](#)).

The screenshot shows the Gmail inbox with 19 messages. The messages are as follows:

- 1. Google+ (starred) - Peter Harbison added you on Google+ - Follow and share with Peter by adding him to a circle. Don't have a Google+ account? Sign up.
- 2. YouTube (starred) - Your Personal YouTube Digest - Sep 16, 2011 - Change Email Preferences YouTube Logo Your Personal YouTube Channel
- 3. Sara Goetz (starred) - Hiking: Best of Yosemite - Need to pick your brain! My sisters and I are taking a quick weekend trip to Yosemite.
- 4. Phil Sharp - Assignment #4 - Did you get the assignment for last Friday's project? I couldn't make it to class because I was sick.
- 5. Michael, me (2) - congratulations!! - Thanks! On Thu, Sep 15, 2011 at 8:39 AM, Michael Bolognino <bolognino@google.com>
- 6. Alex Gawley - To Do: Dinner this evening? - We're having some folks over for dinner tonight. Do you want to join us? I'm thinking of getting a pizza.
- 7. Meredith Blackwell - birthday plans - Hey guys! I'm turning 25 a week from today. Since my birthday falls on a Wednesday, I'm thinking of having a small party on Saturday night.
- 8. Meredith Blackwell - oh heyyy - Hi! I just wanted to say drop a line and say hello since we haven't talked in a while. Hope you're doing well!
- 9. Susanne, me (4) - Hiking: hiking on weekend? - Peter On Thu, Mar 6, 2008 at 1:12 AM, Susanne Nagy <suna@google.com>
- 10. me .. Phil, Meredith (5) - To Do: Hike this weekend! - 1. great idea! I call shotgun in Peter's car. On Wed, Sep 14, 2011 at 3:20 PM, I'm thinking of getting a car.
- 11. Kathleen Chen - Costume party - I'm thinking of dressing up as a big pine tree for the party on Friday. Do you have any ideas?
- 12. Paul McDonald - Hiking: Fun Hike Yesterday! - Thanks for the great hike yesterday, it was awesome! Paul - Paul McDonald
- 13. Arielle Reinhardt - July 4th weekend - Hi there! I heard you'll be around this weekend and I'd love to go for a hike. Are you free?
- 14. JS Bach - Tonhalle concert Friday - Hey man, there's a great concert this Friday evening. It'd be great if you could come along.
- 15. Yan Tseytin - Home: Hey there! I heard you found a great place to go hiking. Let me know when we're meeting up.
- 16. Yan Tseytin - Updates - Hiya, Since we haven't spoken in a while, I figured I'd send you some updates. This has been a busy month.
- 17. Ricardo, me (2) - Anyone going to Yosemite this weekend? - Yes! So excited! On Fri, Sep 19, 2008 at 2:04 PM, Ricardo A
- 18. Jeff Wellington - resume - Can you send me that resume template you got online? Thanks!
- 19. Anne - Hiking: Hike Mount Tam? - Hi again! Wondering if we should organize a weekend trip to do a fun hike.

**FIGURE 9-2:** Gmail uses AJAX, which lets users read new emails without reloading the web page.

Before AJAX, the browser would display new data on a web page only after waiting for the entire web page to reload. However, this slowed down the user experience, especially when viewing web pages which had frequent real time updates like web pages with news stories, sports updates, and stock information. JavaScript, specifically AJAX, created a way for your browser to communicate with a server in the background, and to update your current web page with this new information.



**TIP** Here is an easy way to think about AJAX: Imagine you are at a coffee shop, and just ordered a coffee after waiting in a really long line. Before asynchronous JavaScript, you had to wait patiently at the coffee bar until you received your coffee before doing anything else. With asynchronous JavaScript, you can read the newspaper, find a table, phone a friend, and do multiple other tasks until the barista calls your name alerting you that your coffee is ready.

## ***Understanding JavaScript Structure***

JavaScript has a different structure and format from HTML and CSS. JavaScript allows you to do more than position and style text on a web page — with JavaScript, you can store numbers and text for later use, decide what code to run based on conditions within your program, and even name pieces of your code so you can easily reference them later. As with HTML and CSS, JavaScript has special keywords and syntax that allow the computer to recognize what you are trying to do. Unlike HTML and CSS, however, JavaScript is intolerant of syntax mistakes. If you forget to close an HTML tag, or to include a closing curly brace in CSS, your code may still run and your browser will try its best to display your code. When coding in JavaScript, on the other hand, forgetting a single quote or parenthesis can cause your entire program to fail to run at all.



**REMEMBER** HTML applies an effect between opening and closing tags — `<h1>This is a header</strong>`. CSS uses the same HTML element and has properties and values between opening and closing curly braces — `h1 { color: red; }`.

## Using Semicolons, Quotes, Parentheses, and Braces

The code below illustrates the common punctuation used in JavaScript — semicolons, quotes, parentheses, and braces (also called curly brackets):

```
var age=22;
var planet="Earth";
if (age>=18)
{
    console.log("You are an adult");
    console.log("You are over 18");

}
else
{
    console.log("You are not an adult");
    console.log("You are not over 18");
}
```

General rules of thumb to know while programming in JavaScript include:

- » Semicolons separate JavaScript statements.
- » Quotes enclose text characters or *strings* (sequences of characters). Any opening quote must have a closing quote.
- » Parentheses are used to modify commands with additional information called *arguments*. Any opening parenthesis must have a

closing parenthesis.

- » Braces group JavaScript statements into blocks so they execute together. Any opening brace must have a closing brace.



**TIP** These syntax rules can feel arbitrary, and may be difficult to remember initially. With some practice, however, these rules will feel like second nature to you.

## ***Coding Common JavaScript Tasks***

JavaScript can be used to perform many tasks, from simple variable assignments to complex data visualizations. The following tasks, here explained within a JavaScript context, are core programming concepts that haven't changed in the last twenty years and won't change in the next twenty. They're applicable to any programming language. Finally, I've listed instructions on how to perform these tasks, but if you prefer you can also practice these skills right away by jumping ahead to the "["Writing Your First JavaScript Program"](#) section, later in this chapter.

### ***Storing data with variables***

Variables, like those in algebra, are keywords used to store data values for later use. Though the data stored in a variable may change, the variable name remains the same. Think of a variable like a gym locker — what you store in the locker changes, but the locker number always stays the same. The variable name usually starts with a letter, and [Table 9-1](#) lists some types of data JavaScript variables can store.

**TABLE 9-1 Data Stored by a Variable**

<b><i>Data Type</i></b>	<b><i>Description</i></b>	<b><i>Examples</i></b>
Numbers	Positive or negative numbers with or without decimals	156–101.96
Strings	Printable characters	Holly NovakSeñor

<b>Data Type</b>	<b>Description</b>	<b>Examples</b>
Boolean	Value can either be true or false.	truefalse



**TECHNICAL STUFF** For a list of rules on variable names see the “JavaScript Variables” section at [www.w3schools.com/js/js\\_variables.asp](http://www.w3schools.com/js/js_variables.asp).

The first time you use a variable name, you use the word `var` to declare the variable name. Then, you can optionally assign a value to variable using the equals sign. In the following code example, I declare three variables and assign values to those variables:

```
var myName="Nik";
var pizzaCost=10;
var totalCost=pizzaCost * 2;
```



**TECHNICAL STUFF** Programmers say you have declared a variable when you first define it using the `var` keyword. “Declaring” a variable tells the computer to reserve space in memory and to permanently store values using the variable name. View these values by using the `console.log` statement. For example, after running the preceding example code, running statement `console.log(totalCost)` returns the value 20.

After declaring a variable, you change its value by referring to just the variable name and using the equals sign, as shown in the following examples:

```
myName="Steve";
pizzaCost=15;
```



**TIP** Variable names are case sensitive, so when referring to a variable in your program remember that `MyName` is a different variable from `myname`. In general, it's a good idea to give your variable a name that describes the data being stored.

## ***Making decisions with if-else statements***

After you have stored data in a variable, it is common to compare the variable's value to other variable values or to a fixed value, and then to make a decision based on the outcome of the comparison. In JavaScript, these comparisons are done using a *conditional statement*. The `if-else` statement is a type of conditional. Its general syntax is as follows:

```
if (condition) {  
    statement1 to execute if condition is true  
}  
else {  
    statement2 to execute if condition is false  
}
```

In this statement, the `if` is followed by a space, and a condition enclosed in parentheses evaluates to `true` or `false`. If the condition is `true`, then `statement1`, located between the first set of curly brackets, is executed. If the condition is `false` and if I include the `else`, which is optional, then `statement2`, located between the second set of curly brackets, is executed. Note that when the `else` is not included and the condition is `false`, the conditional statement simply ends.



**TIP** Notice there are no parentheses after the `else` — the `else` line has no condition. JavaScript executes the statement after `else` only when the preceding conditions are `false`.

The condition in an `if-else` statement is a comparison of values using operators, and common operators are described in [Table 9-2](#).

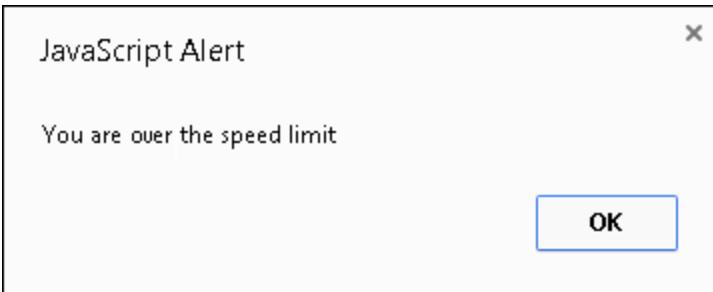
**TABLE 9-2** Common JavaScript Operators

Type	Operator	Description	Example
Less than	<	Evaluates whether one value is less than another value	( $x < 55$ )
Greater than	>	Evaluates whether one value is greater than another value	( $x > 55$ )
Equality	==	Evaluates whether two values are equal	( $x == 55$ )
Less than or equal to	≤	Evaluates whether one value is less than or equal to another value	( $x \leq 55$ )
Greater than or equal to	≥	Evaluates whether one value is greater than or equal to another value	( $x \geq 55$ )
Inequality	!=	Evaluates whether two values are not equal	( $x \neq 55$ )

Here is a simple `if` statement, without the `else`:

```
var carSpeed=70;
if (carSpeed > 55) {
    alert("You are over the speed limit!");
}
```

In this statement I declare a variable called `carSpeed` and set it equal to 70. Then an `if` statement with a condition compares whether the value in the variable `carSpeed` is greater than 55. If the condition is true, an alert, which is a pop-up box, states “You are over the speed limit!” (See [Figure 9-3](#).) In this case, the value of `carSpeed` is 70, which is greater than 55, so the condition is true and the alert is displayed. If the first line of code instead was `var carSpeed=40;` then the condition is false because 40 is less than 55, and no alert would be displayed.



**FIGURE 9-3:** The alert pop-up box.

Let us expand the `if` statement by adding `else` to create an `if-else`, as shown in this code:

```
var carSpeed=40;  
if (carSpeed > 55) {  
    alert("You are over the speed limit!");  
}  
else {  
    alert("You are under the speed limit!");  
}
```

In addition to the `else`, I added an `alert` statement inside the curly brackets following the `else`, and set `carSpeed` equal to 40. When this `if-else` statement executes, `carSpeed` is equal to 40, which is less than 55, so the condition is false, and because the `else` has been added, an alert appears stating “You are under the speed limit!” If the first line of code instead was `var carSpeed=70;` as before, then the condition is true, because 70 is greater than 55, and the first alert would be displayed.

Our current `if-else` statement allows us to test for one condition, and to show different results depending on whether the condition is true or false. To test for two or more conditions, you can add one or more `else if` statements after the original `if` statement. The general syntax for this is as follows:

```
if (condition1) {  
    statement1 to execute if condition1 is true  
}  
else if (condition2) {  
    statement2 to execute if condition2 is true  
}
```

```
else {  
    statement3 to execute if all previous conditions are false  
}
```

The `if-else` is written as before, and the `else if` is followed by a space, and then a condition enclosed in parentheses that evaluates to either `true` or `false`. If `condition1` is `true`, then `statement1`, located between the first set of curly brackets, is executed. If the `condition1` is `false`, then `condition2` is evaluated and is found to be either `true` or `false`. If `condition2` is `true`, then `statement2`, located between the second set of curly brackets, is executed. At this point, additional `else if` statements could be added to test additional conditions. Only when all `if` and `else if` conditions are `false`, and an `else` is included, is `statement3` executed. Only one statement is executed in a block of code, after which the remaining statements are ignored and the next block of code is executed.



**TIP** When writing the `if-else`, you must have one and only one `if` statement, and, if you so choose, one and only one `else` statement. The `else if` is optional, can be used multiple times within a single `if-else` statement, and must come after the original `if` statement and before the `else`. You cannot have an `else if` or an `else` by itself, without a preceding `if` statement.

Here is another example `else if` statement:

```
var carSpeed=40;  
if (carSpeed > 55) {  
    alert("You are over the speed limit!");  
}  
else if (carSpeed === 55) {  
    alert("You are at the speed limit!");  
}
```

When this `if` statement executes, `carSpeed` is equal to 40, which is less than 55, so the condition is `false`, and then the `else if` condition is

evaluated. The value of `carSpeed` is not exactly equal to 55 so this condition is also false, and no alert of any kind is shown, and the statement ends. If the first line of code were instead `var carSpeed=55;` then the first condition is `false`, because 55 is not greater than 55. Then the `else if` condition is evaluated, and because 55 is exactly equal to 55, the second alert is displayed, stating “You are at the speed limit!”

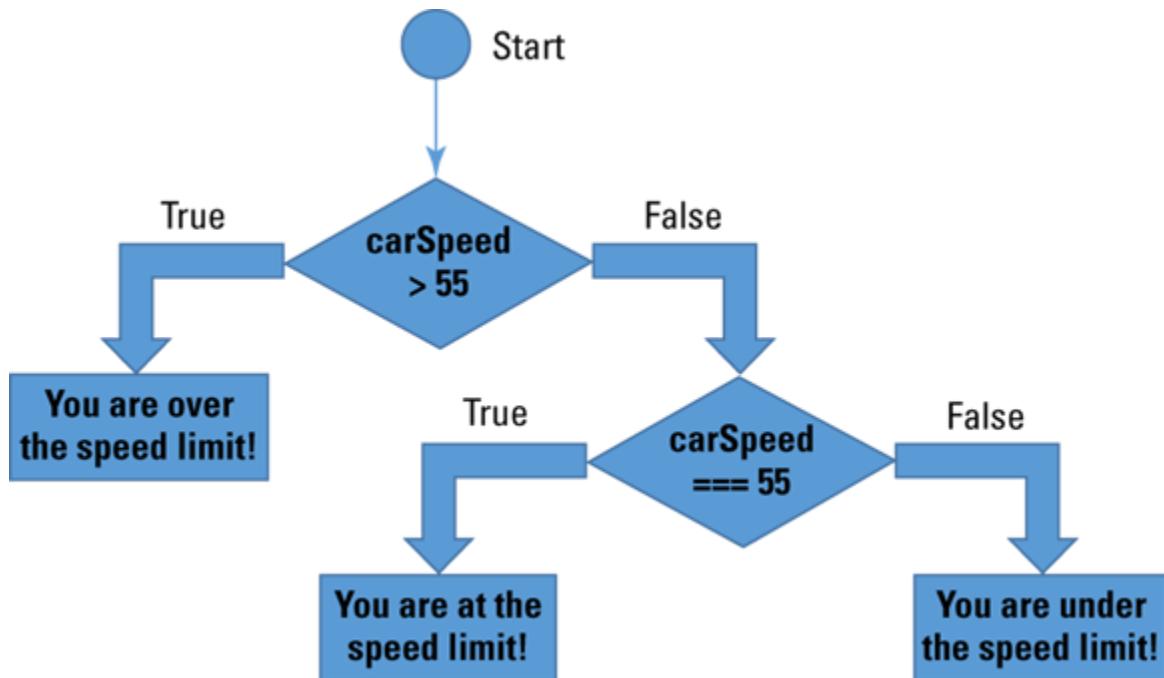


**REMEMBER** Look carefully at the code above — when setting the value of a variable, one equals sign is used, but when comparing whether two values are equal, then three equals signs (==) are used.

As a final example, here is an `if-else` statement with an `else if` statement:

```
var carSpeed=40;
if (carSpeed > 55) {
    alert("You are over the speed limit!");
}
else if (carSpeed === 55) {
    alert("You are at the speed limit!");
}
else {
    alert("You are under the speed limit!");
}
```

As the diagram in [Figure 9-4](#) shows, two conditions, which appear in the figure as diamonds, are evaluated in sequence. In this example, the `carSpeed` is equal to 40, so the two conditions are false, and the statement after the `else` is executed, showing an alert that says “You are under the speed limit!” Here `carSpeed` is initially set to 40, but depending on the initial `carSpeed` variable value, any one of the three alerts could be displayed.



**FIGURE 9-4:** If-else with an else if statement.



**REMEMBER** The condition is always evaluated first, and every condition must either be true or false. Independent from the condition is the statement that executes if the condition is true.

## Working with string and number methods

The most basic data types, usually stored in variables, are strings and numbers. Programmers often need to manipulate strings and numbers to perform basic tasks such as the following:

- » Determining the *length* of a string, as for a password.
- » Selecting part (or *substring*) of a string, as when choosing the first name in a string that includes the first and last name.
- » Rounding a number to *fixed* numbers of decimal points, as when taking a subtotal in an online shopping cart, calculating the tax, rounding the tax to two decimal points, and adding the tax to the subtotal.

These tasks are so common that JavaScript includes shortcuts called *methods* (italicized above) that make performing tasks like these easier. The general syntax to perform these tasks is to follow the affected variable's name or value with a period and the name of the method, as follows for values and variables:

```
value.method;  
variable.method;
```

[\*\*Table 9-3\*\*](#) shows examples of JavaScript methods for the basic tasks discussed above. Examples include methods applied to values, such as strings, and to variables.

### **TABLE 9-3 Common JavaScript Methods**

<b>Method</b>	<b>Description</b>	<b>Example</b>	<b>Result</b>
.toFixed(n)	Rounds a number to <i>n</i> decimal places	var jenny= 8.675309; jenny.toFixed(2);	8.68
.length	Represents the number of characters in a string	"Nik".length;	3
.substring (start, end)	Extracts portion of the string beginning from position start to end. Position refers to the location between each character, and starts before the first character with zero.	var name= "Inbox";name.substring (2,5);	



**REMEMBER** When using a string, or assigning a variable to a value that is a string, always enclose the string in quotes.

The .toFixed and .length methods are relatively straightforward, but the .substring method can be a little confusing. The starting and ending positions used in .substring(start, end) do not reference actual characters, but instead reference the space between each character. [\*\*Figure 9-5\*\*](#) shows how the start and end position works. The statement "Inbox".substring(2,5) starts at position 2, which is between "n" and "b", and ends at position 5 which is after the "x".



**FIGURE 9-5:** The `.substring` method references positions that are between characters in a string.



**TIP** For a list of additional string and number methods see W3Schools [www.w3schools.com/js/js\\_number\\_methods.asp](http://www.w3schools.com/js/js_number_methods.asp) and [www.w3schools.com/js/js\\_string\\_methods.asp](http://www.w3schools.com/js/js_string_methods.asp).

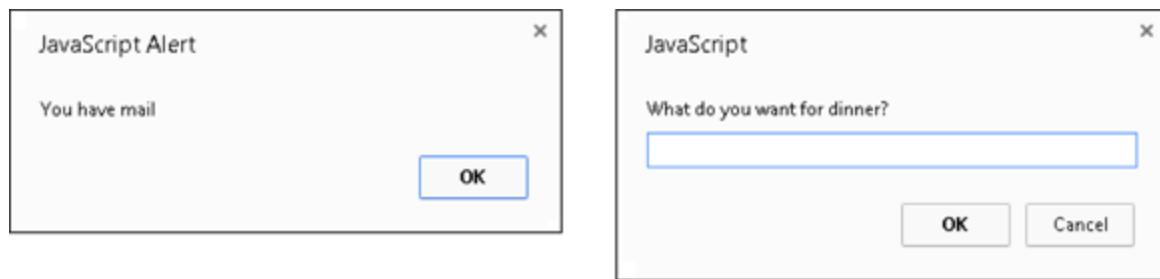
## ***Alerting users and prompting them for input***

Displaying messages to the user and collecting input are the beginnings of the interactivity that JavaScript provides. Although more sophisticated techniques exist today, the `alert()` method and `prompt()` method are easy ways to show a pop-up box with a message, and prompt the user for input.

The syntax for creating an alert or a prompt is to write the method with text in quotes placed inside the parentheses like so:

```
alert("You have mail");
prompt("What do you want for dinner?");
```

Figure 9-6 shows the alert pop-up box created by the `alert()` method, and the prompt for user input created by the `prompt()` method.



**FIGURE 9-6** A JavaScript alert pop-up box and a user prompt.

## *Naming code with functions*

Functions are a way of grouping JavaScript statements, and naming that group of statements for easy reference with a function name. These statements are typically grouped together because they achieve a specific coding goal. You can use the statements repeatedly by just writing the function name instead of having to write the statements over and over again. Functions prevent repetition and make your code easier to maintain.

When I was younger every Saturday morning my mother would tell me to brush my teeth, fold the laundry, vacuum my room, and mow the lawn. Eventually, my mother tired of repeating the same list over and over again, wrote the list of chores on paper, titled it “Saturday chores,” and put it on the fridge. A function names a group of statements, just like “Saturday chores” was the name for my list of chores.

Functions are defined once using the word `function`, followed by a function name, and then a set of statements inside curly brackets. This is called a *function declaration*. The statements in the function are executed only when the function is called by name. In the following example, I have declared a function called `greeting` that asks for your name using the `prompt()` method, returns the name you entered storing it in a variable called `name`, and displays a message with the `name` variable using the `alert()` method:

```
function greeting() {  
    var name=prompt("What is your name?");  
    alert("Welcome to this website " + name);  
}
```

```
greeting();
greeting();
```

Beneath the function declaration, I have called the function twice, and so I will trigger two prompts for my name, which are stored in the variable name, and two messages welcoming the value in the variable name to this website.



**TIP** The “+” operator is used to *concatenate* (combine) strings with other strings, values, or variables.

Functions can take inputs, called *parameters*, to help the function run, and can return a value when the function is complete. After writing my list of chores, each Saturday morning my mother would say “Nik, do the Saturday chores,” and when my brother was old enough she would say “Neel, do the Saturday chores.” If the list of chores is the function declaration, and “Saturday chores” is the function name, then “Nik” and “Neel” are the parameters. Finally, after I was finished, I would let my mom know the chores were complete, much as a function returns values.

In the following example, I have declared a function called `amountdue`, which takes `price` and `quantity` as parameters. The function, when called, calculates the `subtotal`, adds the `tax` due, and then returns the `total`. The function `amountdue(10, 3)` returns 31.5.

```
function amountdue(price, quantity) {
  var subtotal=price * quantity;
  var tax = 1.05;
  var total = subtotal * tax;
  return total;
}

alert("The amount due is $" + amountdue(10,3));
```



**REMEMBER** Every opening parenthesis has a closing parenthesis, every opening curly bracket has a closing curly bracket, and every opening double quote has a closing double quote. Can you find all the opening and closing pairs in the example above?

## ***Adding JavaScript to the web page***

The two ways to add JavaScript to the web page are:

- » Embed JavaScript code in an HTML file using the `script` tag.
- » Link to a separate JavaScript file from the HTML file using the `script` tag.

To embed JavaScript code in an HTML file, use an opening and closing `<script>` tag, and write your JavaScript statements between the two tags, as shown in the following example:

```
<!DOCTYPE html>
<html>
  <head>
    <title>Embedded JavaScript</title>
    <script>
      alert("This is embedded JavaScript");
    </script>
  </head>
  <body>
    <h1>Example of embedded JavaScript</h1>
  </body>
</html>
```



**TIP** The `<script>` tag can be placed inside the opening and closing `<head>` tag, as shown above, or inside the opening and closing `<body>` tag. There are some performance advantages when choosing one approach over the other, and you can read more at

<http://stackoverflow.com/questions/436411/where-is-the-best-place-to-put-script-tags-in-html-markup>.

The `<script>` tag is also used when linking to a separate JavaScript file, which is the recommended approach. The `<script>` tag includes:

- » A `type` attribute, which for JavaScript is always set equal to `"text/javascript"`
- » A `src` attribute, which is set equal to the location of the JavaScript file.

```
<!DOCTYPE html>
<html>
  <head>
    <title>Linking to a separate JavaScript file</title>
    <script type="text/javascript" src="script.js"/></script>
  </head>
  <body>
    <h1>Linking to a separate JavaScript file</h1>
  </body>
</html>
```



**REMEMBER** The `<script>` tag has an opening and closing tag, whether the code is embedded between the tags or linked to separate file using the `src` attribute.

## *Writing Your First JavaScript Program*

Practice your JavaScript online using the Codecademy website. Codecademy is a free website created in 2011 to allow anyone to learn how to code right in the browser, without installing or downloading any software. Practice all of the tags (and a few more) that you learned in this chapter by following these steps:

1. **Open your browser, go to [www.dummies.com/go/codingfd](http://www.dummies.com/go/codingfd), and click on the link to Codecademy.**
2. **Sign in to your Codecademy account.**  
Signing up is discussed in [Chapter 3](#). Creating an account allows you to save your progress as you work, but it's optional.
3. **Navigate to and click on Getting Started with Programming.**
4. **Background information is presented in the upper left portion of the site, and instructions are presented in the lower left portion of the site.**
5. **Complete the instructions in the main coding window.**
6. **After you have finished completing the instructions, click the Save and Submit Code button.**

If you have followed the instructions correctly, a green checkmark appears and you proceed to the next exercise. If an error exists in your code a warning appears with a suggested fix. If you run into a problem, or have a bug you cannot fix, click on the hint, use the Q&A Forums, or tweet me at @nikhilgabraham and include hashtag #codingFD.

## **Working with APIs**

Although *APIs* (*application programming interfaces*) have existed for decades, the term has become popular over the last few years as we hear more conversation and promotion around their use. *Use the Facebook API! Why doesn't Craigslist have an API? Stripe's entire business is to allow developers to accept payments online using its payments API.*

Many people use the term API, but few understand its meaning. This section will help clarify what APIs do and how they can be used.

### **What do APIs do?**

An API allows Program A to access select functions of another separate Program B. Program B grants access by allowing Program A to make a data request in a structured, predictable, documented way, and Program

B responds to this data request with a structured, predictable, documented response, as follows (see [Figure 9-7](#)):

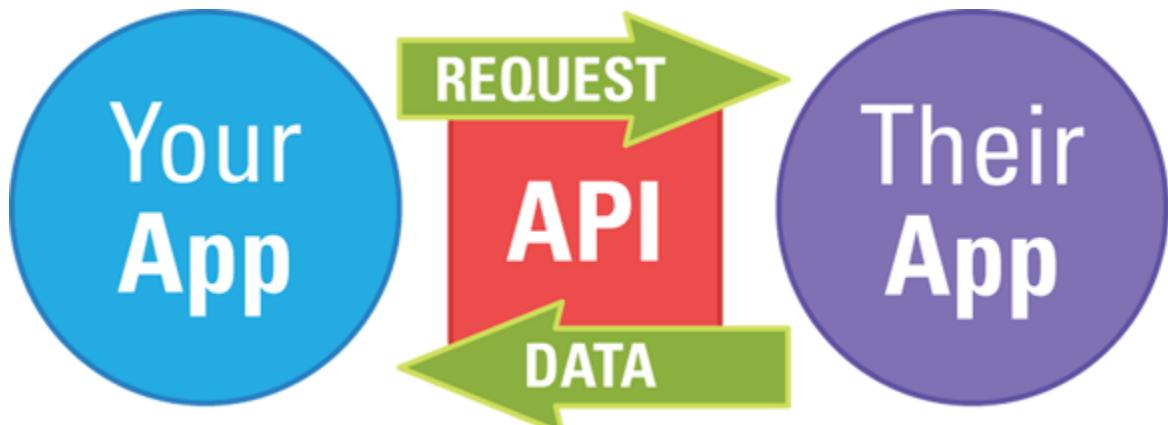
- » It's *structured* because the fields in the request and the data in the response follow an easy-to-read standardized format. For example, the Yahoo Weather API data response includes these selected structured data fields:

```
"location": {  
    "city": "New York",  
    "region": "NY"  
},  
"units": {  
    "temperature": "F"  
},  
"forecast": {  
    "date": "29 Oct 2014",  
    "high": "68",  
    "low": "48",  
    "text": "PM Showers"  
}
```



**TIP** See the full Yahoo Weather API response by visiting <http://developer.yahoo.com/weather/>.

- » It's *predictable* because the fields that must be included and can be included in the request are pre-specified, and the response to a successful request will always include the same field types.
- » It's *documented* because the API is explained in detail. Any changes usually are communicated through the website, social media, email, and even after the API changes, there is often a period of backward compatibility when the old API requests will receive a response. For example, when Google Maps issued version 3 of their API, version 2 still operated for a certain grace period.



**FIGURE 9-7:** An API allows two separate programs to talk to each other.

Above you saw a weather API response, so what would you include in a request to a weather API? The following fields are likely important to include:

- » Location, which can potentially be specified by using zip code, city and state, current location in latitude and longitude coordinates, or IP address.
- » Relevant time period, which could include the instant, daily, three day, weekly, or 10-day forecast.
- » Units for temperature (Fahrenheit or Celsius) and precipitation (inches or centimeters).



**REMEMBER** These fields in our request just specify the desired type and data format. The actual weather data would be sent after the API knows your data preferences.

Can you think of any other factors to consider when making the request? Here is one clue — imagine you work for Al Roker on NBC's *Today* TV show, and you are responsible for updating the weather on the show's website for 1 million visitors each morning. Meanwhile, I have a website, NikWeather, which averages 10 daily visitors who check the weather there. The *Today* website and my website both make a request to

the same weather API at the same time. Who should receive their data first? It seems intuitive that the needs of 1 million visitors on the *Today* website should outweigh the needs of my website's 10 visitors. An API can prioritize which request to serve first, when the request includes an API key. An *API key* is a unique value, usually a long alpha-numeric string, which identifies the requestor and is included in the API request. Depending on your agreement with the API provider, your API key can entitle you to receive prioritized responses, additional data, or extra support.

Can you think of any other factors to consider when making the request? Here is another clue — is there any difference in working with weather data versus financial data? The other factor to keep in mind is frequency of data requests and updates. APIs will generally limit the number of times you can request data. In the case of a weather API, maybe the request limit is once every minute. Related to how often you can request the data is how often the data is refreshed. There are two considerations — how often the underlying data changes, and how often the API provider updates the data. For example, except in extreme circumstances the weather generally changes every 15 minutes. Our specific weather API provider may update its weather data every 30 minutes. Therefore, you would only send an API request once every 30 minutes, because sending more frequent requests wouldn't result in updated data. By contrast, financial data such as stock prices and many public APIs, which change multiple times per second, allow one request per second.

## ***Scraping data without an API***

In the absence of an API, those who want data from a third-party website create processes to browse the website, search and copy data, and store it for later use. This method of data retrieval is commonly referred to as *screen scraping* or *web scraping*. These processes, which vary in sophistication from simple to complex, include:

- » **People manually copying and pasting data from websites into a database:** Crowdsourced websites, such as [www.retailmenot.com](http://www.retailmenot.com)

recently listed on the NASDAQ stock exchange, obtain some data in this way.

- » **Code snippets written to find and copy data that match pre-set patterns:** The pre-set patterns are also called *regular expressions*, which match character and string combinations, and can be written using web languages like JavaScript or Python.
- » **Automated software tools which allow you to point and click the fields you want to retrieve from a website:** For example, [www.kimonolabs.com](http://www.kimonolabs.com) is one point-and-click solution, and when FIFA World Cup 2014 lacked a structured API, kimonolabs.com extracted data, such as scores, and made it easily accessible.

The advantage of screen scraping is that the data is likely to be available and with less restrictions because it is content that regular users see. If an API fails, it may go unnoticed and depending on the site take time to fix. By contrast, the main website failing is usually a top priority item, and fixed as soon as possible. Additionally, companies may enforce limits on data retrieved from the API that are rarely seen and harder to enforce when screen scraping.

The disadvantage of screen scraping is that the code written to capture data from a website must be precise and can break easily. For example, a stock price is on a web page in the second paragraph, on the third line, and is the fourth word. The screen scraping code is programmed to extract the stock price from that location, but unexpectedly the website changes its layout so the stock price is now in the fifth paragraph. Suddenly, the data is inaccurate. Additionally, there may be legal concerns with extracting data in this way, especially if the website terms and conditions prohibit screen scraping. In one example, Craigslist terms and conditions prohibited data extraction through screen scraping, and after litigation a court banned a company which accessed Craigslist data using this technique.

## ***Researching and choosing an API***

For any particular data task there may be multiple APIs that can provide you with the data you seek. The following are some factors to consider

when selecting an API for use in your programs:

- » **Data availability:** Make a wish list of fields you want to use with the API, and compare it to fields actually offered by various API providers.
- » **Data quality:** Benchmark how various API providers gather data, and the frequency with which the data is refreshed.
- » **Site reliability:** Measure site uptime because regardless of how good the data may be, the website needs to stay online to provide API data. Site reliability is a major factor in industries like finance and healthcare.
- » **Documentation:** Review the API documentation for reading ease and detail so you can easily understand the API features and limitations before you begin.
- » **Support:** Call support to see response times and customer support knowledgeability. Something will go wrong and when it does you want to be well supported to quickly diagnose and solve any issues.
- » **Cost:** Many APIs provide free access below a certain request threshold. Investigate cost structures if you exceed those levels so you can properly budget for access to your API.

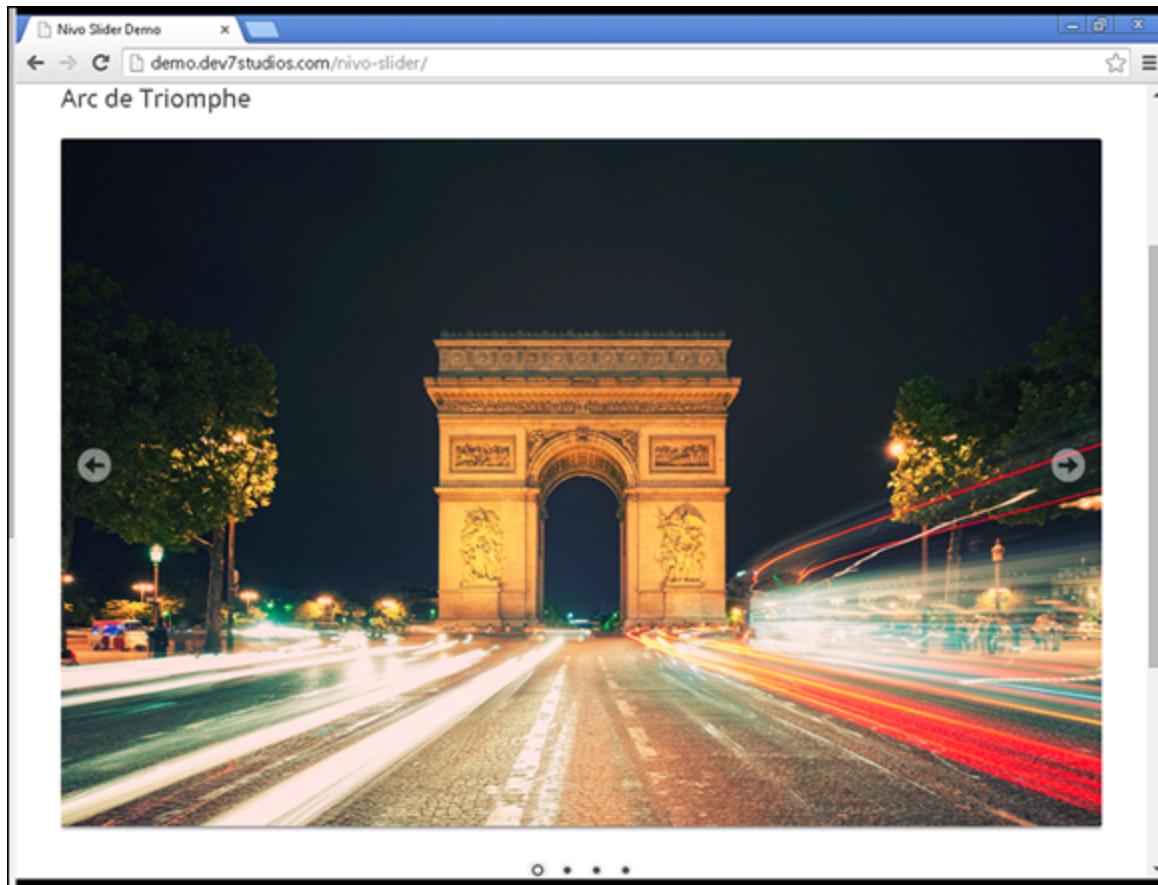
## *Using JavaScript Libraries*

A JavaScript *library* is pre-written JavaScript code that makes the development process easier. The library includes code for common tasks that has already been tested and implemented by others. To use the code for these common tasks, you only need to call the function or method as defined in the library. Two of the most popular JavaScript libraries are jQuery and D3.js.

### *jQuery*

jQuery uses JavaScript code to animate web pages by modifying CSS on the page, and to provide a library of commonly used functions. Although you could write JavaScript code to accomplish any jQuery effect,

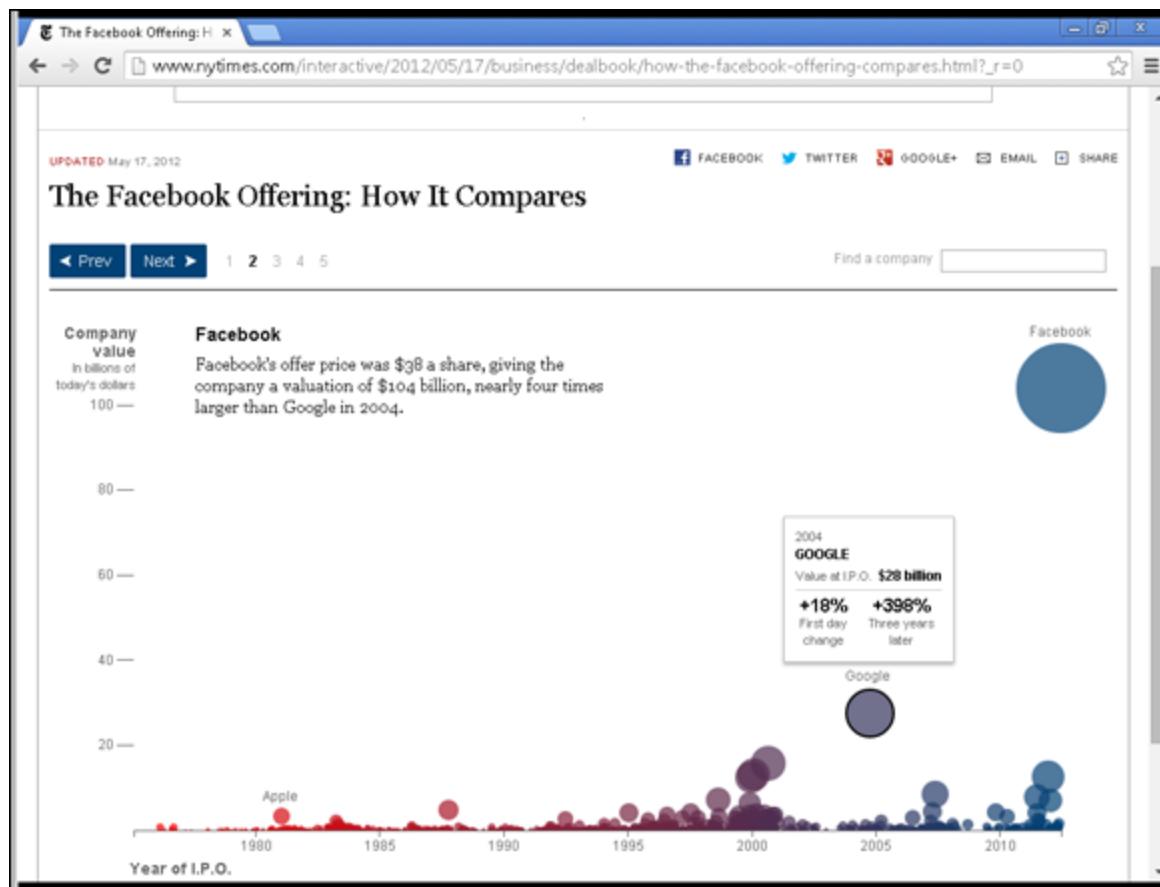
jQuery's biggest advantage is completing tasks by writing fewer lines of code. As the most popular JavaScript library today, jQuery is used on the majority of top 10,000 most visited websites. [Figure 9-8](#) shows a photo gallery with jQuery transition image effects.



[FIGURE 9-8:](#) Photo gallery with jQuery transition image effects triggered by navigation arrows.

## D3.js

D3.js is a JavaScript library for visualizing data. Just like with jQuery, similar effects could be achieved using JavaScript, but only after writing many more lines of code. The library is particularly adept at showing data across multiple dimensions, and creating interactive visualizations of datasets. The creator of D3.js is currently employed at *The New York Times*, which extensively uses D3.js to create charts and graphs for online articles. [Figure 9-9](#) is an interactive chart showing technology company IPO value and performance over time.



**FIGURE 9-9:** An IPO chart showing the valuation of the Facebook IPO relative to other technology IPOs.

## Searching for Videos with YouTube's API

Practice accessing APIs using the Codecademy website. Codecademy is a free website created in 2011 to allow anyone to learn how to code right in the browser, without installing or downloading any software. Practice all of the tags (and a few more) that you learned in this chapter by following these steps:

1. **Open your browser, go to [www.dummies.com/go/codingfd](http://www.dummies.com/go/codingfd), and click on the link to Codecademy.**
2. **Sign in to your Codecademy account.**

Signing up is discussed in [Chapter 3](#). Creating an account allows you to save your progress as you work, but it's optional.

3. **Navigate to and click on How to use APIs with JavaScript, and then Searching for YouTube Videos.**
4. **Background information is presented in the upper left portion of the site, and instructions are presented in the lower left portion of the site.**
5. **Complete the instructions in the main coding window.**
6. **After you have finished completing the instructions, click the Save and Submit Code button.**

If you have followed the instructions correctly, a green checkmark appears and you proceed to the next exercise. If an error exists in your code a warning appears with a suggested fix. If you run into a problem, or have a bug you cannot fix, click on the hint, use the Q&A Forums, or tweet me at @nikhilgabraham and include hashtag #codingFD.

## Part 3

# Putting Together a Web Application

## IN THIS PART ...

Plan to bring your first web application to life.

Meet the people who help build web applications.

Research each component of your first web application.

Build your web application with offers based on location.

Debug the errors in your first web application.

# Chapter 10

# Building Your Own App

---

## IN THIS CHAPTER

Completing a case study using an app

Understanding the process of creating an app to solve a problem

Discovering the various people that help create an app

---

*If you have a dream, you can spend a lifetime ... getting ready for it. What you should be doing is getting started.*

—DREW HOUSTON

If you have read (or skimmed) the previous chapters you now have enough HTML, CSS, and JavaScript knowledge to write your own web application. To review, HTML puts content on the web page, CSS styles that content, and JavaScript allows for interaction with that content.

You may feel like you don't have enough coding knowledge to create an app, but I promise that you do. Besides, the only way to know for certain is to get started and try. In this chapter, you come to better understand the app you are going to build, and the basic steps to create that app. Developers often begin with just the information presented in this chapter and are expected to create a prototype. After reading this chapter think about how you would build the app, and then refer to chapters that follow for more details on each step.

## *Building a Location-Based Offer App*

Technology can provide developers (like you) one of the most valuable pieces of information about your users — their current location. With

mobile devices, such as cell phones and tablets, you can even find a user's location when they are on-the-go. Although you likely have used an app to retrieve the time, weather, or even driving directions, you may never have received an offer on your phone to come into a store while walking down the street or driving in a car. Imagine passing by a Mexican restaurant during lunch time and receiving an offer for a free taco. I'm hungry, so let's get started!

## ***Understanding the situation***

*The following is a fictitious case study. Any resemblance to real companies or events is coincidental.*

The McDuck's Corporation is one of the largest fast food restaurants in the world, specializing in selling hamburgers in a restaurant called McDuck's. The company has 35,000 of these restaurants which serve 6.5 million burgers every day to 70 million people in over 100 countries. In September 2014, McDuck's experienced its worst sales decline in over a decade. After many meetings, the executive team decided that the key to improving sales would be increasing restaurant foot traffic. "Our restaurant experience, with burger visuals and french-fry aromas, is the best in the industry — once a customer comes in it is a guaranteed sale," says McDuck's CEO Duck Corleone. To promote restaurant visits, McDuck's wants a web application so customers can check-in to their favorite store, and receive an offer or coupon if they are close to a restaurant. "Giving customers who are 5 or 10 minutes away from a restaurant an extra nudge may result in a visit. Even if customers use this app while at the restaurant, this will allow us to maintain a relationship with them long after they have left," says Corleone.

The McDuck Corporation wants to run a pilot to better understand whether location based offers will increase sales. Your task is to:

- » Create an app that will prove whether location based offers are effective.
- » Limit the app to work on just one McDuck's store of your choice.
- » Obtain the location of customers using the app.

- » Show offers to those customers who are five or ten minutes from the store.

McDuck's currently has a website and a mobile app, but both only show menu and store location information. If this pilot is successful, McDuck's will incorporate your code into its website and mobile app.

## ***Plotting your next steps***

Now that you understand McDuck's request, you likely have many questions:

- » What will the app look like?
- » What programming languages will I use to create the app?
- » How will I write code to locate a user's present location?
- » What offer will I show to a user who is 5 to 10 minutes away?

These are natural questions to ask, and to make sure you are asking all the necessary questions upfront in an organized way you will follow a standard development process.

# ***Following an App Development Process***

Building an app can take as little time as an hour or as long as decades. For most startups, the development processes for the initial product prototype averages one or two months to complete, whereas enterprise development processes for commercial grade software takes six months to a few years to complete, depending on the industry and the project's complexity. A brief overview of the entire process is described here, and then each step is covered in additional detail as you build the app for McDuck's.



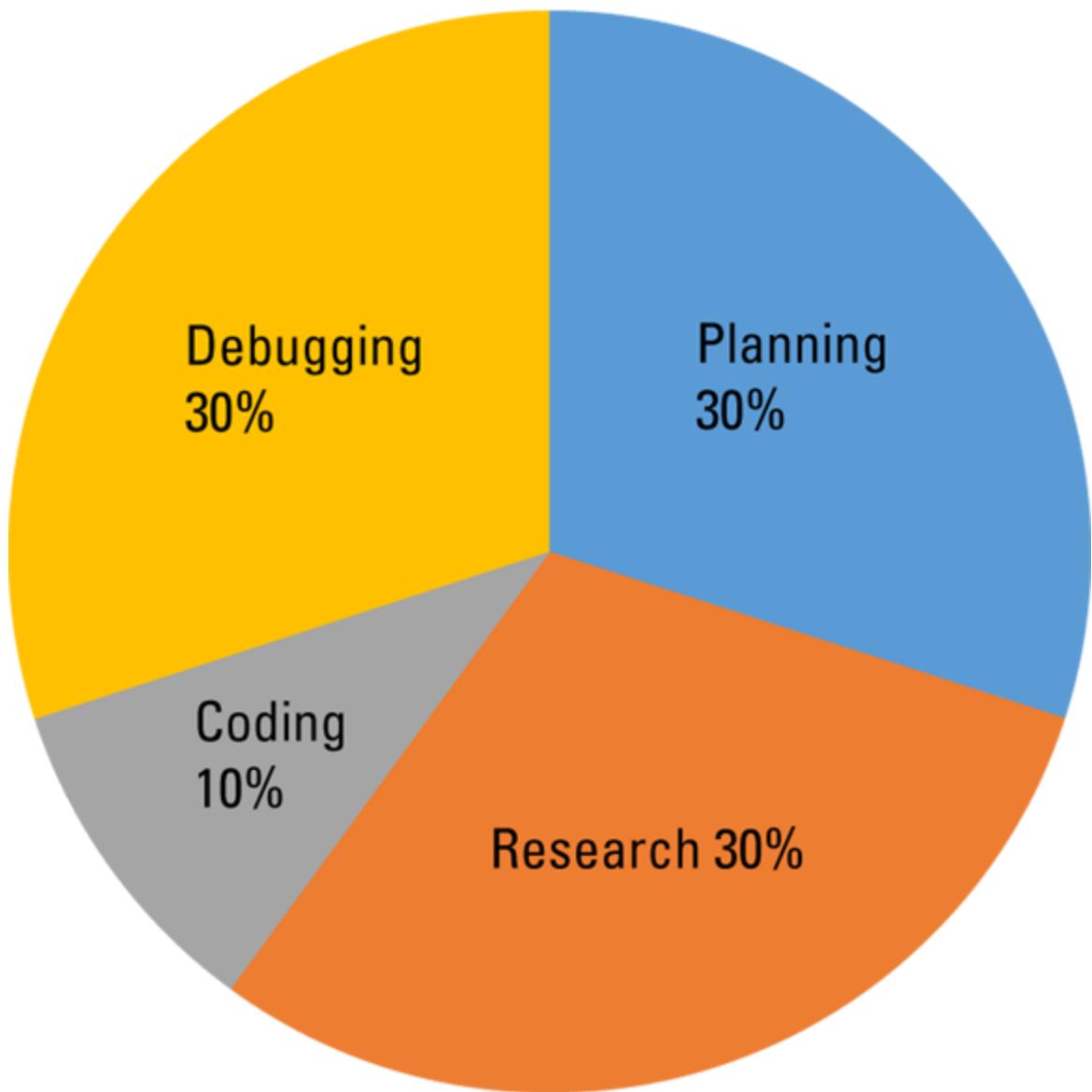
**REMEMBER** An app can be a software program that runs on desktop or mobile devices.

The four steps you will follow when building your app are:

- » Planning and discovery of app requirements
- » Researching of technology needed to build the app, and designing the app look and feel
- » Coding your app using a programming language
- » Debugging and testing your code when it behaves differently than you intended

In total, you should plan to spend between two to five hours building this app. As shown in [Figure 10-1](#), planning and research alone will take more than half your time, especially if this is the first time you are building an app. You might be surprised to learn that actually writing code will take a relatively small amount of time, with the rest of your time spent debugging your code to correct syntax and logic errors.

## Time Allocations in the App Development Process



**FIGURE 10-1:** Time allocated to complete the four steps in the app development process.



TECHNICAL STUFF

App development processes have different names, and the two biggest processes are called *waterfall* and *agile*. Waterfall is a set of sequential steps followed to create a program, whereas agile is a set

of iterative steps followed to create a program. Additional discussion can be found in [Chapter 3](#).

## *Planning Your First Web Application*

You or your client has a web app idea, and planning is the process of putting those ideas down on paper. Documenting all the features that will go into the app is so important, because as the cartoon in [Figure 10-2](#) shows for web development, and in computer science generally, it can be difficult to understand upfront what features are technically easy versus difficult to implement.



**FIGURE 10-2:** It can be difficult to separate technically easy and difficult projects.

The planning phase also facilitates an upfront conversation around time, project scope, and budget, where a common saying is to “pick two out of the three.” In some situations, such as with projects for finance companies, timelines and project scope may be legally mandated or tied to a big client, and cannot be changed, and so additional budget may need to be set aside to meet both. In other situations, such as projects for small startups, resources are scarce so it’s more common to adjust the project scope or extend the timeline than to increase the project’s budget. Before writing any code, it will be helpful to understand which dimensions can be flexed and which are fixed.

Finally, although you will likely play multiple roles in the creation of this web app, in real life teams of people help bring to life the web apps you use every day. You will see the roles people play, and how everyone works together.

## ***Exploring the Overall Process***

The purpose of the planning phase is to:

- » **Understand the client goals:** Some clients may want to be the first to enter an industry with an app, even if it means sacrificing quality. Other clients may require the highest standards of quality, reliability, and stability. Similarly, some others may prioritize retaining existing customers, while others want to attract new customers. All these motivations affect the product design and implementation in big and small ways.



**TIP** If you are a developer in a large company, your client is usually not the end user but whoever in your internal team must greenlight the app before it is released to the public. At many companies, such as Google, Yahoo, and Facebook, most projects do not pass internal review and are never released to the public.

- » **Document product and feature requests:** Clients usually have an overall product vision, a list of tasks the user must be able to complete with the app. Often, clients have features in mind that would help accomplish those tasks.
- » **Agree on deliverables and a timeline:** Almost every client will imagine a much bigger product than you have time to build. For a developer, it is extremely important to understand what features are absolutely necessary and must be built, and what features are “nice to have” if there is time remaining at the end of the project. If every feature is a “must have” you need to either push the client to prioritize something, or make sure you have given yourself enough time.



**TIP**

Estimating the time to complete software projects is one of the most difficult project management tasks. There is greater variability and uncertainty than physical construction projects, like building a house, or intellectual projects, like writing a memo. The most experienced developers at the world’s best software companies routinely miss estimates, so don’t feel bad if completion takes longer than you think. Your estimation skill will improve with time and practice.

After separating the necessary features from the “nice to have,” you should decide which features are easy and which are complex.

Without previous experience this might seem difficult, but think about whether other applications have similar functionality. You should also try searching the web for forum posts, or products that have the feature. If no product implements the feature, and all online discussion portray the task as difficult it would be worthwhile agreeing up-front on an alternative.

- » **Discuss tools and software you will use to complete the project, and your users will use to consume the project:** Take the time to understand your client and user’s workflow to avoid surprises from incompatible software. Web software usually works across a variety

of devices, but older operating systems and browsers can cause problems. Defining at the start of the project exactly which browser versions you will support (such as Internet Explorer 9 and later), and which devices (such as desktop and iPhone only) will save development and testing time. Usually, these decisions are based on how many existing users are on those platforms, and many organizations will support a browser version if used by a substantial amount of the user base — usually at least five percent.



**TIP** Browser incompatibilities are decreasing as the latest desktop and mobile browsers update themselves, and are now easier to keep up-to-date.

## *Meeting the People Who Bring a Web App to Life*

You will be able to complete the app in this book by yourself, but the apps you build at work or use every day, like Google Maps or Instagram, are created by teams of people. Teams for a single product can vary in size, reaching upwards of 50 people, and each person plays a specific role across areas like design, development, product management, and testing. In smaller companies, the same person may perform multiple roles, while at larger companies the roles become more specialized and individual people perform each role.

### *Creating with designers*

Before any code has been written, designers work to create the site look and feel through layout, visuals, and interactions. Designers answer simple questions like “should the navigational menu be at the top of the page or the bottom?” to more complex questions like “how can we convey a sense of simplicity, creativity, and playfulness?” In general, designers answer these types of questions by interviewing users, creating

many designs of the same product idea, and then making a final decision by choosing one design. Good design can greatly increase adoption of a product or use of site, and products like Apple's iPhone and Airbnb.com. (See [Figure 10-3](#).)



**FIGURE 10-3:** Jonathan Ive, SVP of Design at Apple, is credited for Apple's design successes.

When building a website or app, you may decide you need a designer, but keep in mind within design there are multiple roles that designers

play. The following roles are complementary, and may all be done by one person or by separate people:

- » **User interface (UI) and user experience (UX) designers** deal primarily with “look and feel” and with layout. When you browse a website, for example Amazon, you may notice that across all pages the navigation menus, and content are in the same place, and use identical or very similar font, buttons, input boxes, and images. The UI/UX designer thinks about the order in which screens are displayed to the user, along with where and how the user clicks, enters text, and otherwise interacts with the website. If you eavesdropped on UI/UX designers, you may hear conversation like, “his page is too busy with too many call to actions. Our users don’t make this many decisions anywhere else on the site. Let’s simplify the layout by having just a single Buy button so anyone can order in just one click.”
- » **Visual designers** deal primarily with creating the final graphics used on a website, and is the role most closely associated with “designer.” The visual designer creates final versions of icons, logos, buttons, typography, images. For example, look at your Internet browser — the browser icon, the Back, Reload, and Bookmark buttons are all created by a visual designer, and anyone using the browser for the first time will know what the icons mean without explanation. If you eavesdropped on visual designers, you may hear conversation like, “The color contrast on these icons is too light to be readable, and if including text with the icon, let’s center-align the text below the icon instead of above it.”
- » **Interaction designers** deal primarily with interactions and animations based on user input and situation. Initially, interaction design were limited to keyboard and mouse interactions, but today touch sensors on mobile devices have created many more potential user interactions. The interaction designer thinks about how to use the best interaction so the user is able to complete a task as easily as possible. For example, think about how you check your email on your mobile phone. For many years, the traditional interaction was to

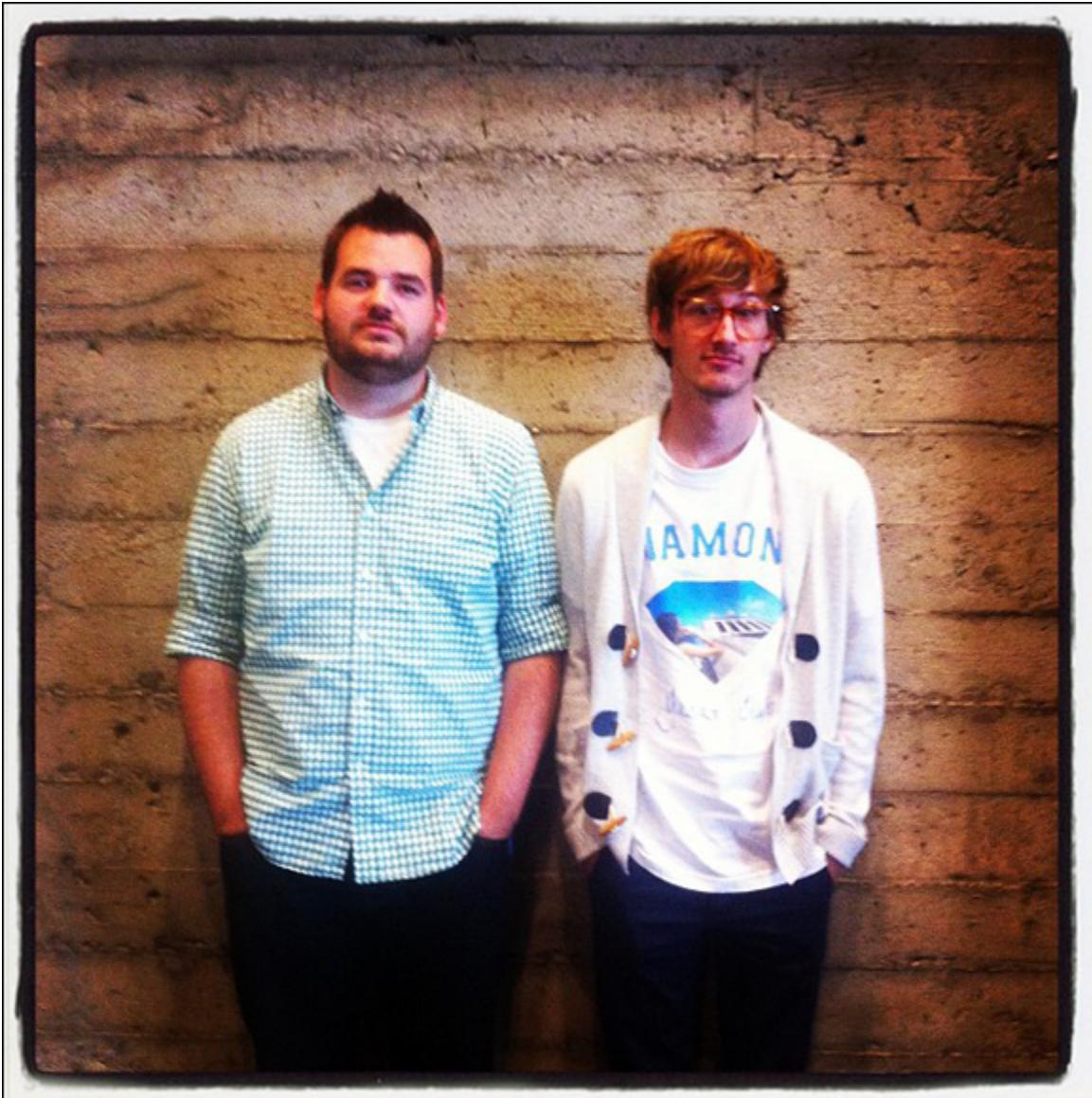
see a list of messages, click on a message, and then click on a button to reply, flag, folder, or delete the message. In 2013, interaction designers rethought the email app interaction, and created an interaction so users could swipe their finger left or right to delete or reply to email messages instead of having to click through multiple menus. If you eavesdropped on interaction designers, you may hear conversation like, “While users are navigating with our maps app, instead of letting us know they are lost by clicking or swiping, maybe they can shake the phone and we instantly have a location specialist call them.”



**TIP** If creating an app was like making a movie, designers would be screenwriters.

## ***Coding with front- and back-end developers***

After the design is complete, the front-end and back-end developers make those designs a reality. Front-end developers, such as Mark Otto and Jacob Thornton (see [Figure 10-4](#)), code in HTML, CSS, and JavaScript, and convert the design into a user interface. These developers write the same code that you have been learning throughout this book, and ensure the website looks consistent across devices (desktop, laptop, and mobile), browsers (Chrome, Firefox, Safari, and so on), and operating systems (Windows, Mac, and so on). All these factors, especially increased adoption of mobile device, result in thousands of combinations that must be coded for and tested because every device, browser, and operating system renders HTML and CSS differently.



**FIGURE 10-4:** Mark Otto and Jacob Thornton created Bootstrap, the most popular front-end framework.



**TIP** If creating an app was like making a movie, front-end developers would be the starring actors.

Back-end developers such as Yukihiro Matsumoto (see [Figure 10-5](#)) add functionality to the user interface created by the front-end developers. Back-end developers ensure everything that's not visible to the user and behind the scenes is in place for the product to work as expected. Back-

end developers use server-side languages like Python, PHP, and Ruby to add logic around what content to show, when, and to whom. In addition, they use databases to store user data, and create servers to serve all of this code to the users.



**FIGURE 10-5:** Yukihiro Matsumoto created Ruby, a popular server-side language used to create websites.



**TIP** If creating an app was like making a movie, back-end developers would be the cinematographers, stunt coordinators, makeup artists, and set designers.

## ***Managing with product managers***

Product managers help define the product to be built, and manage the product development process. When engineering teams are small (such as fifteen people or less) communication, roles, and accountability are easily managed internally without much formal oversight. As engineering teams grows, the overhead of everyone communicating with each other also grows, and without some process can become unmanageable, leading to miscommunication and missed deadlines.

Product managers serve to lessen the communication overhead, and when issues arise as products are being built decide whether to extend timelines, cut scope, or add more resources to the team. Product managers are often former engineers, who have a natural advantage in helping solve technical challenges that arise, but non-technical people are also assuming the role with success. Usually, no engineers report to the product manager, causing some to comment that product managers have “all of the responsibility, and none of the authority.” One product manager wielding great responsibility and authority is Sundar Pichai, who originally was a product manager for the Google toolbar, and recently was appointed to oversee many of Google’s products, including search, Android, Chrome, maps, ads, and Google+. (See [Figure 10-6](#).)



**FIGURE 10-6:** Sundar Pichai oversees almost every major Google product.

## *Testing with quality assurance*

Testing is the final step of the journey after an app or website has been built. As a result of the many hands that helped with production, the newly created product will inevitably have bugs. Lists are made of all the core app user tasks and flows, and human testers along with automated programs go through the list over and over again on different browsers, devices, and operating systems to find errors. Testers compile the newly discovered bugs, and send them back to the developers, who prioritize which bugs to squash first. Trade-offs are always made

between how many users are affected by a bug, the time it takes to fix the bug, and the time left until the product must be released. The most important bugs are fixed immediately, and minor bugs are scheduled to be fixed with updates or later released. Today, companies also rely on feedback systems and collect error reports from users, with feedback forms and in some cases through automated reporting.

# Chapter 11

# Researching Your First Web Application

---

## IN THIS CHAPTER

**Dividing an app into smaller pieces, or steps**

**Using code from various sources to perform those steps**

**Creating app designs by reviewing and improving upon existing solutions**

---

*If we knew what it was we were doing, it would not be called research.*

—ALBERT EINSTEIN

With the basic requirements defined, the next step is researching how to build the application. Apps consist of two main parts: functionality and form (design). For each of these parts, you must:

- » **Divide the app into steps:** Although it's good practice to divide anything you are going to build into steps, diving apps into manageable pieces is an absolute necessity for large software projects with many people working across multiple teams.
- » **Research each step:** When doing your research, the first question to ask is whether you must build a solution yourself or use an existing solution built by someone else. Building your own solution usually is the best way to directly address your need, but it takes time, whereas implementing someone else's solution is fast but may only meet part of your needs.
- » **Choose a solution for each step:** You should have all the solutions selected before writing any code. For each step, decide whether you

are writing your own code, or using pre-built code. If you are not writing the code yourself, compare a few options so you can pick one with confidence.

## ***Dividing the App into Steps***

The biggest challenge with dividing an app into steps is knowing how big or small to make each step. The key is to make sure each step is discrete and independent. To test whether you have the right number of steps, ask yourself if someone else could solve and complete the step with minimal guidance.

### ***Finding your app's functionality***

Recall that McDuck's wants to promote restaurant visits by using a web application that sends customers an offer or coupon if they're close to a restaurant. To make this job easier, you are to create the app for customers visiting just one store.

Your first move is to break down this app into steps needed for the app to function. These steps should not be too specific: Think of them in broad terms, as if you were explaining the process to a kindergartner. With a pen and paper, write down these steps in order. Don't worry about whether each step is correct, as your skill will improve with practice and time. To help you start, here are some clues:

- » Assume the McDuck's app activates when the customer presses a button in the app to check-in to a store.
- » When the button is pressed, what are the two locations that the app must be aware of?
- » When the app is aware of these two locations, what calculation involving these two locations must the computer make?
- » After computing this calculation, what effect will the computer show?

Fill out your list now, and don't continue reading until you've completed it.

## ***Finding your app's functionality: My version***

The following is my version of the steps needed to make the app function according to McDuck's specifications. My steps may differ from yours, of course, and this variation is completely fine. The important lesson here is that you understand why each of these steps is necessary for the app to work:

### **1. The customer presses a button on the app.**

The instructions above said to initiate the app with the press of a button. That being said, there are two other options for launching the app:

- *Executing the steps continuously in the background, regularly checking the customer's location.* Currently, this technique places a heavy drain on the battery, and is not usually recommended.
- *Executing the steps only when the customer opens the app.*

### **2. After the button is pressed, find the customer's current location.**

The customer's location is one of the two locations you need to identify. The customer's current location is not fixed, and it changes, for example, when the customer is walking or driving.

### **3. Find the fixed location of a McDuck's store.**

The McDuck's restaurant location is the other location you need to identify. Because this is a pilot, you only need to identify the location for one McDuck's restaurant, a fixed location that will not change. Hypothetically, assuming that the pilot is successful and that McDuck's wants to implement this app for users visiting all 35,000 restaurants, you'd have to track many more restaurant locations. Additionally, in a larger rollout the locations would need to be updated regularly, as new restaurants open, and as existing restaurants move or close.

**4. Calculate the distance between the customer's current location and the McDuck's restaurant, and name this distance *Customer Distance*.**

This step calculates how far away the customer is from the McDuck's restaurant. One complexity to be aware of — but not to worry about right now — is the direction in which the customer is moving. Although McDuck's did not specify whether they want to display offers to customers heading both toward and away from their store, this may be a question worth asking anyway.

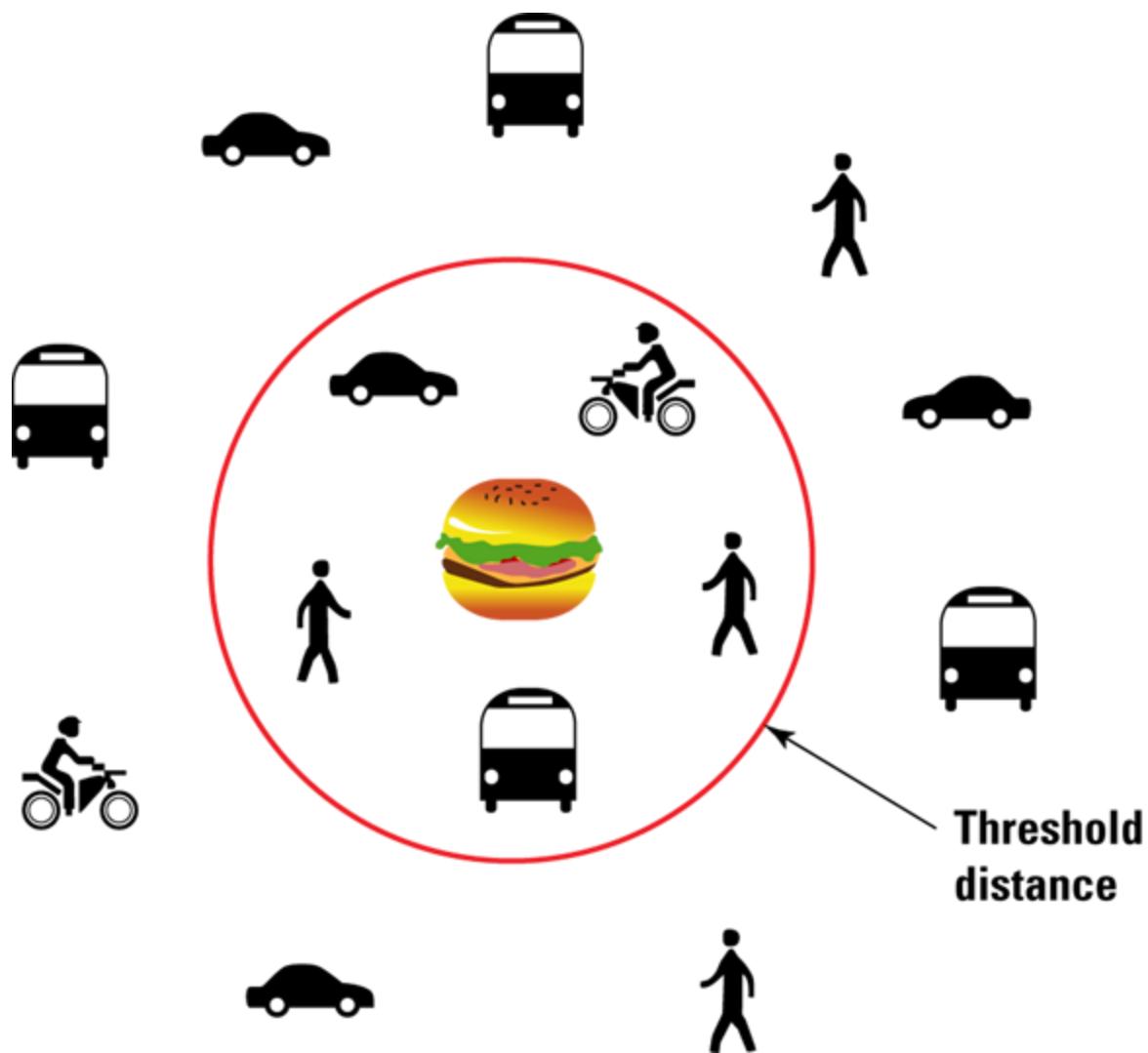
**5. Convert five to ten minutes of customer travel into a distance called *Threshold Distance*.**

McDuck's CEO Duck Corleone wants to target customers who are five to ten minutes away from the store. Distance, in this sense, can be measured in both time and in units of distance such as miles. For consistency, however, plan to convert time into distance — translate those five to ten minutes into miles. The number of miles traveled in this time will vary by common mode of transportation and by location, because five to ten minutes of travel in New York City won't get you as far as five to ten minutes of travel in Houston, Texas.

**6. If the Customer Distance is less than the Threshold Distance, then show an offer to the customer.**

Following McDuck's specifications, the app should attract customers to come to the store, and so the app only shows offers to customers who are close to the restaurant. Another complexity to be aware of — but not to worry about right now — is that the Customer Distance can change quickly. Customers traveling by car could easily be outside the Threshold Distance one minute and inside it the next.

[Figure 11-1](#) shows the customers we want to target, relative to a fixed restaurant location.



**FIGURE 11-1:** Customers we want to target based on a fixed restaurant location.



**REMEMBER** Many software logic mistakes happen at this stage, because the programmer forgets to include a step. Take your time reviewing these steps and understanding why each step is essential, and why this list of steps is the minimum necessary to operate the app.

## ***Finding your app's form***

After you settle on what the app will do, you must find the best way to present this functionality to users. There are many ways that users can interact with your app's functionality, so picking out the right approach

can be tricky. Designing an app can be fun and rewarding, but it's hard work. After the first iteration of an app's design, developers are often disappointed: Users will rarely use the product as intended and will find many parts of the app confusing. This is natural — especially because at this stage you're often creating something or having the user do something that hasn't been done before. Your only choice is to keep trying, to keep testing, modifying, and creating new designs until your app is easy for everyone to use. Although the iPod is a hardware product, the approach Apple took to perfect it is basically the same. [Figure 11-2](#) shows how the design can change over time, with the button layout changing from the original click-wheel to individual horizontal buttons, and finally back to the click-wheel again.



**FIGURE 11-2:** Apple's iPod design changes over multiple product releases.

The following list describes a basic design process to create the look and feel of your app:

**1. Define the main goals of your app.**

If you were at a party, and you had to explain what your app did in one sentence, what would it be? Some apps help you hail a taxi, reserve a table at a restaurant, or book a flight. Famously, the goal for the iPod was 1,000 songs in your pocket accessible within three clicks, which helped create an easy to use user interface. An

explicitly defined goal will serve as your north star, helping you to resolve questions and forcing you to keep trying.

## 2. Break these goals into tasks.

Each goal is the sum of many tasks, and listing them will help you design the shortest path to completing each task and ultimately the goal. For instance, if your app's goal is for a user to book a flight, then the app will likely need to record desired flying times and destinations, search and select flights departing during those times, record personal and payment information, present seats for selection, and confirm payment of the flight. Sometimes designers will segment tasks by user persona, another name for the person completing the task. For example, this app may be used by business and leisure travelers. Leisure travelers may need to do heavy searching and pick flights based on price, while business travelers mostly rebook completed flights and pick flights based on schedule.

## 3. Research the flows and interactions necessary to accomplish these tasks.

For example, our flight app requires the user to select dates and times. One immediate question is whether the date and time should be two separate fields or one field, and on a different or same screen as the destination. Try to sketch what feels intuitive for you, and research how others have solved this problem. You can use Google to find other travel apps, list all the various designs, and either pick or improve upon the design you like best. [Figure 11-3](#) shows two different approaches to flight search. Similarly, you can also use design-centric sites, such as [www.dribbble.com](http://www.dribbble.com), to search designer portfolios for features and commentary.

## 4. Create basic designs, called *wireframes*, and collect feedback.

Wireframes, as shown in [Figure 11-4](#), are low fidelity website drawings which show structurally how site content and interface interact. Wireframes are simple to create, but should have enough detail to elicit feedback from others. Many wireframe tools use a simple almost pencil-like drawing to help anyone providing comments to focus on the structural and bigger picture design,

instead of smaller details like button colors or border thicknesses. Feedback at this stage to refine design is so important because the first wireframe likely does not address users' main concerns and overcomplicates the tasks a user needs to do.



**TIP** With mobile devices increasing in popularity relative to desktop devices, remember to create mobile and desktop versions of your wireframes.

## 5. Create mock-ups and collect more feedback. (See [Figure 11-5](#).)

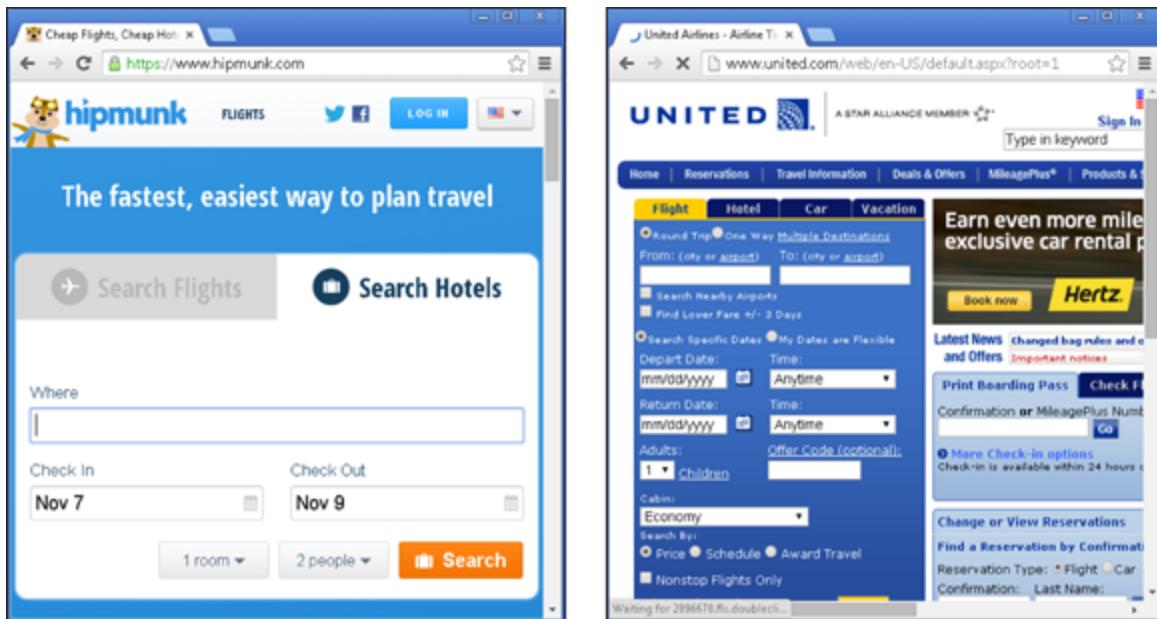
After you have finished talking to your client and to users, it is time to create mock-ups, which are high fidelity website previews. These designs have all the details a developer needs to create the website including final layout, colors, images, logos, and sequences of screens to show when the user interacts with the web page. After creating a mock-up, plan to collect more feedback.



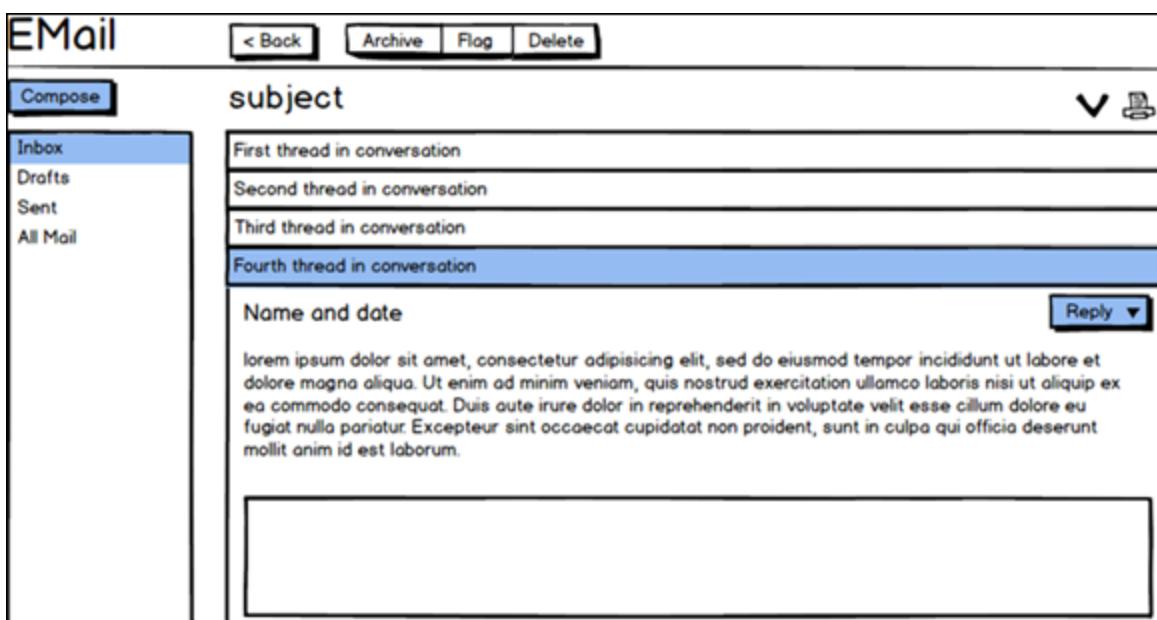
**TIP** Collecting feedback at every stage of the design process might seem unnecessary, but it is much easier to explore different designs and make changes before any code has been written.

## 6. Send the final file to the developers.

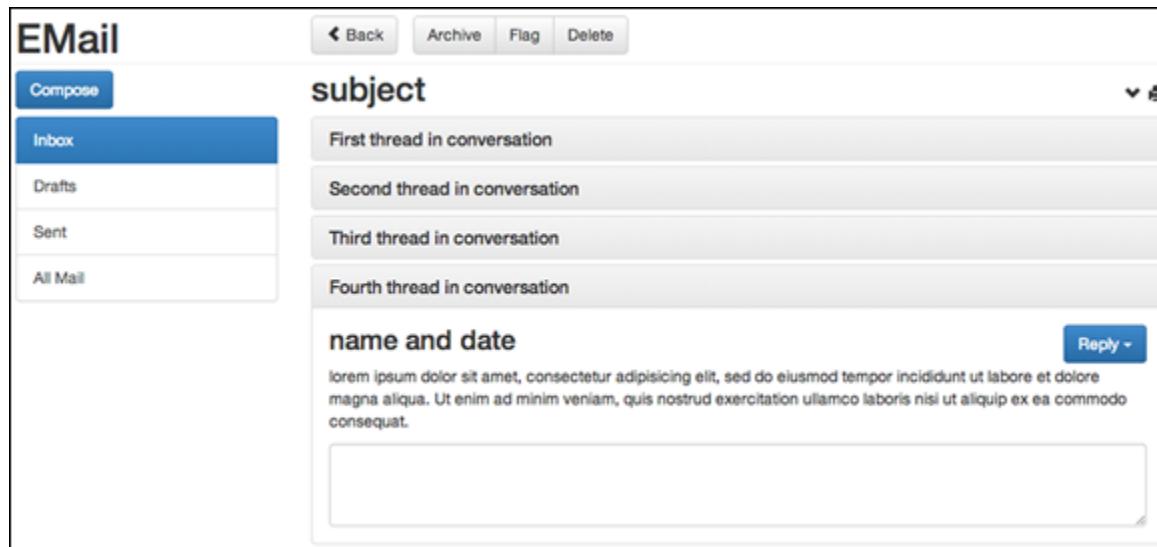
After the mock-up has been created and approved, you typically send a final image file to the developer. Although this file could be in any image file format like PNG or JPG, the most popular file format used by designers is PSD, created using Adobe Photoshop.



**FIGURE 11-3:** Different designs for flight reservation from Hipmunk.com and United Airlines.



**FIGURE 11-4:** A wireframe for an email client.



**FIGURE 11-5:** A mock-up for an email client.

## *Finding your app's form: The McDuck's Offer App design*

In this section you follow the design process described in the previous section to create a simple design for the McDuck's Offer app. As part of the design, you should do the following things:

### **1. Define the main goals of your app.**

The main goal for McDuck's is to use offers to attract customers to restaurants.

### **2. Break these goals into tasks.**

Customers need to view the offer, navigate to the store, and use the offer.

### **3. Research the flows and interactions needed to accomplish these tasks.**

Because this is the first iteration of the app, let's focus on just allowing the customer to view the offer.

One function that McDuck's did not specify is the ability to save single-use coupons and to share general-use coupons. However, when looking at other apps, like the ones in [Figure 11-6](#), the need for this becomes more obvious. Also, some similar apps allow the

customer to spend money to *buy* coupons — maybe this functionality should be added as well. These questions would be great to present to McDuck's later.

The apps in [Figure 11-6](#) also all display various “call to action” buttons to the user before displaying the deal. Some apps ask the user to check-in to a location, other apps ask the user to purchase the coupon, and still others show a collection of new or trending coupons today.

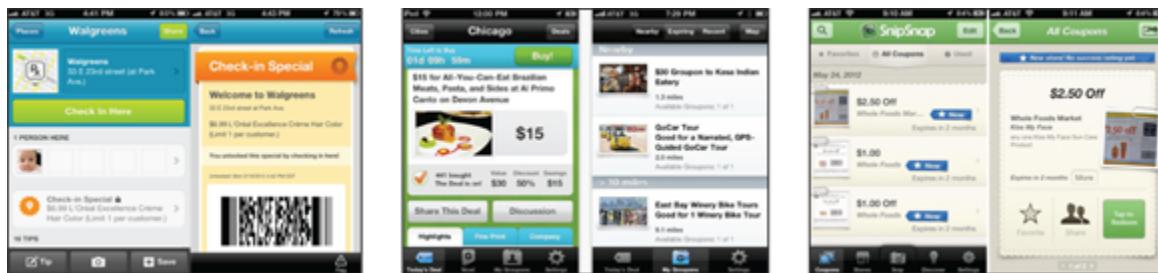
For now, and to keep things simple, let's assume that our McDuck's app has a button that allows customers to check-in to their favorite McDuck's location, and when clicked within the target distance the app displays a general-use coupon that customers receive for free.

#### 4. Create basic designs, called wireframes, and collect feedback.

A sample design for the app, based on the look and feel of other apps, appears in [Figure 11-7](#).

#### 5. Create mock-ups and collect more feedback.

Ordinarily, you would create *mock-ups*, which are more polished designs with real images, from the wireframes and present them to customers for feedback. In this case, however, the app is simple enough that you can just start coding.



**FIGURE 11-6:** Example flow from deals and offer apps currently in the market.



**FIGURE 11-7:** A sample wireframe for the McDuck's offer app.

## Identifying Research Sources

Now that you know *what* your app will do, you can focus on *how* your app will do it. After breaking down your app into steps, you go over each step to determine how to accomplish it. For more complicated apps, developers first decide which of these two methods is the best way to complete each step:

- » **Building code from scratch:** This is the best option if the functionality in a particular step is unique or strategically important, an area of strength for the app, and existing solutions are expensive or non-existent. With this option, you and developers within the company write the code.

- » **Buying or using a pre-existing solution:** This is the best option if the functionality in a particular step is common, non-core technical area for the app, and existing solutions are competitively priced. With this option, you and developers working on the app use code written by external third party developers.

One company that recently made this decision — publicly and painfully — is Apple with its Maps product. In 2012, after years of using Google Maps on its mobile devices, Apple decided to introduce its own maps application that it had been developing for two years. Although the Maps product Apple built internally turned out to initially be a failure, Apple decided to build its own mapping application because it viewed mapping capabilities as strategically important and because turn-by-turn navigation solutions were not available in the solution provided by Google.

Whether you're building or buying, research is your next step. Here are some sources to consider when researching:

- » **Search engines:** Use Google.com or another search engine to type in what you are trying to accomplish with each step. One challenge can be discovering how the task you're trying to achieve is referred to by programmers. For instance, if I want to find my current location, I might enter *show my location in an app* into a search engine, but this results in a list of location-sharing apps. After reading a few of the top ten results, I see that location-tracking is also referred to as *geolocation*. When I search again for geolocation the top results include many examples of code that shows my current location.



**TIP** For more generic searches for code examples, try including the name of the computer language and the word *syntax*. For example, if you want to insert an image on a web page, search for *image html syntax* to find code examples.

» **Prior commercial and open-source apps:** Examining how others built their apps can give you ideas on how to improve upon what already exists, and insight into pushing existing technology to the limit to achieve an interesting effect. For instance, say you wanted to build a mobile app that recognized TV ads from the “audio fingerprint” of those ads and directed viewers to a product page on a mobile device. To create this app, you could build your own audio fingerprinting technology, which would likely take months or longer to build, or you could partner with Shazam, a commercial application, or Echoprint, an open-source music fingerprinting service. Either app can record a 10 to 20-second audio sample, create a digital fingerprint after overcoming background noise and poor microphone quality, compare the fingerprint to large audio database, and then return identification information for the audio sample.

» **Industry news and blogs:** Traditional newspapers, like the *Wall Street Journal*, and tech blogs, like TechCrunch.com, report on the latest innovations in technology. Regularly reading or searching through these sites is a good way to find others who have launched apps in your space.

» **API directories:** You can easily search thousands of APIs for the functionality you need to implement. For example, if you were creating an app that used face recognition instead of a password, you could search for *face detection APIs* and use an API you find instead of trying to build a face detection algorithm from scratch. Popular API directories include [www.programmableweb.com](http://www.programmableweb.com) and [www.mashape.com](http://www.mashape.com).



**TIP** As discussed in [Chapter 9](#), APIs are a way for you to request and receive data from other programs in a structured, predictable, documented way.

» **User-generated coding websites:** Developers in different companies frequently face the same questions on how to implement functionality for features. Communities of developers online talk

about shared problems and contribute code so anyone can see how these problems have been solved in the past. You can participate in developer conversation and see the code other developers have written by using [www.stackoverflow.com](http://www.stackoverflow.com) and [www.github.com](http://www.github.com).

## *Researching the Steps in the McDuck's Offer App*

To implement the functionality in the McDuck's Offer app, you broke down the app into six steps using plain English. Now, research how you can convert those steps into code using the resources listed in the previous section. Your app will require HTML to put content on the page, CSS to style that content, and JavaScript for the more interactive effects. Do your best to research each of the steps on your own, write down the answers, and then look over the suggested code in the next section:

- » **“The customer presses a button on the app:”** This code creates a button that triggers every subsequent step. Creating a button on a web page is a very common task, so to narrow down the results search for *html button tag*. Review some of the links in the top 10 search results, and then write down the HTML tag syntax to create a button that says “McDuck’s Check-in.”



**TIP** In your search results, sites like [w3schools.com](http://w3schools.com) are designed for beginners, and will include example code and simple explanations.

- » **“After the button is pressed, find the customer’s current location:”** In web lingo, finding a user’s location is called *geolocation*. I will provide you with JavaScript geolocation code, along with an explanation for how it works and where I found it. To trigger this JavaScript code, you need to add an attribute to the

HTML button tag to call a JavaScript function named `getlocation()`.



**TIP** As described in [Chapter 4](#), HTML attributes are inserted in the opening HTML tag.

Search for *html button javascript button on click* to find out how to insert the `onclick` attribute to your button HTML code. Review the search results, and then write down the HTML syntax for your button code.

» **“Find the fixed location of a McDuck’s store:”** You’ll need a real-world address to serve as the McDuck’s store. Use a mapping application like `maps.google.com` to find the street address of a burger restaurant near you. Computers typically represent physical addresses using latitude and longitude numbers instead of street addresses. You can search for websites that convert street addresses into latitude and longitude numbers, or if you’re using Google Maps, you can find the numbers in the URL, as shown in [Figure 11-8](#). The first number after the @ sign and up to the comma is the latitude, and the second number between the two commas is the longitude. [Figure 11-8](#) shows a McDonald’s store in New York City, and the latitude is 40.7410344, and the longitude is -73.9880763.

Track down the latitude and longitude numbers for the burger restaurant of your choice, up to seven decimal places, and write them down on a piece of paper.



**TIP** Include a negative sign if you see one, and all seven decimal places for the greatest accuracy.

» **“Calculate the distance between the customer’s current location and the McDuck’s restaurant, and name this distance *Customer Distance*:”** Latitude and longitude are coordinates that represent a location on a sphere. The distance along the surface of the sphere

between two sets of latitude and longitude coordinates is calculated using the Haversine formula. You can find a JavaScript version of the formula at [stackoverflow.com/questions/27928/how-do-i-calculate-distance-between-two-latitude-longitude-points](https://stackoverflow.com/questions/27928/how-do-i-calculate-distance-between-two-latitude-longitude-points). This is the formula you will use to calculate distance when creating the McDuck's app, and I will include this code for you.



TIP

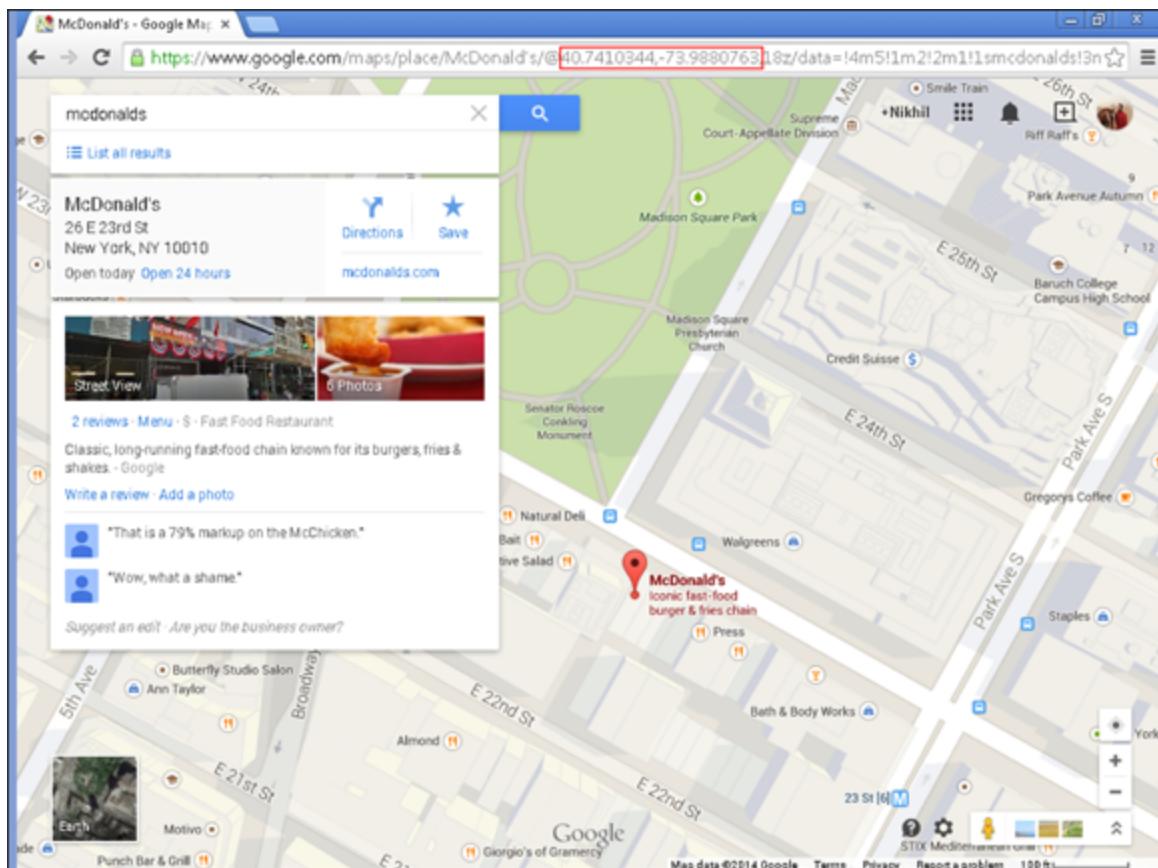
Don't get bogged down in the details of how the Haversine formula works. Abstraction is an important concept to remember when programming, and this basically means that as long as you understand the inputs to a system, and the outputs, you don't really need to understand the system itself, much as you don't need to understand the mechanics of the internal combustion engine in order to drive a car.

- » **“Convert five to ten minutes of customer travel into a distance called *Threshold Distance*:”** Using the most common method of transportation in your current city, write down the number of miles you could you travel, on average, in five to ten minutes.
- » **“If the Customer Distance is less than the Threshold Distance then show an offer to the customer:”** The two pieces to research for this step are the conditional statement that decides when to show the offer to the consumer, and the actual offer:
  - *The conditional statement:* This is written in JavaScript using an `if-else` statement. If the customer is within the threshold distance, then it shows the offer; otherwise (`else`) it shows another message. To review the `if-else` syntax, search Google or another search engine for *JavaScript if-else statement syntax* (or refer to [Chapter 9](#) to review the coverage of the `if-else` statement syntax there).
  - *The offer to show to the consumer:* The easiest way to show an offer is to use the JavaScript `alert()`. Search for *JavaScript alert syntax*.

After you've conducted your searches, write down your if-else statement with a text alert() for a free burger if the customer is within the Threshold Distance, and a text alert() notifying the customer they have checked in.



**TIP** When you have the if-else statement working, you can replace the text alert() with an image. Search <http://images.google.com> for a burger coupon image. After you find the image, left-click on it from the image grid in the search results, and left-click again on View Image button. When the image loads the direct link to the image will be in the URL address bar in the browser. The code to insert the image is shown in [Chapter 4](#).



**FIGURE 11-8:** Latitude and longitude of a McDonald's in New York City.

# Choosing a Solution for Each Step

With your research finished, it's time to find the best solution. If multiple solutions exist for each step, you now need to choose one. To help you choose, weigh each of your multiple solutions across a variety of factors, such as these:

- » **Functionality:** Will the code you write or pre-built solution you found do everything you need?
- » **Documentation:** Is there documentation for the pre-built solution, like instructions or a manual, that is well written with examples?
- » **Community and support:** If something goes wrong while writing your code, is there a community you can turn to for help? Similarly, does the pre-built solution have support options you can turn to if needed?
- » **Ease of implementation:** Is implementation as simple as copying a few lines of code? Or is a more complex setup or an installation of other supporting software necessary?
- » **Price:** Every solution has a price, whether it is the time spent coding your own solution or the money paid for someone else's pre-built code. Think carefully about whether your time or money is more important to you at this stage.

The following are suggested solutions for the previous McDuck's Offer app research questions. Your answers may vary, so review each answer to see where your code differs from mine:

- » **“The customer presses a button on the app:”** The HTML tag syntax to create a button that says “McDuck's Check-in” is:

```
<button>McDuck's Check-in</button>
```



**TIP** The syntax for an HTML button is available here [www.w3schools.com/tags/tag\\_button.asp](http://www.w3schools.com/tags/tag_button.asp).

- » **“After the button is pressed, find the customer’s current location:”** The HTML syntax for your button code is:

```
<button onclick="getLocation()">McDuck's Check-in</button>
```



**TIP** The syntax for calling a JavaScript function by pressing a button is available here [www.w3schools.com/jsref/event\\_onclick.asp](http://www.w3schools.com/jsref/event_onclick.asp).

- » **“Find the fixed location of a McDuck’s store:”** I picked a McDonald’s store in New York City near Madison Square Park whose latitude is 40.7410344 and longitude is –73.9880763. The latitude and longitude for your restaurant, of course, will likely differ.
- » **“Calculate the distance between the customer’s current location and the McDuck’s restaurant, and name this distance Customer Distance:”** The following is the actual code for the Haversine formula, used to calculate the distance between two location coordinates, found on Stackoverflow at [stack overflow .com/questions/27928/how-do-i-calculate-distance-between-two-latitude-longitude-points](http://stackoverflow.com/questions/27928/how-do-i-calculate-distance-between-two-latitude-longitude-points), I modified this code slightly so that it returned miles instead of kilometers:

```
function getDistanceFromLatLonInKm(lat1,lon1,lat2,lon2) {  
  var R = 6371; // Radius of the earth in km  
  var dLat = deg2rad(lat2-lat1); // deg2rad below  
  var dLon = deg2rad(lon2-lon1);  
  var a =  
    Math.sin(dLat/2) * Math.sin(dLat/2) +  
    Math.cos(deg2rad(lat1)) * Math.cos(deg2rad(lat2)) *  
    Math.sin(dLon/2) * Math.sin(dLon/2)  
  ;  
  var c = 2 * Math.asin(Math.sqrt(a));  
  var d = R * c;  
  return d;  
}  
  
function deg2rad(deg) {  
  return deg * Math.PI / 180;  
}
```

```
var c = 2 * Math.atan2(Math.sqrt(a), Math.sqrt(1-a));
var d = R * c * 0.621371; // Distance in miles
return d;
}

function deg2rad(deg) {
    return deg * (Math.PI/180);
}
```



**TIP** An explanation of how this formula works is outside the scope of this book, but make sure you understand the formula's inputs (latitude and longitude) and the output (distance between two points in miles).

- » **“Convert five to ten minutes of customer travel into a distance called *Threshold Distance*:”** In New York City, people usually walk, so traveling for five to ten minutes would take you 0.5 miles, which is my Threshold Distance.
- » **“If the Customer Distance is less than the Threshold Distance, then display an offer to the customer:”** The syntax for the `if-else` statement with the two `text alert()` methods is:

```
If (distance < 0.5) {
    alert("You get a free burger");
}
else {
    alert("Thanks for checking in!");
}
```



**TIP** The syntax for a JavaScript `if-else` statement is available at [www.w3schools.com/js/js\\_if\\_else.asp](http://www.w3schools.com/js/js_if_else.asp).

## Chapter 12

# Coding and Debugging Your First Web Application

---

## IN THIS CHAPTER

**Reviewing code to see pre-existing functionality**

**Writing code by following steps to create your app**

**Debugging your code by looking for common syntax errors**

---

*Talk is cheap. Show me the code.*

—LINUS TORVALDS

It may not feel like it, but you've already done the majority of work toward creating your first web application. You painfully broke down your app into steps, and researched each step to determine functionality and design. As Linus Torvalds, creator of the Linux operator system, said, "Talk is cheap." So let's start actually coding.

## *Getting Ready to Code*

Before you start coding, do a few housekeeping items. First, ensure that you are doing all of the following:

- » **Using the Chome browser:** Download and install the latest version of Chome, as it offers the most support for the latest HTML standards, and is available for download at [www.google.com/chrome/browser](http://www.google.com/chrome/browser).
- » **Working on a desktop or laptop computer:** Although it is possible to code on a mobile device, it can be more difficult and all layouts may not appear properly.

- » **Remembering to indent your code to make it easier to read:** One main source of mistakes is forgetting to close a tag or curly brace, and indenting your code will make spotting these errors easier.
- » **Remembering to enable location services on your browser and computer:** To enable location services within Chrome, click on the settings icon (3 horizontal lines on the top right of the browser), and click on Settings. Then click on the Settings tab, and at the bottom of the screen click on “Show Advanced settings ... ” Under the Privacy menu heading, click on “Content settings ... ” and scroll down to Location and make sure that “Ask when a site tries to track your physical location” is selected. You can read more here: <support.google.com/chrome/answer/142065>.

To enable location services on a PC no additional setting is necessary, but on a Mac using OS X Mountain Lion or later, from the Apple menu choose System Preferences, then click on the Security & Privacy icon, and click the Privacy tab. Click the padlock icon on the lower left, and select Location Services, and check Enable Location Services. You can read more here: <support.apple.com/en-us/ht5403>.

Finally, you need to set up your development environment. To emulate a development environment without instructional content use Codepen.io. Codepen.io offers a free stand-alone development environment, and makes it easy to share your code. Open this URL in your browser: <codepen.io/nabraham/pen/ExnsA>.

## ***Coding Your First Web Application***

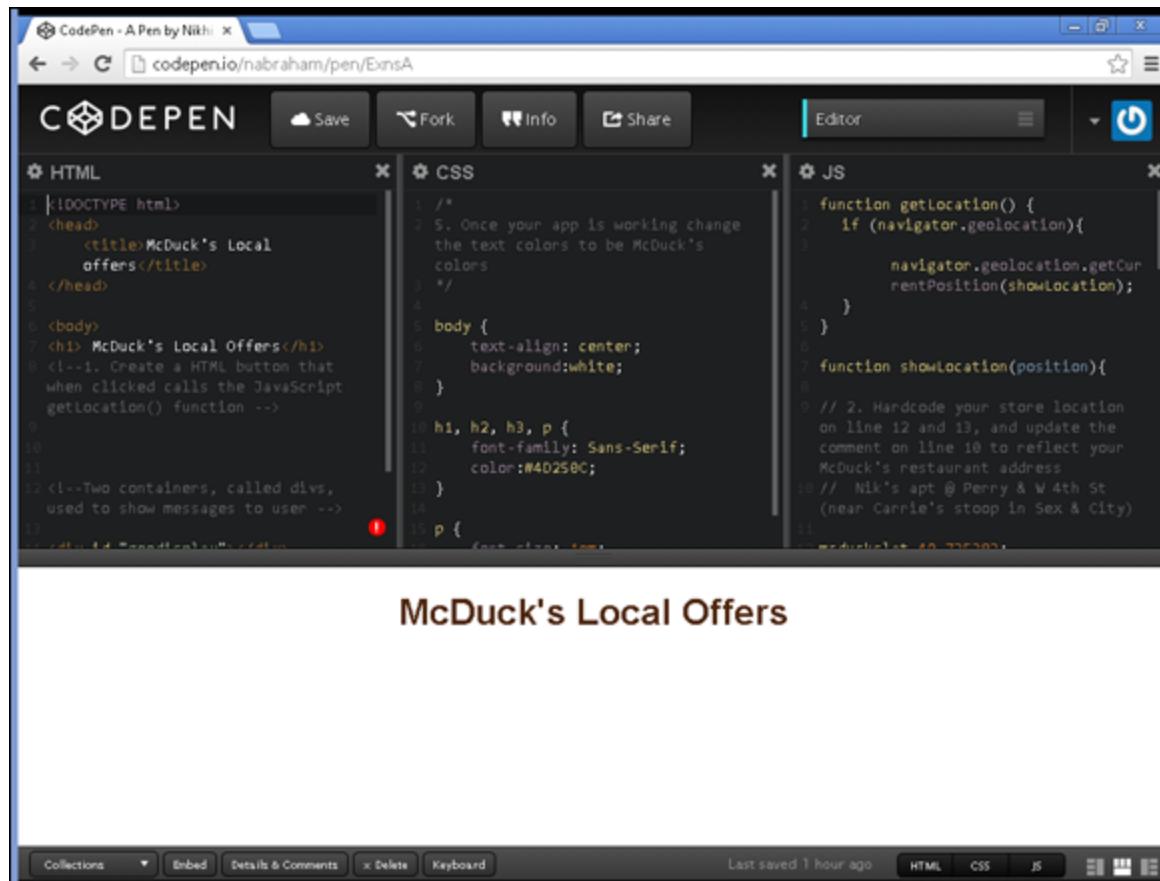
With the Codepen.io URL loaded, let us review the development environment, the pre-written code, and the coding steps for you to follow.

### ***Development environment***

The Codepen.io development environment, as shown in [Figure 12-1](#), has three coding panels, one each for HTML, CSS, and JavaScript. There is

also a preview pane to see the live results of your code. Using the button at the bottom of the screen, you can hide any coding panel you aren't using, and the layout of the coding panels can be changed.

Signing up for a Codepen.io account is completely optional, and allows you to *fork* or save the code you have written, and share it with others.



**FIGURE 12-1** The Codepen.io development environment.

## Pre-written code

The Codepen.io development environment includes some pre-written HTML, CSS, and JavaScript code for the McDuck's app. The pre-written code includes code you have seen in previous chapters, and new code that is explained below:

» **HTML:** The HTML code for the McDuck's app is below, and includes

- Two sections: an opening and closing `<head>` tag, and an opening and closing `<body>` tag.
- Inside the `<body>` tags are `<h1>` tags to create a heading and `<div>` tags.
- Additional `<div>` tags to display messages created in the JavaScript file. The `<div>` tag is a container that can hold content of any type. The first `<div>` tag is used to display your current longitude and latitude. The second `<div>` tag can be used to display additional content to the user.
- Instructions to insert the HTML button and `onclick` attribute code, which you researched in previous chapters.

Here's the HTML code:

```

<!DOCTYPE html>
<html>
<head>
  <title>McDuck's App</title>
</head>
<body>
  <h1> McDuck's Local Offers</h1>
  <!--1. Create a HTML button that when clicked calls the JavaScript
      getLocation() function -->

  <!--Two containers, called divs, used to show messages to user -->

  <div id="geodisplay"/>
  <div id="effect"/>
</body>
</html>

```

» **CSS:** The CSS code for the McDuck's app is below, and includes:

- Selectors for the body, heading, and paragraph tags.
- Properties and values that set the text alignment, background color, font family, font color, and font size.

Once your app is functioning, style the app by adding a McDuck's color scheme and background image logo.

Here's the CSS:

```
body {  
    text-align: center;  
    background: white;  
}  
  
h1, h2, h3, p {  
    font-family: Sans-Serif;  
    color: black;  
}  
  
p {  
    font-size: 1em;  
}
```

» **JavaScript:** The JavaScript code for the McDuck's app is below. This pre-written code is a little complex, because it calculates the current location of the user using the HTML Geolocation API. In this section I review the code at a high level so you can understand how it works and where it came from.

The Geolocation API is the product of billions of dollars of research and is available to you for free. The most recent browsers support geolocation, though some older browsers do not. At a basic level, code is written to ask whether the browser supports the Geolocation API, and, if yes, to return the current location of the user. When called, the Geolocation API balances a number of data inputs to determine the user's current location. These data inputs include GPS, wireless network connection strength, cell tower and signal strength, and IP address.

With this in mind, let's look at the JavaScript code. The JavaScript code includes two functions, as follows:

- *The getLocation() function:* This function determines whether the browser supports geolocation. It does this by using an `if` statement and `navigator.geolocation`, which is recognized by the browser as part of the Geolocation API and which returns a `true` value if geolocation is supported.

Here is the getLocation() function:

```
function getLocation() {  
  if (navigator.geolocation){  
    navigator.geolocation.getCurrentPosition(showLocation);  
  }  
}
```

- *The showLocation() function:* When the browser supports geolocation, the next step is to call the showlocation function, which calculates and displays the user's location.

And here is the showLocation() function:

```
function showLocation(position){  
  // 2. Hardcode your store location on line 12 and 13, and  
  // update the comment to reflect your McDuck's restaurant  
  // address  
  // Nik's apt @ Perry & W 4th St (change to your restaurant  
  // location)  
  
  var mcducksLat=40.735383;  
  var mcducksLon=-74.002994;  
  
  // current location  
  var currentPositionLat=position.coords.latitude;  
  var currentPositionLon=position.coords.longitude;  
  
  // calculate the distance between current location and  
  // McDuck's location  
  var distance=getDistanceFromLatLonInMiles(mcducksLat,  
    mcducksLon,currentPositionLat,currentPositionLon);  
  
  // Displays the location using .innerHTML property and the lat  
  // & long coordinates for your current location  
  document.getElementById("geodisplay").innerHTML="Latitude: " +  
    currentPositionLat + "<br>Longitude: " + currentPositionLon;  
}  
  
// haversine distance formula  
The rest omitted for brevity because it's shown in a previous  
chapter
```

The showLocation() function performs the following tasks:

- Assigns the McDuck longitude and latitude to `mducksLat` and `mducksLon` (Lines 12 and 13 of the code).
- Assigns the longitude and latitude of the customer's current location to `currentpositionLat` and `currentpositionLon` (Lines 16 and 17 of the code).
- Calculates the distance in miles between those two points and assigns that distance to a variable called `distance` (Line 20 of the code). The Haversine formula calculates the distance between two points on a sphere, in this case the earth, and the code is shown online but omitted here for brevity.
- After the button is clicked, the `getElementsByID` and `.innerHTML` methods display the customer's current longitude and latitude in an HTML tag named "geodisplay" using the `id` attribute.



**REMEMBER** JavaScript functions are case-sensitive, so `getLocation()` differs from `getlocation()`. The letter L is uppercase in the first function, and lowercase in the second function. Similarly, `showLocation()` differs from `showlocation()` for the same reason.

## ***Coding steps for you to follow***

With some of the code already written, and with research in the previous chapter, follow these steps to insert the code:

1. **Insert the HTML button code below with `onclick` attribute calling the `getLocation()` function after line 8 in the HTML file.**

```
<button onclick="getLocation()">McDuck's Check-in</button>
```

After you insert this code, press the button. If your location settings are enabled and you inserted the code properly, you will see a dialog box asking for your permission to share your computer's location. As

shown in [Figure 12-2](#), look at the top of your browser window and click Allow.

**2. Update lines 12 and 13 in the JavaScript file with the latitude and longitude of the restaurant near you serving as the McDuck's store.**

After you have updated the location, make sure to change the comment in line 10 to reflect the address of your restaurant (instead of my apartment).

**3. Add an alert that displays the distance between your location and the restaurant.**

The `distance` variable stores the miles from your current location to the restaurant. Make a rough estimate — or use a map for greater precision — of your current distance from the restaurant you picked. Then using an alert, show the distance by inserting this code below in line 23.

```
alert(distance);
```

If the distance in the alert is larger or smaller than you expected, you likely entered in incorrect values for the latitude or longitude. If the distance matches your estimate, insert two slashes ("//") before the alert and comment it out.

**4. Write an if-else statement on line 26 to show an alert if you are within your threshold distance to the restaurant.**

My code, based on a half-mile threshold distance, is displayed below — yours may vary depending on your alert text and threshold distance. (See [Figure 12-3](#).)

```
if (distance < 0.5) {  
    alert("You get a free burger");  
}  
else {  
    alert("Thanks for checking in!");  
}
```



**TIP** When your app logic is working, you can change `alert("You get a free burger");` to an actual picture of a coupon or burger. To do so, replace the entire line the alert is on with the following code:

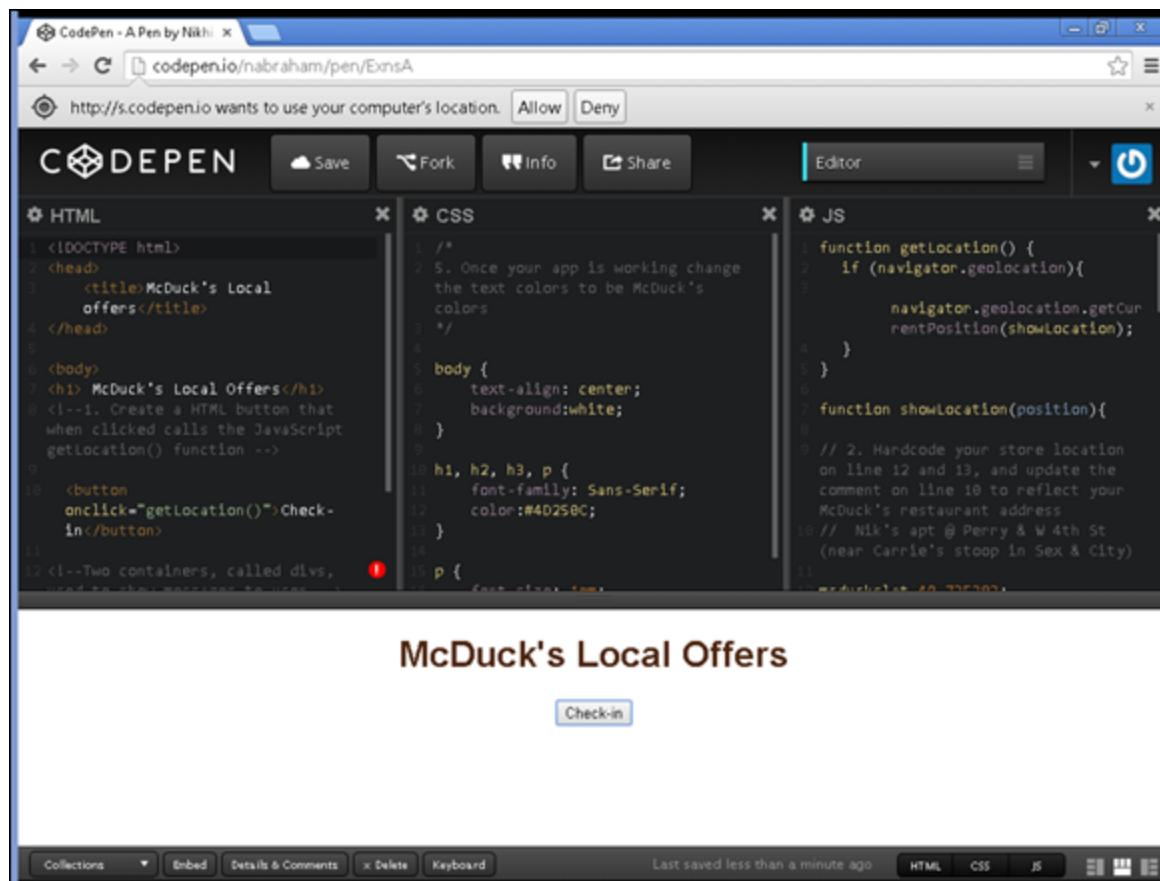
```
document.getElementById("effect").innerHTML=<img  
src='http://www.image.com/image.jpg'>;
```

Replace the URL after `src` and within the single quotes to your own image URL. Be sure to keep the double quotation marks after the first equals sign and before the semi-colon, and the single quotation marks after the second equals sign and before the right angle bracket.

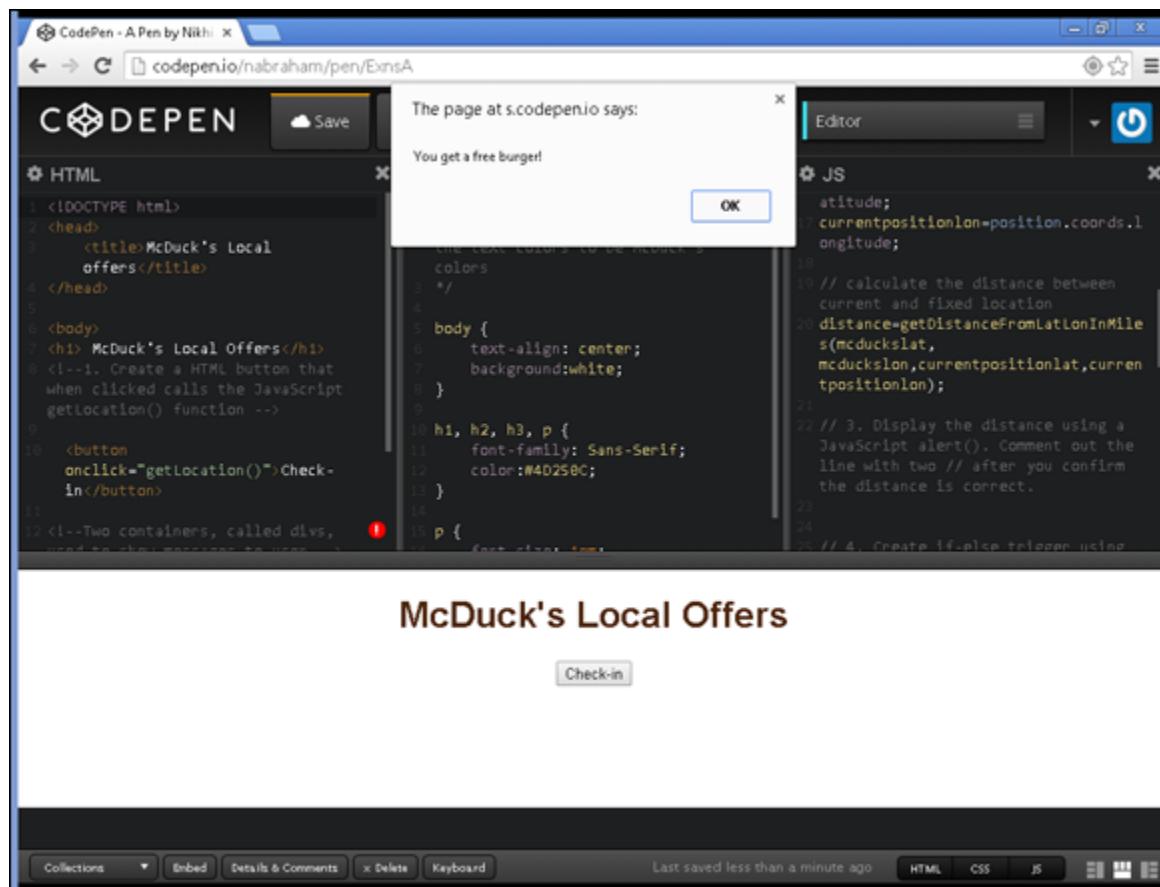
**5. (Optional) When the app is working, change the text colors and insert background images to make the app look more professional.**

Use hex-values or color names, as discussed in [Chapter 6](#), to change the text and background colors. Additionally, you can insert a background image, as you did in the Codecademy About You exercise, using the following code (see [Figure 12-4](#)):

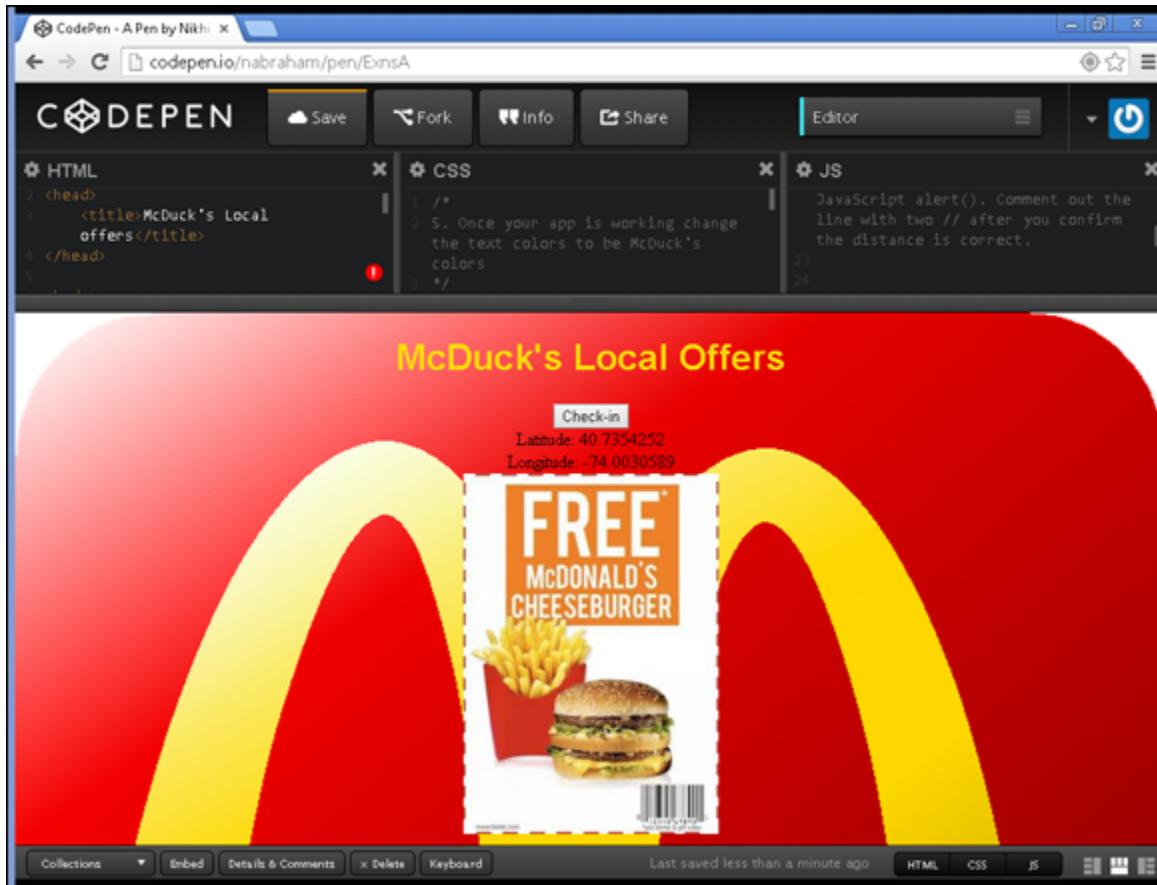
```
background-image: url("http://www.image.com/image.jpg");
```



**FIGURE 12-2:** The browser asks for your permission before sharing your location.



**FIGURE 12-3:** The McDuck's app displaying an offer to come to the store.



**FIGURE 12-4:** The completed McDuck's app with styled content displaying an image to the user.

## Debugging Your App

When coding your app, you will almost inevitably write code that does not behave as you intended. HTML and CSS are relatively forgiving, with the browser even going so far as to insert tags so the page renders properly. However, JavaScript isn't so forgiving, and the smallest error, such as a missing quotation mark, can cause the page to not render properly.

Errors in web applications can consist of syntax errors, logic errors, and display errors. Given that we worked through the logic together, the most likely culprit causing errors in your code will be syntax related. Here are some common errors to check when debugging your code:

- » **Opening and closing tags:** In HTML, every opening tag has a closing tag, and you always close the most recently opened tag first.
- » **Right and left angle brackets:** In HTML, every left angle bracket < has a right angle bracket >.
- » **Right and left curly brackets:** In CSS and JavaScript, every left curly bracket must have a right curly bracket. It can be easy to accidentally delete it or forget to include it.
- » **Indentation:** Indent your code and use plenty of tabs and returns to make your code as readable as possible. Proper indentation will make it easier for you to identify missing tags, angle brackets, and curly brackets.
- » **Misspelled statements:** Tags in any language can be misspelled, or spelled correctly but not part of the specification. For example, in HTML, `<img scr="image.jpg">` is incorrect because `scr` should really be `src` for the image to render properly. Similarly, in CSS `font-color` looks like it is spelled correctly but no such property exists. The correct property to set font color is just `color`.

Keep these errors in mind when debugging — they may not solve all your problems, but they should solve many of them. If you have tried the steps above and still cannot debug your code, tweet me at [@nikhilgabraham](https://twitter.com/nikhilgabraham) and include the `#codingFD` hashtag and your Codepen.io URL in your tweet.

## Part 4

# Developing Your Coding Skills Further

## IN THIS PART ...

Learn basic programming tasks in Ruby.

Use Ruby write a simple program to format text.

Review Python philosophy and basic commands.

Use Python write a simple program to calculate tips.

# Chapter 13

# Getting Familiar with Ruby

---

## IN THIS CHAPTER

**Understanding Ruby principles and style**

**Assigning variables and using `if` statements**

**Manipulating strings for consistency and formatting**

---

*I hope Ruby helps every programmer be productive, enjoy programming, and be happy. That is the primary purpose of Ruby language.*

— YUKIHIRO MATSUMOTO, CREATOR OF RUBY

Ruby is a server-side language created by Yukihiro “Matz” Matsumoto, a developer who was looking for an easy-to-use scripting language. Matsumoto had experience programming in other languages like Perl and Python, and, unsatisfied with both, created Ruby. When designing Ruby, Matsumoto’s explicit goal was to “make programmers happy”, and he created the language so programmers could easily learn it and use it. It worked. Today Ruby, and particularly Ruby working with a Ruby framework called Rails, is the most popular way for startups and companies to quickly create prototypes and launch websites on the Internet.

In this chapter, you learn Ruby basics, including its design philosophy; how to write Ruby code to perform basic tasks; and steps to create your first Ruby program.

## **What Does Ruby Do?**

Ruby is a general purpose programming language typically used for web development. Until now, the HTML, CSS, and JavaScript you have

learned in the previous chapters has not allowed for storing data after the user has navigated away from the page or closed the browser. Ruby makes it easy to store this data, and create, update, store, and retrieve it in a database. For example, imagine I wanted to create a social networking website like Twitter. The content I write in a tweet is stored in a central database. I can exit my browser, and turn off my computer, but if I come back to the website later my tweets are still accessible to me. Additionally, if others search for me or keywords in the tweets I have written, this same central database is queried, and any matches are displayed. Ruby developers frequently perform tasks like storing information in a database, and a Ruby framework called Rails speeds up development by including pre-built code, templates, and easy ways to perform these tasks. For these reasons, websites frequently use Ruby and Rails together.



**TIP** A website using the Rails framework is referred to as being built with Rails or “Ruby on Rails.”

Twitter’s website was one of the most trafficked websites to use Ruby on Rails, and until 2010 used Ruby code for its search and messaging products. Other websites currently using Ruby on Rails include:

- » E-commerce websites such as those on the [www.shopify.com](http://www.shopify.com) platform, including The Chivery and Black Milk Clothing.
- » Music websites such as [www.soundcloud.com](http://www.soundcloud.com).
- » Social networking sites such as [www.yammer.com](http://www.yammer.com).
- » News websites such as [www.bloomberg.com](http://www.bloomberg.com).

As shown above, Ruby and Rails can create a variety of websites. While Rails emphasizes productivity, allowing developers to quickly write code and test prototypes, some developers criticize Ruby and Rails for not being scalable, and use as evidence Twitter rewriting their code to stop using Rails for many core features. While I cannot resolve the

productivity-scalability debate for you here, I can say that Rails can adequately handle millions of visitors per month, and no matter the language used, significant work must be done to scale a website to properly handle tens or hundreds of millions of visitors a month.



**TIP** Confirm the programming language used by these or any major website with BuiltWith available at [www.builtwith.com](http://www.builtwith.com). After entering the website address in the search bar, look under the Frameworks section for Ruby on Rails.

## *Defining Ruby Structure*

Ruby has its own set of design principles that guide how the rest of the language is structured. All the languages you have learned so far have their own conventions, like the curly braces in JavaScript or opening and closing tags in HTML, and Ruby is no different with conventions of its own. The design principles in Ruby explain how Ruby tries to be different from the programming languages that came before it. With these design principles in mind you will then see what Ruby code looks like, understand Ruby's style, and learn the special keywords and syntax that allow the computer to recognize what you are trying to do. Unlike HTML and CSS, and similar to JavaScript, Ruby can be particular about syntax and misspelling a keyword or forgetting a necessary character will result in the program not running.

### *Understanding the principles of Ruby*

Ruby has a few design principles to make programming in the language less stressful and more fun for programmers of other programming languages. These design principles are:

» **Principle of conciseness:** In general, short and concise code is needed to create programs. The initial set of steps to run a program written in English is often referred to as pseudo-code. Ruby is designed so as little additional effort is needed to translate pseudo-

code into actual code. Even existing Ruby commands can be made more concise. For example, Ruby's `if` statement can be written in three lines or just one.

» **Principle of consistency:** A small set of rules governs the entire language. Sometimes this principle is referred to as the principle of least astonishment or principle of least surprise. In general, if you are familiar with another programming language, the way Ruby behaves should feel intuitive for you. For example, in JavaScript when working with string methods, you can chain them together like so:

```
"alphabet".toUpperCase().concat("Soup")
```

This JavaScript statement returns "ALPHABETSoup" by first making the string "alphabet" uppercase using the `.toUpperCase()` method, and then concatenating "soup" to "ALPHABET". Similarly, the Ruby statement below chains together methods just as you would expect, also returning "ALPHABETSoup".

```
"alphabet".upcase.concat("Soup")
```

» **Principle of flexibility:** There are multiple ways to accomplish the same thing, and even built-in commands can be changed. For example, when writing an `if-else` statement you can use the words `if` and `else`, but you can also accomplish the task with a single "?". The following code both perform the same task.

Version 1:

```
if 3>4
  puts "the condition is true"
else
  puts "the condition is false"
end
```

Version 2:

```
puts 3>4 ? "the condition is false" : "the condition is true"
```

## ***Styling and spacing***

Ruby generally uses less punctuation than other programming languages you may have previously tried. Some sample code is included below.

```
print "What's your first name?"
```

```
first_name = gets.chomp
first_name.upcase!

if first_name=="NIK"
    print "You may enter!"
else
    print "Nothing to see here."
end
```

If you ran this code it would do the following:

- » Print a line asking for your first name.
- » Take user input (`gets.chomp`) and save it to the `first_name` variable.
- » Test the user input. If it equals “NIK” then `print` “You may enter!” otherwise `print` “Nothing to see here.”

Each of these statement types is covered in more detail later in this chapter. For now, as you look at the code, notice some of its styling characteristics

- » Less punctuation: unlike JavaScript there are no curly braces, and unlike HTML there are no angle brackets.
- » Spaces, tabs, and indentation are ignored: unless within a text string whitespace characters do not matter.
- » Newlines indicate the end of statements: although you can use semicolons to put more than one statement on a line, the preferred and more common method is to put each statement on its own line.
- » Dot-notation is frequently used: the period (as in `.chomp` or `.upcase`) signals the use of a method, which is common in Ruby. A method is a set of instructions that carry out a particular task. In this code example, `.chomp` removes carriage returns from the user input, and `.upcase` transforms the user input into all upper case.
- » Exclamation points signal danger: methods applied to variables, like `first_name.upcase`, by default do not change the variable’s value and only transform a copy of the variable’s value. Exclamation

points signal a permanent change, so `first_name.upcase!` permanently changes the value of the variable `first_name`.

## ***Coding Common Ruby Tasks and Commands***

Ruby can perform many tasks from simple text manipulation to complex login and password user authentication. The following basic tasks, while explained within a Ruby context, are core programming concepts applicable to any programming language. If you have read about another programming language in this book, the following will look familiar. These tasks all take place in the Ruby shell, which looks like a command line interface. Ruby can also generate HTML to create interactive web pages, but that is slightly more complex and not covered here.

Instructions on how to do these basic tasks are below, but you can also practice these skills right away by jumping ahead to the “[Building a Simple Form-Text Formatter Using Ruby](#)” section, later in this chapter.



**TIP** Programming languages can do the same set of tasks, and understanding the set of tasks in one language makes it easier to understand the next language.

### ***Defining data types and variables***

Variables, like in algebra, are keywords used to store data values for later use. Though the data stored in a variable may change, the variable name will always be the same. Think of a variable like a gym locker — what you store in the locker changes, but the locker number always stays the same.

Variables in Ruby are named using alphanumeric characters and the underscore (`_`) character, and cannot begin with a number or capital letter. [Table 13-1](#) lists some of the data types that Ruby can store.

## TABLE 13-1 Data Stored by a Variable

<i>Data Type</i>	<i>Description</i>	<i>Example</i>
Numbers	Positive or negative numbers with or without decimals	156–101.96
Strings	Printable characters	Holly NovakSeñor
Boolean	Value can either be true or false	truefalse

To initially set or change a variable's value, write the variable name and use one equals sign, as shown in the following example:

```
myName = "Nik"  
pizzaCost = 10  
totalCost = pizzaCost * 2
```



**TIP** Unlike JavaScript, Ruby does not require you to use the `var` keyword to declare a variable, or to set its value the first time.

Variable names are case sensitive, so when referring to a variable in your program remember that `MyName` is a different variable from `myname`. In general, give your variable a name that describes the data being stored.

## ***Computing simple and advanced math***

After you create variables, you may want to do some math on the numerical values stored in those variables. Simple math like addition, subtraction, multiplication, and division is done using operators you already know. One difference is exponentiation (such as, for example, 2 to the power of 3) is done using two asterisks. Examples are shown below, and in [Table 13-2](#).

```
sum1 = 1+1  (equals 2)  
sum1 = 5-1  (equals 4)  
sum1 = 3*4  (equals 12)  
sum1 = 9/3  (equals 3)  
sum1 = 2**3 (equals 8)
```

## TABLE 13-2 Common Ruby Number Methods

Method Name	Description	Example	Result
.abs	Returns the absolute value of a number	-99.abs	99
.round(ndigits)	Rounds a number to n digits	3.1415.round(2)	3.14
.floor	Rounds down to the nearest integer	4.7.floor	4
.ceil	Rounds up to the nearest integer	7.3.ceil	8

Advanced math like absolute value, rounding to the nearest decimal, rounding up, or rounding down can be performed using number methods, which are shortcuts to make performing certain tasks easier. The general syntax is to follow the variable name or value with a period, and the name of the method as follows for values and variables:

```
value.method
variable.method
```



TECHNICAL STUFF

The values and variables that methods act upon are called objects. If you compared Ruby to the English language, think of objects like nouns and methods like verbs.

## Using strings and special characters

Along with numbers, variables in Ruby can also store strings. To assign a value to a string use single or double quotation marks.

```
firstname = "Jack"
lastname = 'Dorsey'
```

To display these variable values, you can puts or print the variable value to the screen. The difference between the two is puts adds a newline (ie., carriage return) after displaying the value, while print does not.



**WARNING** Variables can also store numbers as strings instead of numbers.

Even though the string looks like a number, Ruby will not be able to perform any operations on it. For example, Ruby cannot evaluate this code as is: `amountdue = "18" + 24`.

One issue arises with strings and variables — what if your string itself includes a single or double quote? For example, if I want to store a string with the value ‘I’m on my way home’ or “Carrie said she was leaving for “just a minute””. As is, the double or single quotes within the string would cause problems with variable assignment. The solution is to use special characters called escape sequences to indicate when you want to use characters like quotation marks, which normally signal the beginning or end of a string, or other non-printable characters like tabs. [Table 13-3](#) shows some examples of escape sequences.

### **TABLE 13-3 Common Ruby Escape Sequences**

<i>Special Character</i>	<i>Description</i>	<i>Example</i>	<i>Result</i>
<code>\' or \"</code>	Quotation marks	<code>print "You had me at \"Hello\""</code>	You had me at "Hello"
<code>\t</code>	Tab	<code>print "Item\tUnits \tPrice"</code>	Item Units Price
<code>\n</code>	Newline	<code>print "Anheuser?\nBusch?\n Bueller?\n Bueller?"</code>	Anheuser? Busch? Bueller? Bueller?



**TIP** Escape sequences are interpreted only for strings with double quotation marks. For a full list of escape sequences, see [http://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/Ruby\\_Programming/Strings](http://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/Ruby_Programming/Strings).

## Deciding with conditionals: *if, elif, else*

With data stored in a variable, one common task is to compare the variable's value to a fixed value or another variable's value, and then make a decision based on the comparison. If you previously read the JavaScript chapter, you may recall much of the same discussion, and the concept is exactly the same. The general syntax for an *if-elif-else* statement is as follows:

```
if conditional1
    statement1 to execute if conditional1 is true
elif conditional2
    statement2 to execute if conditional2 is true
else
    statement3 to run if all previous conditionals are false
end
```



**TIP** Notice there is only one 'e' in *elif* statement.

The *if* is followed by a conditional, which evaluates to true or false. If the condition is true, then the statement is executed. This is the minimum necessary syntax needed for an *if*-statement, and the *elif* and *else* are optional. If present, the *elif* tests for an additional condition when the first conditional is false. You can test for as many conditions as you like using *elif*. Specifying every condition to test for can become tedious, so it is useful to have a “catch-all.” If present, the *else* serves this function, and executes when all previous conditionals are false.



**TIP** You cannot have an *elif* or an *else* by itself, without a preceding *if* statement. You can include many *elif* statements, but one and only one *else* statement.

The conditional in an `if` statement compares values using comparison operators, and common comparison operators are described in [Table 13-4](#).

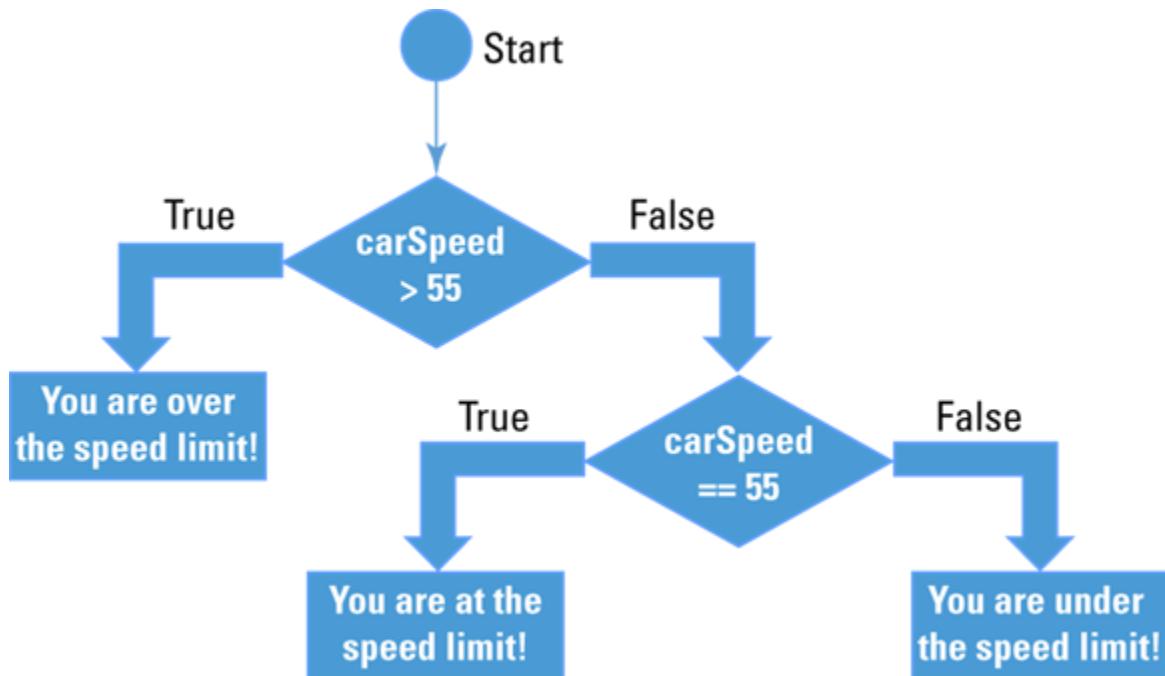
**TABLE 13-4** Common Ruby Comparison Operators

Type	Operator	Description	Example
Less than	<code>&lt;</code>	Evaluates whether one value is less than another value	<code>x &lt; 55</code>
Greater than	<code>&gt;</code>	Evaluates whether one value is greater than another value	<code>x &gt; 55</code>
Equality	<code>==</code>	Evaluates whether two values are equal	<code>x == 55</code>
Less than or equal to	<code>&lt;=</code>	Evaluates whether one value is less than or equal to another value	<code>x &lt;= 55</code>
Greater than or equal to	<code>&gt;=</code>	Evaluates whether one value is greater than or equal to another value	<code>x &gt;= 55</code>
Inequality	<code>!=</code>	Evaluates whether two values are not equal	<code>x != 55</code>

Here is an example `if` statement.

```
carSpeed=40
if carSpeed > 55
    print "You are over the speed limit!"
elsif carSpeed == 55
    print "You are at the speed limit!"
else
    print "You are under the speed limit!"
end
```

As the diagram in [Figure 13-1](#) shows, there are two conditions, each signaled by the diamond, which are evaluated in sequence. In this example, `carSpeed` is equal to 40, so the first condition (`carSpeed > 55`) is false, and then the second conditional (`carSpeed==55`) is also false. With both conditionals false, the `else` executes and prints to the screen “You are under the speed limit!”



**FIGURE 13-1:** An if-else statement with an elsif.

## *Input and output*

As you have seen in this chapter, Ruby allows you to collect input from and display output to the user. To collect user input use the `gets` method, which stores the user input as a string. In the following example, the user enters his first name which is stored in a variable called `full_name`:

```
print "What's your full name?"
full_name = gets
```



**TECHNICAL STUFF**

`gets` might sound like an odd keyword to collect user input.

Ruby is influenced by the C programming language, which also has a `gets` function to collect user input.

Imagine the user entered his name, “Satya Nadella.” As the code is currently written, if you display the value of the variable `full_name` you would see this:

```
Satya Nadella\n
```

The `\n` escape sequence appears after the name because after asking for input the user pressed the “Enter” key, which Ruby stores as `\n`. To remove the `\n` add the `chomp` method to the string, and it will remove the `\n` and `\r` escape sequences.

```
print "What's your full name?"  
full_name = gets.chomp
```

Now when you display the `full_name` variable you would only see “Satya Nadella”.

To display output to the user you can either use `print` or `puts`, short for “put string.” The difference between the two is that `puts` adds a newline after executing, while `print` does not. The following code shows the difference when `print` and `puts` is executed.

Print code:

```
print "The mission has "  
print "great tacos"
```

Result:

```
The mission has great tacos
```

Prints code:

```
puts "The mission has "  
puts "great tacos"
```

Result:

```
The mission has  
great tacos
```

## ***Shaping Your Strings***

Manipulating strings is one of the most common tasks for a programmer. Sample tasks in this category include:

- » Standardizing strings to have consistent upper- and lowercase.
- » Removing white space from user input.

- » Inserting variables values in strings displayed to the user.

Ruby shines when it comes to dealing with strings, and includes many built-in methods that make processing strings easier in Ruby than in other languages.

## ***String methods: upcase, downcase, strip***

Standardizing user input to have proper case and remove extra white space characters is often necessary to easily search the data later. For example, imagine you are designing a website for the New York Department of Motor Vehicles, and one page is for driver license application and renewals. Both the application and renewal forms ask for current address, which includes a field for two letter state abbreviation. After reviewing completed paper forms, and previous electronic data you see that drivers enter the state in several ways including “NY”, “ny”, “Ny”, “ ny “, “nY”, and other similar variants. If “NY” was the desired result you could use upcase and strip to make this input consistent.

[Table 13-5](#) further describes these string methods.

**TABLE 13-5 Select Ruby String Methods**

<b><i>Method Name</i></b>	<b><i>Description</i></b>	<b><i>Example</i></b>	<b><i>Result</i></b>
upcase	Returns all uppercase characters	"nY".upcase	"NY"
downcase	Returns all lowercase characters	"Hi".downcase	"hi"
capitalize	Capitalizes first letter, lowerscases remaining letters	"wake UP".capitalize	"Wake up"
strip	Removes leading and trailing whitespaces	" Ny ".strip	"Ny"

## ***Inserting variables in strings with #***

To insert variable values into strings shown to the user, you can use the hashtag sequence `#{...}`. The code between the open and closing curly braces is evaluated and inserted into the string. Like with escape sequences, the variable value is inserted only into strings created with double quotation marks. See the example code and result below.

Code:

```
yearofbirth = 1990
pplinroom = 20
puts "Your year of birth is #{yearofbirth}. Is this correct?"
puts 'Your year of birth is #{yearofbirth}. Is this correct?'
puts "There are #{pplinroom / 2} women in the room with the same birth year."
```

Result:

```
Your year of birth is 1990. Is this correct?
Your year of birth is #{yearofbirth}. Is this correct?
There are 10 women in the room with the same birth year.
```

The first string used double quotes and the variable was inserted into the string and displayed to the user. The second string used single quotes so the code inside the curly braces was not evaluated, the variable value was not inserted, and instead `#{yearofbirth}` was displayed. The third string shows that any code can be evaluated and inserted into the string.



**TECHNICAL STUFF** This method of inserting variable values into strings is called string interpolation.

## ***Building a Simple Form-Text Formatter Using Ruby***

Practice your Ruby online using the Codecademy website. Codecademy is a free website created in 2011 to allow anyone to learn how to code right in the browser, without installing or downloading any software. Practice all of the tags (and a few more) that you learned in this chapter by following these steps:

- 1. Open your browser, go to [www.dummies.com/go/codingfd](http://www.dummies.com/go/codingfd), and click on the link to Codecademy.**
- 2. Sign in to your Codecademy account.**

Signing up is discussed in [Chapter 3](#). Creating an account allows you to save your progress as you work, but it's optional.

3. **Navigate to and click on Introduction to Ruby to practice some basic Ruby commands.**
4. **Background information is presented in the upper left portion of the site, and instructions are presented in the lower left portion of the site.**
5. **Complete the instructions in the main coding window.**
6. **After you have finished completing the instructions, click the Save and Submit Code button.**

If you have followed the instructions correctly, a green checkmark appears, and you proceed to the next exercise. If an error exists in your code a warning appears with a suggested fix. If you run into a problem, or have a bug you cannot fix, click on the hint, use the Q&A Forums, or tweet me at @nikhilgabraham and include hashtag #codingFD.

# Chapter 14

# Wrapping Your Head around Python

---

## IN THIS CHAPTER

**Understanding Python principles and style**

**Practicing Python code like assigning variables and using if statements**

**Doing a simple Python project**

---

*I chose Python as a working title for the project, being in a slightly irreverent mood (and a big fan of Monty Python's Flying Circus).*

— GUIDO VAN ROSSUM, CREATOR OF PYTHON

Python is a server-side language created by Guido van Rossum, a developer who was bored during the winter of 1989 and looking for a project to do. At the time, Van Rossum had already helped create one language, called ABC, and the experience had given him many ideas that he thought would appeal to programmers. He executed upon these ideas when he created Python. Although ABC never achieved popularity with programmers, Python was a runaway success. Python is one of the world's most popular programming languages, used by beginners just starting out and professionals building heavy-duty applications.

In this chapter, you learn Python basics, including the design philosophy behind Python, how to write Python code to perform basic tasks, and steps to create your first Python program.

## **What Does Python Do?**

Python is a general purpose programming language typically used for web development. This may sound similar to the description used for Ruby in the previous chapter, and really both languages are more similar than they are different. Python, like Ruby, allows for storing data after the user has navigated away from the page or closed the browser, unlike HTML, CSS, and JavaScript. Using Python commands you can create, update, store, and retrieve this data in a database. For example, imagine I wanted to create a local search and ratings site like Yelp.com. The reviews users write are stored in a central database. Any review author can exit the browser, turn off the computer, and come back to the website later to find their reviews. Additionally, when others search for venues, this same central database is queried, and the same review is displayed. Storing data in a database is a common task for Python developers, and existing Python libraries include pre-built code to easily create and query databases.



**TECHNICAL STUFF** SQLite is one free lightweight database commonly used by Python programmers to store data.

Many highly trafficked websites, such as YouTube, are created using Python. Other websites currently using Python include:

- » Quora for its community question and answer site.
- » Spotify for internal data analysis.
- » Dropbox for its desktop client software.
- » Reddit for generating crowd-sourced news.
- » Industrial Light & Magic and Disney Animation for creating film special effects.

From websites to software to special effects, Python is an extremely versatile language, powerful enough to support a range of applications. In addition, to help spread Python code, Python programmers create libraries, which are stand-alone pre-written code that do certain tasks,

and make them publicly available for others to use and improve. For example, a library called Scrapy performs web scraping, while another library called SciPy performs math functions used by scientists and mathematicians. The Python community maintains thousands of libraries like these, and most are free and open-source software.



**TIP** You can generally confirm the front-end programming language used by any major website with BuiltWith available at [www.builtwith.com](http://www.builtwith.com). After entering the website address in the search bar, look under the Frameworks section for Python. Note that websites may use Python for backend services not visible to BuiltWith.

## *Defining Python Structure*

Python has its own set of design principles that guide how the rest of the language is structured. To implement these principles, every language has its own conventions, like curly braces in JavaScript or opening and closing tags in HTML. Python is no different, and we will cover both design principles and conventions so you can understand what Python code looks like, understand Python's style, and learn the special keywords and syntax that allow the computer to recognize what you are trying to do. Python, like Ruby and JavaScript, can be very particular about syntax, and misspelling a keyword or forgetting a necessary character will result in the program not running.

### *Understanding the Zen of Python*

There are nineteen design principles that describe how the Python language is organized. Some of the most important principles include

» **Readability counts:** This is possibly Python's most important design principle. Python code looks almost like English, and even enforces certain formatting, such as indenting, to make the code easier to read. Highly readable code means that six months from now when you

revisit your code to fix a bug or add a feature, you will be able to jump in without trying too hard to remember what you did. Readable code also means others can use your code or help debug your code with ease.



TECHNICAL STUFF

Reddit.com is a top-10-most-visited website in the US, and a top-50-most-visited website in the world. Its co-founder, Steve Huffman, initially coded the website in Lisp and switched to Python because Python is “extremely readable, and extremely writeable.”

- » **There should be one — and preferably *only one* — obvious way to do it:** This principle is directly opposite to Perl’s motto, “There’s more than one way to do it.” In Python, two different programmers may approach the same problem and write two different programs, but the ideal is that the code will be similar and easy to read, adopt, and understand. Although Python does allow multiple ways to do a task — as, for example, when combining two strings — if an obvious and common option exists, it should be used.
- » **If the implementation is hard to explain, it’s a bad idea:** Historically, programmers were known to write esoteric code to increase performance. However, Python was designed not to be the fastest language, and this principle reminds programmers that easy-to-understand implementations are preferable over faster but harder-to-explain ones.



**TIP** Access the full list by design principles, which is in the form of a poem, by typing `import this;` into any Python interpreter, or by visiting <https://www.python.org/dev/peps/pep-0020>. These principles, written by Tim Peters, a Python community member, were meant to describe the intentions of Python’s creator, Van

Rossum, who is also referred to as the Benevolent Dictator for Life (BDFL).

## ***Styling and spacing***

Python generally uses less punctuation than other programming languages you may have previously tried. Some sample code is included here:

```
first_name=raw_input("What's your first name?")
first_name=first_name.upper()

if first_name=="NIK":
    print "You may enter!"
else:
    print "Nothing to see here."
```



TECHNICAL STUFF

The examples in this book are written for Python 2.7. There are two popular version of Python currently in use — Python 2.7 and Python 3. Python 3 is the latest version of the language but it is not backwards-compatible, so code written using Python 2.7 syntax does not work when using a Python 3 interpreter. Initially, Python 2.7 had more external libraries and support than Python 3, but this is changing. For more about the differences between versions see <https://wiki.python.org/moin/Python2orPython3>.

If you ran this code it would do the following:

- » Print a line asking for your first name.
- » Take user input (`raw_input("What's your first name?")`) and save it to the `first_name` variable.
- » Transform any inputted text into uppercase.
- » Test the user input. If it equals “NIK,” then it will print “You may enter!” Otherwise it will print “Nothing to see here.”

Each of these statement types is covered in more detail later in this chapter. For now, as you look at the code, notice some of its styling characteristics:

- » **Less punctuation:** Unlike JavaScript, Python has no curly braces, and unlike HTML, no angle brackets.
- » **Whitespace matters:** Statements indented to the same level are grouped together. In the example above, notice how the `if` and `else` align, and the `print` statements underneath each are indented the same amount. You can decide the amount of indentation, and whether to use tabs or spaces as long as you are consistent. Generally, four spaces from the left margin is considered the style norm.



TIP

See Python style suggestions on indentation, whitespaces, and commenting by visiting <https://www.python.org/dev/peps/pep-0008>.

- » **Newlines indicate the end of statements:** Although you can use semi-colons to put more than one statement on a line, the preferred and more common method is to put each statement on its own line.
- » **Colons separate code blocks:** New Python programmers sometimes ask why using colons to indicate code blocks, like the one at the end of the `if` statement, is necessary when newlines would suffice. Early user testing with and without the colons showed that beginner programmers better understood the code with the colon.

## *Coding Common Python Tasks and Commands*

Python, as with other programming languages like Ruby, can do everything from simple text manipulation to designing complex graphics

in games. The following basic tasks are explained within a Python context, but they’re foundational in understanding any programming language. Even experienced developers learning a new language, like Apple’s recently released Swift programming language, start by learning these foundational tasks. If you have already read the chapter on Ruby, the code to perform these tasks will look similar.

Start learning some basic Python below, or practice these skills right away by jumping ahead to the “[Building a Simple Tip Calculator Using Python](#)” section, later in this chapter.



**TIP** Millions of people have learned Python before you, so it’s easy to find answers to questions that might arise while learning simply by conducting an Internet search. The odds are in your favor that someone has asked your question before.

## ***Defining data types and variables***

Variables, like the ones in algebra, are keywords used to store data values for later use. Though the data stored in a variable may change, the variable name will always be the same. Think of a variable as a gym locker — what you store in the locker changes, but the locker number always stays the same.

Variables in Python are named using alphanumeric characters and the underscore (\_) character, and they must start with a letter or an underscore. [Table 14-1](#) lists some of the data types that Python can store.

**TABLE 14-1 Data Stored by a Variable**

<b><i>Data Type</i></b>	<b><i>Description</i></b>	<b><i>Example</i></b>
Numbers	Positive or negative numbers with or without decimals	156–101.96
Strings	Printable characters	Holly NovakSeñor
Boolean	Value can either be true or false	truefalse

To initially set or change a variable's value, write the variable name, a single equals sign, and the variable value, as shown in the following example:

```
myName = "Nik"  
pizzaCost = 10  
totalCost = pizzaCost * 2
```



**TIP** Avoid starting your variable names with the number one (1), a lowercase “L” (l), or uppercase i (I). Depending on the font used these characters can all look the same, causing confusion for you or others later!

Variable names are case sensitive, so when referring to a variable in your program remember that `MyName` is a different variable from `myName`. In general, give your variable a name that describes the data being stored.

## ***Computing simple and advanced math***

After you create variables, you may want to do some math on the numerical values stored in those variables. Simple math like addition, subtraction, multiplication, and division is done using operators you already know. Exponentiation (such as, for example, 2 to the power of 3) is done differently in Python than in JavaScript, and uses two asterisks. Examples are shown here:

```
num1 = 1+1  #equals 2  
num2 = 5-1  #equals 4  
num3 = 3*4  #equals 12  
num4 = 9/3  #equals 3  
num5 = 2**3 #equals 8
```



**TIP** The `#` symbol indicates a comment in Python.



**TIP** Don't just read these commands, try them! Go to <http://repl.it/languages/Python> for a lightweight in-browser Python interpreter that you can use right in your browser without downloading or installing any software.

Advanced math like absolute value, rounding to the nearest decimal, rounding up, or rounding down can be performed using math functions. Python has some functions which are built-in pre-written code that can be referenced to make performing certain tasks easier. The general syntax to use Python math functions is to list the function name, followed by the variable name or value as an argument, as follows:

```
method(value)  
method(variable)
```

The math functions for absolute value and rounding follow the syntax above, but some math functions, like rounding up or rounding down are stored in a separate math module. To use these math functions you must:

- » Write the statement `import math` just once in your code before using the math functions in the math module.
- » Reference the math module, as follows: `math.method(value)` or `math.method(variable)`.

See these math functions with examples in [Table 14-2](#).

**TABLE 14-2** Common Python Math Functions

<b>Function Name</b>	<b>Description</b>	<b>Example</b>	<b>Result</b>
<code>abs(n)</code>	Return the absolute value of a number (n)	<code>abs(-99)</code>	99
<code>round (n, d)</code>	Round a number (n) to a number of decimal points (d)	<code>round (3.1415, 2)</code>	3.14
<code>math.floor(n)</code>	Round down to the nearest integer	<code>math.floor(4.7)</code>	4.0

Function Name	Description	Example	Result
math.ceil(n)	Round up to the nearest integer	math.ceil(7.3)	8.0



TECHNICAL STUFF

*Modules* are separate files that contain Python code, and the module must be referenced or imported before any code from the module can be used.



TIP See all the functions in the math module by visiting <https://docs.python.org/2/library/math.html>.

## Using strings and special characters

Along with numbers, variables in Python can also store strings. To assign a value to a string you can use single or double quotation marks, as follows:

```
firstname = "Travis"
lastname = 'Kalanick'
```



REMEMBER Variables can also store numbers as strings instead of numbers. However, even though the string looks like a number, Python will not be able to add, subtract, or divide strings and numbers. For example, consider `amountdue = "18" + 24` — running this code as is would result in an error. Python does multiply strings but in an interesting way — `print 'Ha' * 3` results in `'HaHaHa'`.

Including a single or double quote in your string can be problematic because the quotes inside your string will terminate the string definition prematurely. For example, if I want to store a string with the value 'I'm on my way home' Python will assume the ' after the first letter I is the

end of the variable assignment, and the remaining characters will cause an error. The solution is to use special characters called escape sequences to indicate when you want to use characters like quotation marks, which normally signal the beginning or end of a string, or other non-printable characters like tabs. [Table 14-3](#) shows some examples of escape sequences.

**TABLE 14-3 Common Python Escape Sequences**

<i>Special Character</i>	<i>Description</i>	<i>Example</i>	<i>Result</i>
\' or \"	Quotation marks	print "You had me at \"Hello\""	You had me at "Hello"
\t	Tab	print "Item\tUnits \tPrice"	Item Units Price
\n	Newline	print "Anheuser?\nBusch?\nBueller? Bueller?"	Anheuser? Busch? Bueller? Bueller?



**TIP** Escape sequences are interpreted only for strings with double quotation marks. For a full list of escape sequences see the table under Section 2.4 “Literals” at [http://docs.python.org/2/reference/lexical\\_analysis.html](http://docs.python.org/2/reference/lexical_analysis.html).

## **Deciding with conditionals: *if, elif, else***

With data stored in a variable, one common task is to compare the variable’s value to a fixed value or another variable’s value, and then make a decision based on the comparison. If you previously read the chapters on JavaScript or Ruby, the discussion and concepts here are very similar. The general syntax for an *if-elif-else* statement is as follows:

```
if conditional1:  
    statement1 to execute if conditional1 is true
```

```
elif conditional2:  
    statement2 to execute if conditional2 is true  
else:  
    statement3 to run if all previous conditional are false
```



**TIP** Notice there are no curly brackets or semi-colons, but don't forget the colons and to indent your statements!

The initial `if` statement will evaluate to true or false. When `conditional1` is true, then `statement1` is executed. This is the minimum necessary syntax needed for an `if`-statement, and the `elif` and `else` are optional. When present, the `elif` tests for an additional condition when `conditional1` is false. You can test for as many conditions as you like using `elif`. Specifying every condition to test for can become tedious, so having a “catch-all” is useful. When present, the `else` serves as the “catch-all,” and executes when all previous conditionals are false.



**TIP** You cannot have an `elif` or an `else` by itself, without a preceding `if` statement. You can include many `elif` statements, but one and only one `else` statement.

The conditional in an `if` statement compares values using comparison operators, and common comparison operators are described in [Table 14-4](#).

## **TABLE 14-4** Common Python Comparison Operators

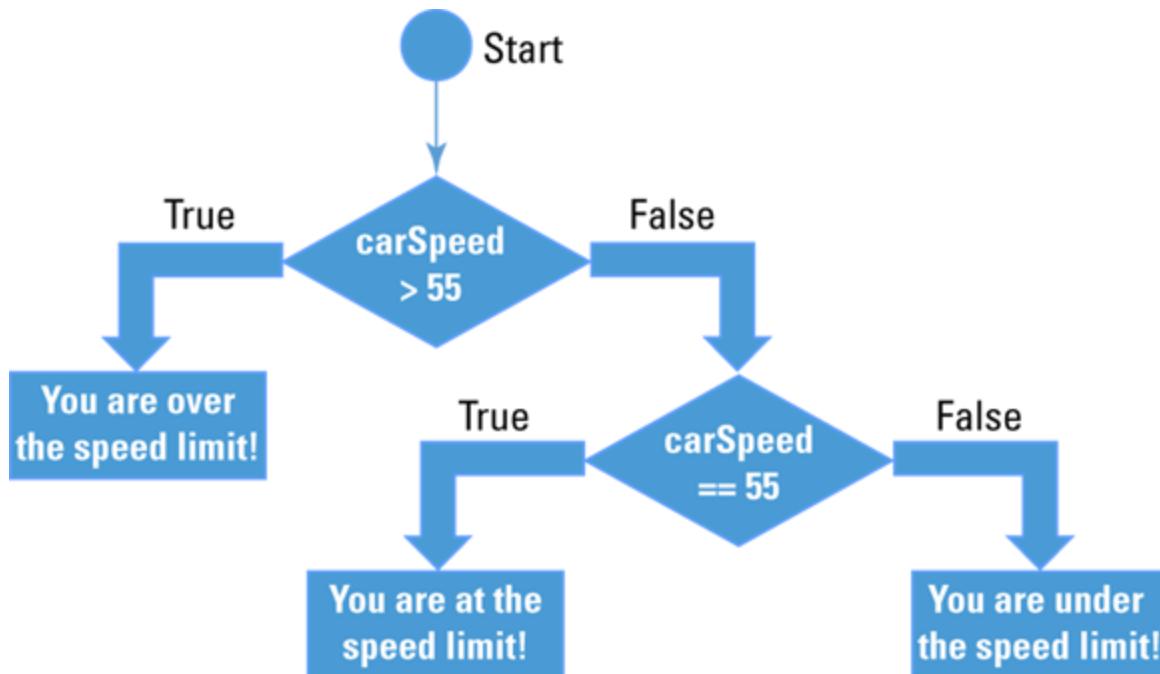
Type	Operator	Description	Example
Less than	<	Evaluates whether one value is less than another value	<code>x &lt; 55</code>
Greater than	>	Evaluates whether one value is greater than another value	<code>x &gt; 55</code>

Type	Operator	Description	Example
Equality	<code>==</code>	Evaluates whether two values are equal	<code>x == 55</code>
Less than or equal to	<code>&lt;=</code>	Evaluates whether one value is less than or equal to another value	<code>x &lt;= 55</code>
Greater than or equal to	<code>&gt;=</code>	Evaluates whether one value is greater than or equal to another value	<code>x &gt;= 55</code>
Inequality	<code>!=</code>	Evaluates whether two values are not equal	<code>x != 55</code>

Here is an example `if` statement.

```
carSpeed=55
if carSpeed > 55:
    print "You are over the speed limit!"
elif carSpeed == 55:
    print "You are at the speed limit!"
else:
    print "You are under the speed limit!"
```

As the diagram in [Figure 14-1](#) shows, there are two conditions, each signaled by the diamond, which are evaluated in sequence. In this example, `carSpeed` is equal to 55, so the first condition (`carSpeed > 55`) is false, and then the second conditional (`carSpeed==55`) is true and the statement executes printing “You are at the speed limit!” When a conditional is true, the `if` statement stops executing, and the `else` is never reached.



**FIGURE 14-1:** An if-else statement with an elif.

## ***Input and output***

Python can collect input from the user, and display output to the user. To collect user input use the `raw_input("Prompt")` method, which stores the user input as a string. In the example below, the user enters his full name which is stored in a variable called `full_name`.

```
full_name = raw_input("What's your full name?")
```

Imagine the user entered his name, “Jeff Bezos.” You can display the value of the variable using `print full_name` and you would see this:

```
Jeff Bezos
```



**TIP** Python, unlike Ruby, does not store the newline `\n` escape sequence after user input.

At this point, you may feel like printing variables and values in a Python interpreter console window is very different from dynamically creating web pages with variables created in Python. Integrating Python into a web page to respond to user requests and generate HTML pages is

typically done with a Python web framework, like Django or Flask, which have pre-written code to make the process easier. These frameworks typically require some installation and set-up work, and generally separate the data being displayed from templates used to display the page to the user.

## *Shaping Your Strings*

Whenever you collect input from users, you need to clean the input to remove errors and inconsistencies. Here are some common data cleaning tasks:

- » Standardizing strings to have consistent upper and lower case
- » Removing white space from user input
- » Inserting a variable's value in strings displayed to the user

Python includes many built-in methods that make processing strings easy.

### *Dot notation with `upper()`, `lower()`, `capitalize()`, and `strip()`*

Standardizing user input to have proper case and remove extra white space characters is often necessary to easily sort the data later. For example, imagine you are designing a website for the New York Knicks so fans can meet players after the game. The page asks for fans to enter their name, so that team security can later check fan names against this list before entry. Reviewing past fan entries you see that fans enter the same name several ways like “Mark”, “mark”, “marK”, and other similar variants that cause issues when the list is sorted alphabetically. To make the input and these names consistent you could use the string functions described in [Table 14-5](#).

**TABLE 14-5** Select Python String Functions

Function Name	Description	Example	Result
---------------	-------------	---------	--------

<b>Function Name</b>	<b>Description</b>	<b>Example</b>	<b>Result</b>
string.upper()	Returns all uppercase characters	"nY".upper()	"NY"
string.lower()	Returns all lowercase characters	"Hi".lower()	"hi"
string.capitalize()	Capitalizes first letter, lowercases remaining letters	"wake UP".capitalize()	"Wake up"
string.strip()	Removes leading and trailing whitespaces	" Ny ".strip()	"Ny"

## String formatting with %

To insert variable values into strings shown to the user, you can use the string format operator %. Inserted into the string definition, %d is used to specify integers, %s is used to specify strings, and the variables to format (mapping key) are specified in parenthesis after the string is defined. See the example code and result below:

Code:

```
yearofbirth = 1990
pplinroom = 20
name = "Mary"
print "Your year of birth is %d. Is this correct?" % (yearofbirth)
print 'Your year of birth is %d. Is this correct?' % (yearofbirth)
print "There are %d women in the room born in %d and %s is one of them." %
      (pplinroom/2, yearofbirth, name)
```

Result:

```
Your year of birth is 1990. Is this correct?
Your year of birth is 1990. Is this correct?
There are 10 women in the room born in 1990 and Mary is one of them.
```

The first string used double quotes and the variable was inserted into the string and displayed to the user. The second string behaved just like the first string, because unlike in Ruby, defining strings with single quotes does not affect the string formatting. The third string shows that code can be evaluated (pplinroom / 2) and inserted into the string.



**TECHNICAL STUFF** The `string.format()` method is another way to format strings in Python.

## ***Building a Simple Tip Calculator Using Python***

Practice your Python online using the Codecademy website.

Codecademy is a free website created in 2011 to allow anyone to learn how to code right in the browser, without installing or downloading any software. Practice all of the tags (and a few more) that you learned in this chapter by following these steps:

- 1. Open your browser, go to [www.dummies.com/go/codingfd](http://www.dummies.com/go/codingfd), and click on the link to Codecademy.**
- 2. Sign in to your Codecademy account.**  
Signing up is discussed in [Chapter 3](#). Creating an account allows you to save your progress as you work, but it's optional.
- 3. Navigate to and click on Python Syntax to practice some basic Python commands.**
- 4. Background information is presented in the upper left portion of the site, and instructions are presented in the lower left portion of the site.**
- 5. Complete the instructions in the main coding window.**
- 6. After you have finished completing the instructions, click the Save and Submit Code button.**

If you have followed the instructions correctly, a green checkmark appears and you proceed to the next exercise. If an error exists in your code a warning appears with a suggested fix. If you run into a problem, or have a bug you cannot fix, click on the hint, use the

Q&A Forum, or tweet me at @nikhilgabraham and include hashtag #codingFD.

## Part 5

# The Part of Tens

## IN THIS PART ...

Continue to learn how to code with online resources.

Stay up to date with industry news and community discussion.

Solve coding bugs with online and offline resources.

Keep in mind ten tips as you learn how to code.

## Chapter 15

# Ten Free Resources for Coding and Coders

---

The technology world is constantly evolving. New technologies are invented, developers build new products using these technologies, and new markets emerge from people using these products. In the time it took me to write these chapters and for this book to find its way into your hands, much has already changed. The following resources help you continue learning, answer questions, and stay abreast of these changes.

The resources listed below are all completely free. Many of these resources stay free by depending on community members like you to contribute, so don't be shy about participating!

## ***Learning-to-Code Websites***

Learning to code is a constant journey that never ends for even the most experienced programmers. New languages and frameworks appear every day, and the only way to stay current is to keep learning. Although you may not be an experienced developer just yet, the following resources appeal to beginners with different learning styles. You can learn general introductory computer science topics or specific web development techniques by reading text or watching video lectures, and do it at your own pace or in a scheduled class. Let's get started!

### ***Codecademy***

[www.codecademy.com](http://www.codecademy.com)

Codecademy, created for people with no previous programming experience, is the easiest way to learn how to code online. Many chapters in this book use lessons from the site. You can use the site to

- » Learn front-end languages like HTML, CSS, and JavaScript
- » Try back-end languages like Ruby, Python, and PHP
- » Build real pages from websites like AirBnb, Flipboard, and Etsy



**REMEMBER** Front-end languages address website appearance, whereas back-end languages add website logic, such as what to show users and when. See [Chapter 2](#) for more detail.

You don't need to download or install anything to start coding at Codecademy — just sign up or sign in and start learning.



**TIP** If you get stuck, check for a hint at the bottom of the instructions, or click the Q&A Forum link to ask a question or to see if someone has already posted a solution to your problem.

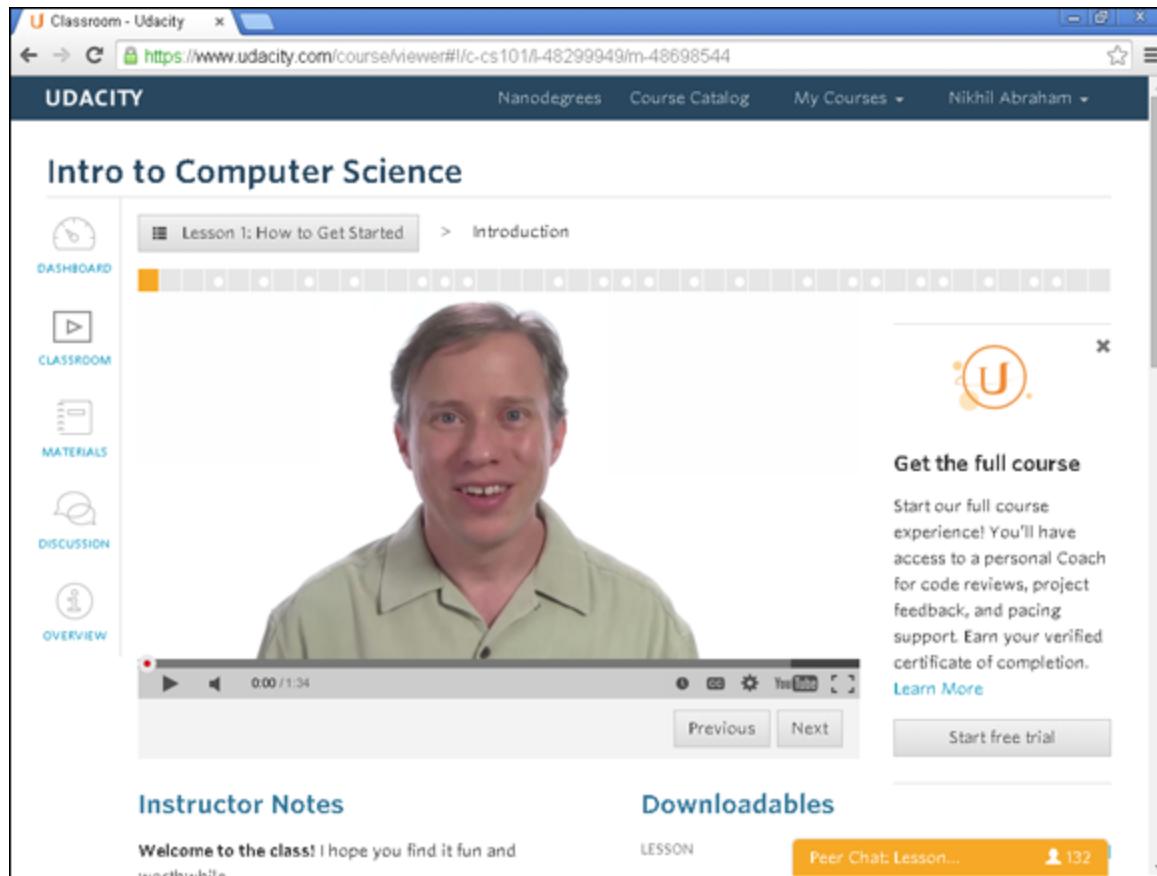
## ***Coursera and Udacity***

[www.coursera.org](http://www.coursera.org)

[www.udacity.com](http://www.udacity.com)

*MOOCs*, or *massive open online courses*, are classes or courses that are taught via the Internet to a virtually unlimited number of students. These courses encourage the use of online forums and interactivity to create a sense of community. Coursera and Udacity, two of the biggest MOOCs, have a variety of coding-related courses. Each course is taught through a series of video lectures by a university faculty member or an industry expert. (See [Figure 15-1](#).) After watching video lectures, your homework assignments and projects help reinforce what you've learned. Each site offers optional paid features, such as certificates of completion or individual support, but you don't have to pay anything to access the base material. The strength of these sites is their hundreds of hours of video dedicated to technology topics such as front-end web development,

mobile web development, data science, or general computer science theory.



**FIGURE 15-1:** Intro to Computer Science, taught by University of Virginia Professor David Evans on Udacity.



**TIP** Before you start a course at either website, make sure you can set aside time for study each week. You can expect to devote 5 to 10 hours per week for 7 to 10 weeks for any of these courses.

## ***Hackdesign.org***

[www.hackdesign.org](http://www.hackdesign.org)

The other half of coding is designing. Good visual design is often the difference between having hundreds of people use and share your website and having millions of people do so. Hack Design has 50 design

lessons created by top designers from around the world, including designers from Facebook, Dropbox, and Google. Each lesson is emailed to you weekly, and includes articles to read, and design tasks to complete based on what you have just learned. Topics covered include typography, product design, user interactions, and rapid prototyping tools.



**TIP** Many of the expert designers have public portfolio websites at which you can see past designs and projects. In addition, many post their creative work on Dribbble, available at [www.dribbble.com](http://www.dribbble.com) (note the three b's in the URL).

## **Code.org**

[www.code.org](http://www.code.org)

In December 2013, Code.org made history when over 15 million U.S. school students participated in a learn-to-code event called Hour of Code. Throughout 2014, an additional 25 million students would practice their programming skills for one hour. Code.org hosts its own content for students from kindergarten to eighth grade. It also provides links to other learn-to-code resources, which are targeted for a range of ages, and topics include

- » Tutorials that teach HTML, JavaScript, Python, and other languages
- » Visual programming tools that help elementary and middle school students drag-and-drop their way to learning how to code
- » Instructions to make your own Angry Birds, Flappy Bird, and Lost in Space apps



**TIP** Code.org also has offline learn-to-code materials, so you can keep learning even if you don't have reliable access to an Internet connection.

# *Coding-Reference Websites*

As you learn to code, either by reading this book or from some of the websites discussed previously, you will get stuck. Your code just won't behave as you intended. This happens to every programmer — it's an inevitable part of the process of turning human logic and fuzzy thoughts into rigid code a computer can understand. The important thing is to have a plan, and to have some resources to help debug your code and solve your problem. The following resources include reference texts, which help you check your coding syntax, and community user groups, which help you check your program logic.

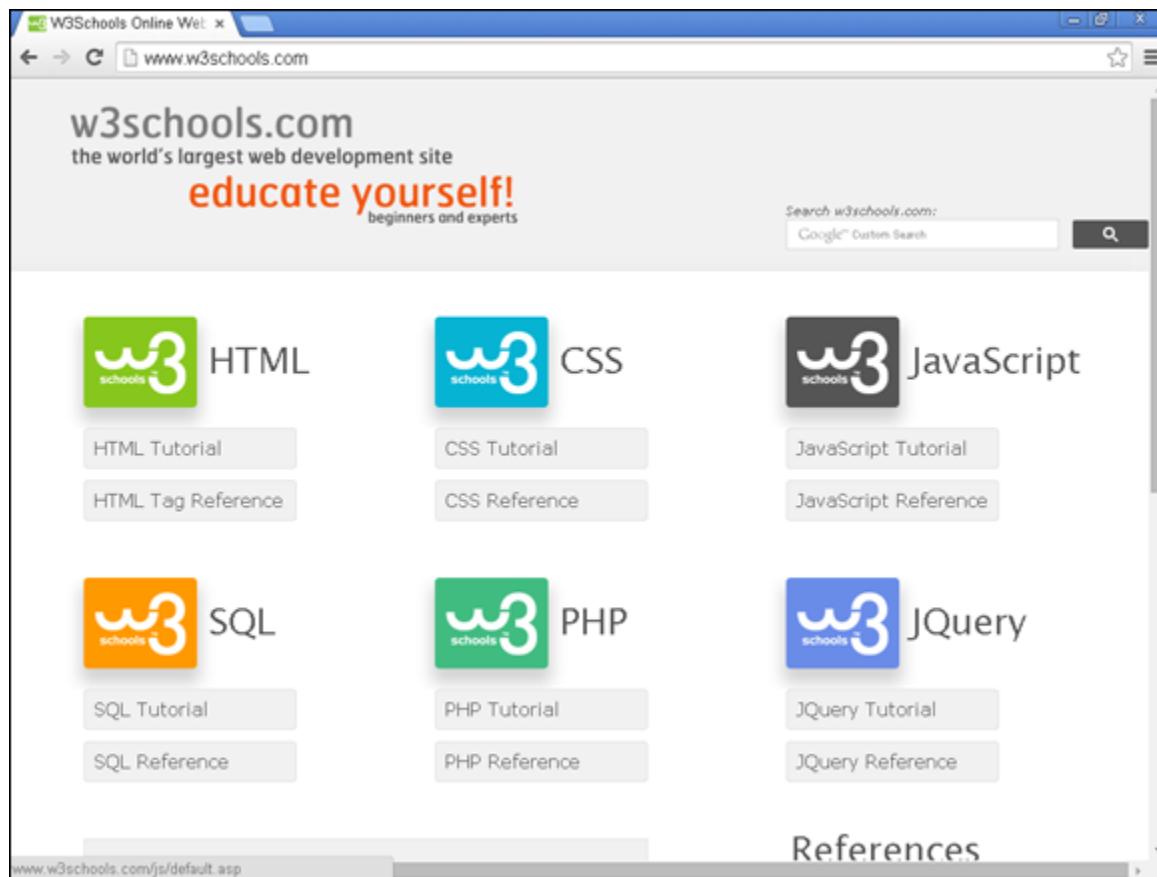
## **W3Schools**

[www.w3schools.com](http://www.w3schools.com)

W3Schools is one of the best resources for beginners who are just starting to learn. The website includes reference material and basic tutorials for HTML, CSS, JavaScript, PHP, and other programming languages, libraries, and standards. (See [Figure 15-2](#).) In addition, the reference pages include many coding examples, which you can view and modify in your browser, along with a list of attributes or properties that can be used. If you know you can insert an image using HTML, change the text color using CSS, or show an alert to the user using JavaScript, but you cannot remember the exact syntax to do so, try starting with W3Schools.



Although it's a great resource, W3Schools has no affiliation with or endorsement from the W3C, which is the governing body that creates the standards browsers follow when rendering HTML, CSS, and other languages and formats.



**FIGURE 15-2** HTML, CSS, and JavaScript tutorials and reference pages on W3Schools.

## ***Mozilla Developer Network***

<http://developer.mozilla.org>

Mozilla Developer Network (MDN) is a wiki-style reference and tutorial website that covers HTML, CSS, JavaScript, and various APIs. The website is maintained by the developer community, so anyone can contribute — even you! Although not as beginner-friendly as W3Schools, MDN is one of the most complete and accurate sources of documentation for web languages. Developers frequently use MDN to reference syntax, and also to see desktop and mobile browser compatibility for specific tags and commands. You can also check out tutorials on MDN hosted by the Mozilla Foundation, a non-profit organization that helps support and maintain the Firefox browser.

## ***Stack Overflow***

[www.stackoverflow.com](http://www.stackoverflow.com)

Stack Overflow is relatively young, founded in 2008, but has quickly become the best place for developers to ask and answer questions about coding. Anyone can ask a question, individual programmers provide answers, and the website community votes up or down the answers to show agreement or disagreement. The site includes topics that cover all major web programming languages, and the most popular topics include JavaScript, Ruby, and Python.



**TIP** Before asking a question, search the website and see if an answer to your question has already been posted. One of the website rules of etiquette is showing you have done some research before posting a question.

## ***Tech News and Community Websites***

There are people coding all over the world, and someone in Shanghai can make an app you use every day just as easily as someone in San Francisco. A number of resources are available for developers to better understand what others are working on, both at big companies and at startups. In addition to what people are working on right now, if you have a website you want to build, it can be helpful to see what has been built in the past, so you can identify areas for improvement.

Beyond being informative, these resources offer communities of people with goals similar to yours. These communities are among the most valuable resources available to you. Whether you are learning to code or an expert developer soliciting feedback on a website, working with others is better than working alone.

The following resources help you stay informed on what is happening in the tech community, and interact with other people interested in tech in your city.

### ***TechCrunch***

[www.techcrunch.com](http://www.techcrunch.com)

TechCrunch is a popular blog that covers technology startups and major technology companies. In 2006, the website cemented its reputation when it broke the story of Google acquiring YouTube for \$1.6 billion. Along with its online reporting, TechCrunch has conferences throughout the year, such as Disrupt, which hosts conversations with industry veterans and highlights new tech startups.

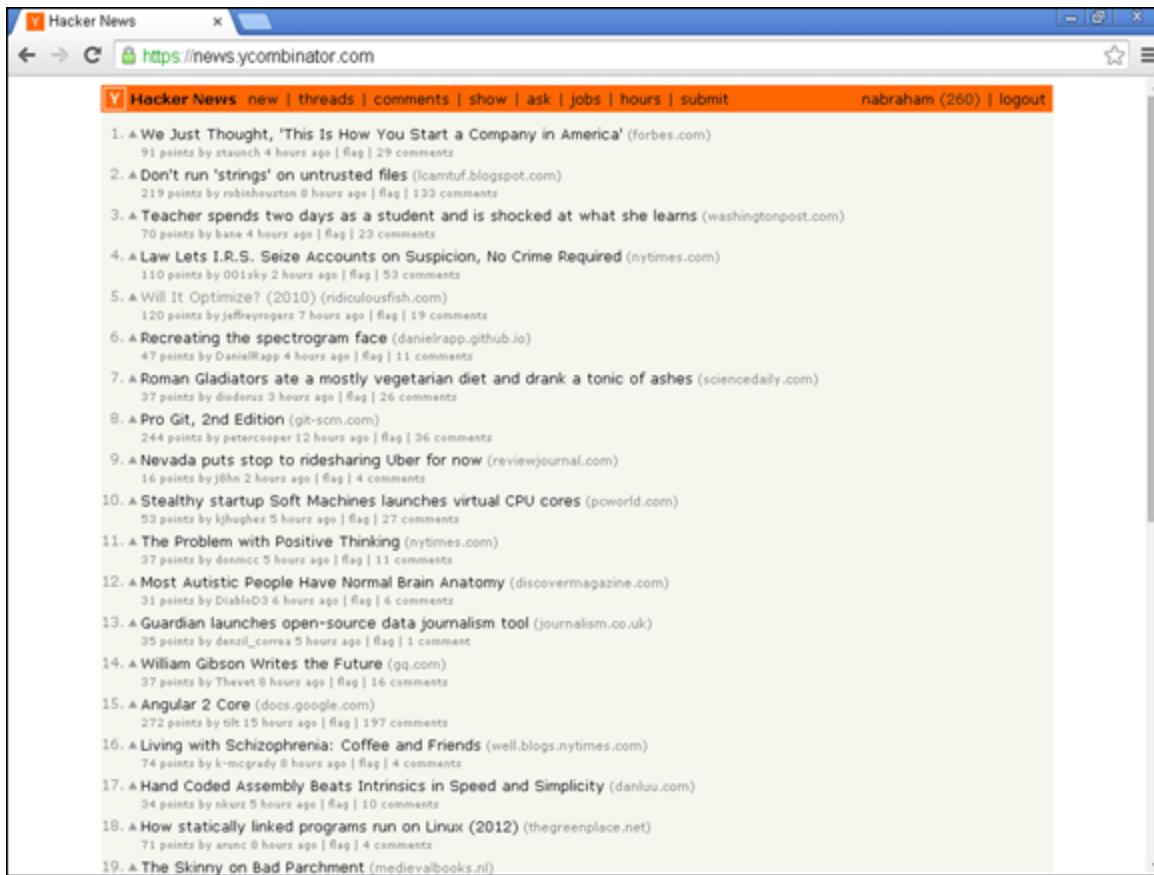


**TIP** TechCrunch also operates CrunchBase ([www.crunchbase.com](http://www.crunchbase.com)), a crowdsourced database of 650,000 people and companies. Crunchbase is one of the most accurate and complete sources of information on startups, past and present, and their founders.

## ***Hacker News***

<http://news.ycombinator.com>

HackerNews (HN) is a discussion website hosted by YCombinator, a startup incubator in California. The website homepage is a collection of hyperlinks, often to startup websites and news articles, that individual users have submitted. (See [Figure 15-3](#).) After a submission is made, the entire community can upvote the submission, and the top-ranked submissions are listed first on the homepage. Also, the community can comment on individual submissions, and each comment can also be upvoted, with the top-ranked comment appearing first on each submission page. In this way, the community curates the best news, which appears on the front page, and the best comments, which appear on each submission page. The community is made up of hundreds of thousands of users, including AirBnB co-founder Brian Chesky, Dropbox co-founder Drew Houston, Netscape co-founder and now venture capitalist Marc Andreessen, and venture capitalist Fred Wilson.



The screenshot shows the Hacker News homepage with a list of 19 news items. Each item includes a title, a brief description, the number of points, the user who submitted it, the time ago, and links for flagging or commenting. The titles cover various topics such as company start-ups, technology, science, and culture.

Rank	Title	Description	Points	User	Time Ago	Actions
1.	We Just Thought, 'This Is How You Start a Company in America'	(forbes.com)	91	staunch	4 hours ago	[flag] [29 comments]
2.	Don't run 'strings' on untrusted files	(camtuf.blogspot.com)	219	robinhouston	8 hours ago	[flag] [133 comments]
3.	Teacher spends two days as a student and is shocked at what she learns	(washingtonpost.com)	70	bane	4 hours ago	[flag] [23 comments]
4.	Law Lets I.R.S. Seize Accounts on Suspicion, No Crime Required	(nytimes.com)	110	001sky	2 hours ago	[flag] [53 comments]
5.	Will It Optimize? (2010)	(ridiculousfish.com)	120	JeffreyRogers	7 hours ago	[flag] [19 comments]
6.	Recreating the spectrogram face	(danielrapp.github.io)	47	DanielRapp	4 hours ago	[flag] [11 comments]
7.	Roman Gladiators ate a mostly vegetarian diet and drank a tonic of ashes	(sciencedaily.com)	37	diodorus	3 hours ago	[flag] [26 comments]
8.	Pro Git, 2nd Edition	(git-scm.com)	244	petercooper	12 hours ago	[flag] [36 comments]
9.	Nevada puts stop to ride-sharing Uber for now	(reviewjournal.com)	16	j0hn	2 hours ago	[flag] [4 comments]
10.	Stealthy startup Soft Machines launches virtual CPU cores	(pcworld.com)	53	kgphqhs	5 hours ago	[flag] [27 comments]
11.	The Problem with Positive Thinking	(nytimes.com)	37	donmcc	5 hours ago	[flag] [11 comments]
12.	Most Autistic People Have Normal Brain Anatomy	(discovermagazine.com)	31	Diablo3	6 hours ago	[flag] [6 comments]
13.	Guardian launches open-source data journalism tool	(journalsection.co.uk)	35	denizlcorrea	5 hours ago	[flag] [1 comment]
14.	William Gibson Writes the Future	(qq.com)	37	Thetevet	8 hours ago	[flag] [16 comments]
15.	Angular 2 Core	(docs.google.com)	272	tilt	15 hours ago	[flag] [197 comments]
16.	Living with Schizophrenia: Coffee and Friends	(well.blogs.nytimes.com)	74	k-mcgrady	8 hours ago	[flag] [4 comments]
17.	Hand Coded Assembly Beats Intrinsics in Speed and Simplicity	(danluu.com)	34	nkuzs	5 hours ago	[flag] [10 comments]
18.	How statically linked programs run on Linux (2012)	(thegreenplace.net)	71	arunc	8 hours ago	[flag] [4 comments]
19.	The Skinny on Bad Parchment	(medievalbooks.nl)	1			

**FIGURE 15-3:** The community-curated news and discussions at HackerNews homepage.



**TIP** Submission titles that begin with “Show HN” are a request to the community to comment on a startup website that has just launched. Submission titles that begin with “Ask HN” are a request to the community to answer or comment on a question.

## Meetup

[www.meetup.com](http://www.meetup.com)

Meetup is a website that organizes face-to-face local meetings based on interests or activities. Meetup organizers, who are volunteer community members, host meetings by posting information on the website. Then, community members search, join, and RSVP for meetings through the website.

To use the website, go to [www.meetup.com](http://www.meetup.com) and then follow these steps:

- 1. Enter your city and how far you are willing to travel.**
- 2. In the search field, enter *coding* or *web development*. If you have a specific language you want to learn, like Ruby or JavaScript, enter the language name.**
- 3. Review the Meetup groups, and look for ones with a good number of members. You can join a group and receive notifications of future events, or RSVP for a specific upcoming event. Some events may have a fee to cover expenses.**

Although you can learn alone, finding other people learning to code is a great way to stay motivated and keep up your momentum. The people you meet may be learning to code for the same reasons you are, such as to build a website, improve skills for an existing job, or find a new tech-related job.

## Chapter 16

# Ten Tips for Novice Coders

---

Learning to code is more popular today than ever before. It seems like everyone has a website or an app idea, and as soon as your friends, family, or coworkers discover your new coding abilities, many will ask for advice and help. No matter whether you’re dabbling at it after work, or attending an intensive ten-week coding boot camp, learning to code can be a challenging journey. It can pay to pick up a few pointers from some of the people who crossed the finish line ahead of you. Keep the following tips in mind, especially when starting your coding journey.

### *Pick a Language, Any Language*

As a novice coder, you may not be sure where to start. Should you learn C++, Python, Java, Ruby, PHP, JavaScript all at the same time, sequentially, or just pick a few? If you have never programmed before, I recommend learning a language used to create web pages, because with these languages it’s easy to get started and publish work for others to see. Within this set of languages, I recommend starting with HTML and CSS. Both are markup languages, which are the easiest to learn, and let you put content on a web page with HTML, and style that content with CSS. After you understand some of the basics of presenting content, you can then learn a programming language to manipulate that content. Keep in mind that you don’t need to learn every programming language — JavaScript, which adds interactivity to the web page, is a common starting point for beginners, along with either Ruby or Python, which adds more advanced features like user accounts and logins.

Learning to code is similar to learning to drive a car. When you first learned to drive, you probably didn’t worry too much about the type of car you were driving. After passing the driving test, you could operate just about any car, even one you hadn’t driven before, because you knew to look for the ignition, accelerator, and brake. Learning a programming

language works the same way: After you learn one language, you know what to look for, and learning and using another language becomes easier. In other words, just start somewhere!

## ***Define a Goal***

When you start learning to code, picking a goal can help you stay motivated. You can pick any goal you like, but make sure it's something you would be really excited to accomplish. Good goals for beginners include

- » Creating a small website — consisting of one to four different pages — for yourself, a business, or a group.
- » Building your coding vocabulary so you can understand what developers or designers say in meetings at work.
- » Creating a prototype, or a basic version, of a website or app idea — for example, an app that tells you when the next bus is arriving to your current location.

At first, practice doing very small coding tasks — the equivalent of chopping vegetables in culinary school. These tasks, such as bolding a headline, may leave you feeling disconnected from your ultimate goal. But as you keep learning, you will start to piece together individual coding skills and see a path to accomplish your goal.



**TIP** Pick a simple goal at first to build your confidence and technical skills. As you gain confidence, you can build more professional-looking websites and apps.

## ***Break Down Your Goal into Bite-Sized Steps***

After defining a goal, break it down into small steps. This helps you

- » See all the steps needed to complete the goal
- » Research how to do each specific step
- » Ask others for help easily when you're stuck on a step

For example, if you want to build an app that tells you when you can expect the next bus to arrive closest to your current location, you can list the steps as follows:

1. Find your current location.
2. Find the bus station closest to your current location.
3. Identify the specific bus that travels to the closest bus station.
4. Determine the location of that bus traveling to the bus station.
5. Calculate the distance from the bus's current location to the bus station.
6. Assuming an average speed for the bus, convert the distance into time using the equation  $\text{distance} = \text{speed} \times \text{time}$ .
7. Display the time to the user.

This level of detail is specific enough to start researching individual steps, such as how to find your current location using code, and it gives you a complete list of steps from start to finish for the intended goal.



**TIP** At first, the steps you create may be broad or incomplete, but with time you will improve your ability to detail these steps, which are sometimes called *specifications*.

## ***Distinguish Cupcake from Frosting***

Whether you're at home creating your first app, or at work on a team building a website, your projects will tend to include too many features to build by a specific deadline. This leads inevitably to one of three results: The project launches on time but is buggy; the project launches late; or your team works overtime to launch the project on time. The only other choices for a project behind schedule are to extend the deadline, which usually does not happen, or to add additional programmers, which usually is not helpful because of the time needed to get the new programmers up-to-speed.

A better strategy is to decide upfront which features are the cupcake — that is, which are essential — and which are the unessential frosting, the ones that are nice to have but optional. This shows you where your priorities are. If your project is running over on time or budget, you can build the optional features later or not at all.

When building your own apps make sure you distinguish the essential from the optional features before you actually start coding. In the bus app example above, determining my current location could be optional. Instead, I could select one specific bus stop, and first complete steps 3 through 7. Then, if time allows, I can make the app more flexible by finding my current location, and then finding the closest bus stop.



**TIP** The phrase *minimum viable product* is used by developers to refer to the set of features essential to the proper functioning of the product.

## ***Google Is a Developer's Best Friend***

Developers constantly use the Google search engine to research either general questions on how to code a feature, or specific questions on syntax for a command or tag. For example, imagine that a few months from now, after reading this book, you need to add an image to a website. You remember that HTML has a tag to insert images on a

website, but you don't recall the exact syntax. To quickly and efficiently find the answer, you could follow these steps:

1. **Go to [www.google.com](http://www.google.com).**
2. **Search for HTML image syntax.**

The programming language, the intended command, and the word *syntax* should be sufficient to find a good set of resources.

3. **For syntax questions in HTML and CSS, you will likely see these domains names in the top 10 search results, and you should read their content as a next step:**

- [w3schools.com](http://w3schools.com) is one of the best resources for beginners to find basic information.
- [developer.mozilla.org](http://developer.mozilla.org) is a crowdsourced documentation and tutorial site. Its documentation is very accurate, although some content is not beginner-friendly.
- [stackexchange.com](http://stackexchange.com) and [stackoverflow.com](http://stackoverflow.com) are crowdsourced discussion sites where developers can ask and answer questions.
- [w3.org](http://w3.org) is the governing body that creates HTML and CSS standards. Its documentation is the most accurate, but it's dry and not beginner-friendly.

You can use this same process to research questions in other coding languages, or to find code examples from other developers who are building features similar to yours.

## **Zap Those Bugs**

While you're doing all this coding you will inevitably create errors, commonly referred to as *bugs*. There are three types of errors:

- » **Syntax errors** occur when you write invalid code the computer doesn't understand. For example, in CSS, you'd write `color: blue;`

to change the color of an element. If you wrote `font-color: blue;` instead, you'd generate a syntax error because `font-color` is an invalid property.

- » **Semantic errors** occur when you write valid code that has an unintended effect. For example, trying to divide a number by zero is a semantic error in JavaScript.
- » **Logic or design errors** occur when you write valid code that has the intended effect, but the code produces the wrong result. For example, in JavaScript, converting miles to feet using `var miles = 4000 * feet` is a logic error. Although the code is written correctly and does what the programmer wants it to do, it still produces the wrong answer — there are actually 5,280 feet in a mile, not 4,000.

Your browser will do its best to display your HTML or CSS code as you intended, even in the presence of syntax errors. However, with other programming languages, such as JavaScript, code with syntax errors won't run at all. The best way to find and eliminate bugs is to first check your code syntax, and then the logic. Review your code line by line, and if you still cannot find the error, ask another person to take a look at your code, or post it on an online community forum like [stack overflow .com](http://stackoverflow.com).



**TIP** Developers use specialized tools in the browser to diagnose and debug errors. You can learn more about these developer tools in the Chrome browser by going to [www.codeschool.com/courses/discover-devtools](http://www.codeschool.com/courses/discover-devtools).

## ***Just Ship It***

Reid Hoffman, the founder of LinkedIn, famously said, “If you are not embarrassed by the first version of your product, you’ve launched too late.” When you start coding, you will likely be reluctant to show others your creations, whether it’s your first basic website or something more

complex. Hoffman was commenting on this desire to keep trying to perfect what you have built, and says instead to release (or “ship”) your code to public view even if you feel embarrassed. Regardless of the size of your website or app, it is better to receive feedback early and learn from your mistakes, then to continue heading in the wrong direction.

Also, remember that the highly trafficked, highly polished websites you use today started initially from humble beginning and very simple prototypes. Google’s first homepage, for example, had only a fraction of the functionality or style of its homepage today. (See [Figure 16-1](#).)



[FIGURE 16-1:](#) Google’s original homepage in 1998.

## Collect Feedback

After you finish coding the first version of your website or app, collect feedback on your code and on the final product. Even if everything is working and your website looks great, that doesn’t mean your code was written correctly or that your site does everything it could. For example, YouTube initially started as a video-dating site, but changed to a general video-sharing website based on user feedback.

The best way to obtain this information is to collect quantitative and qualitative data on your code and the product. Measuring the places where visitors click and how long they stay on each web page gives you quantitative information, which helps you diagnose and improve low-performing pages. You can collect qualitative information by surveying users, either by emailing them survey questions or by watching people in-person use your website and then asking questions. Often this data will surprise you — users may find confusing the features you thought were obvious and easily understood, and vice-versa. Similarly, if possible, have someone examine your code, in a process called a *code review*, to ensure that you didn't overlook any major problems.

## ***Iterate on Your Code***

After you've collected feedback, the next step is to “iterate” on that feedback: Keep coding until the major issues in your feedback have been addressed, and until you have improved both the code and the product. Keep in mind that it's usually best to confirm the usefulness of your product first, before spending time improving the code.

This process — building a product with a minimum set of essential features, collecting feedback on the product, and then iterating on that feedback — is sometimes referred to as the *Lean Startup methodology*. In the past, manufacturing processes, once set, were extremely difficult to change, but these days, changing software is as simple as modifying a few lines of code. This contrasts with the way products used to be coded, which involved longer development cycles and less upfront feedback.



**TIP** Just like with document drafts, save the old versions of your code in case you realize an older version was better, or in the event you find bugs in the current version of your code and you have to use an older version of the code to debug it.

# *Share Your Success and Failure*

While coding you may have come across documentation on a website you found confusing or just plain wrong. Maybe you found a great resource or a tool that worked especially well for a product you were building. Or perhaps the opposite happened — no one used the features you built with code, and you had to give up the project.

In all these situations, the best thing you can do for yourself and the larger community is to blog about your successes and failures. Blogging benefits you because it shows others the issues you're thinking about and trying to solve. Similarly, blogging benefits others who will use Google to search for and read about your experiences, just as you used Google to search for ideas and solve problems. Many non-technical entrepreneurs, such as Dennis Crowley of Foursquare and Kevin Systrom of Instagram, taught themselves enough coding to build small working prototypes, built successful products, and then shared that journey with others.



**TIP** You can blog for free and share your experiences using blogging sites like Wordpress ([www.wordpress.com](http://www.wordpress.com)), Blogger ([www.blogger.com](http://www.blogger.com)), or Tumblr ([www.tumblr.com](http://www.tumblr.com)).

## ***About the Author***

**Nikhil Abraham** has worked at Codecademy.com for the last two years. At Codecademy, he helps technology, finance, media, and advertising companies teach their employees how to code. With his help, thousands of marketing, sales, and recruiting professionals have written their first lines of code and built functional applications. In addition to teaching, he manages partnerships and business development for Codecademy, and has helped bring coding to schools in the United States, Brazil, Argentina, France, and the United Kingdom.

Prior to Codecademy, Nikhil worked in a variety of fields, including management consulting, investment banking, and law, and founded a Y-Combinator-backed technology education startup. He received a JD and MBA from the University of Chicago, and a BA in quantitative economics from Tufts University.

Nikhil lives in Manhattan, New York.

# *Dedication*

This book is dedicated to Molly Grovak.

# **Author's Acknowledgments**

This book was possible with help from a number of people.

Thanks to all the people at Wiley, including Steven Hayes, for keeping an open mind to as many ideas as can fit in one phone call, and Christopher Morris for edits and helpful advice. Also, thank you to all the technical editorial, layout, and graphics folks for turning text of variable quality into text of outstanding quality.

Thanks to those of you who helped shape the content in this book and online. For everyone at Codecademy, including Zach and Ryan, thank you for the feedback on the chapters and for answering my questions. Thanks to Douglas Rushkoff, for starting a national conversation on whether we as a society should program or be programmed, and for bringing this message to schools, universities, and non-profits. Thanks to Susan Kish, for being the only executive I can find who has spoken publicly about her journey learning how to code (check out her TED Talk!), and for seeing the future of coding in corporations. Thanks to Alia Shafir and Joshua Slusarz for all the coding sessions you helped organize, leaders you wrangled, rooms you reserved, and laptops you rebooted. Thanks to Melissa Frescholtz and her leadership team for supporting a culture of code, and bringing code education even to places where it's used every day. Thanks to alumni at Cornell University, Northwestern University, University of Virginia, and Yale University for testing early versions of content, and helping make it better. Thanks to the people at Donorschoose.org, including Charles Best and Ali Austerlitz, and at Google.org for shining a bright light on coding for women and girls. Thanks to Code.org for making coding accessible and cool for tens of millions of kids in the United States and abroad.

Finally, thanks to Molly, who ordered more take-out, brewed more tea, and cleaned the apartment more times than I can count.

## **Publisher's Acknowledgments**

**Executive Editor:** Steve Hayes

**Senior Project Editor:** Christopher Morris

**Copy Editor:** Christopher Morris

**Technical Editor:** Travis Faas

**Editorial Assistant:** Claire Johnson

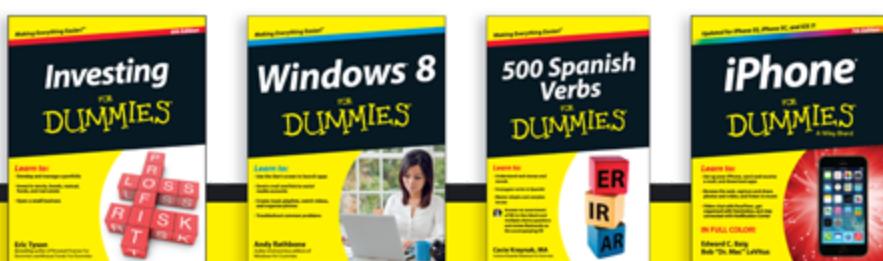
**Sr. Editorial Assistant:** Cherie Case

**Production Editor:** Melissa Cossell

**Cover Image:** ©iinspiration/Shutterstock

<b>Apple &amp; Mac</b>	Personal Finance For Dummies, 7th Edition 978-1-118-11785-9	Mediterranean Diet For Dummies 978-1-118-71525-3	Diabetes For Dummies, 4th Edition 978-1-118-29447-5
iPad For Dummies, 6th Edition 978-1-118-72306-7	QuickBooks 2014 For Dummies 978-1-118-72005-9	Nutrition For Dummies, 5th Edition 978-0-470-93231-5	Living Paleo For Dummies 978-1-118-29405-5
iPhone For Dummies, 7th Edition 978-1-118-69083-3	Small Business Marketing Kit For Dummies, 3rd Edition 978-1-118-31183-7		
Macs All-in-One For Dummies, 4th Edition 978-1-118-82210-4			
OS X Mavericks For Dummies 978-1-118-69188-5	<b>Careers</b>		
	Job Interviews For Dummies, 4th Edition 978-1-118-11290-8	Job Searching with Social Media For Dummies, 2nd Edition 978-1-118-67856-5	Photoshop Elements 12 For Dummies 978-1-118-72714-0
<b>Blogging &amp; Social Media</b>		Personal Branding For Dummies 978-1-118-11792-7	Herb Gardening For Dummies, 2nd Edition 978-0-470-61778-6
Facebook For Dummies, 5th Edition 978-1-118-63312-0		Resumes For Dummies, 6th Edition 978-0-470-87361-8	Gardening with Free-Range Chickens For Dummies 978-1-118-54754-0
Social Media Engagement For Dummies 978-1-118-53019-1		Starting an Etsy Business For Dummies, 2nd Edition 978-1-118-59024-9	<b>Health</b>
WordPress For Dummies, 6th Edition 978-1-118-79161-5		Belly Fat Diet For Dummies 978-1-118-34585-6	Boosting Your Immunity For Dummies 978-1-118-40200-9
<b>Business</b>			
Stock Investing For Dummies, 4th Edition 978-1-118-37678-2			German Essentials For Dummies 978-1-118-18422-6
Investing For Dummies, 6th Edition 978-0-470-90545-6	<b>Diet &amp; Nutrition</b>		Italian For Dummies, 2nd Edition 978-1-118-00465-4
	Belly Fat Diet For Dummies 978-1-118-34585-6		

 Available in print and e-book formats.



Available wherever books are sold. For more information or to order direct visit [www.dummies.com](http://www.dummies.com)

**Math & Science**

Algebra I For Dummies,  
2nd Edition  
978-0-470-55964-2

Anatomy and Physiology  
For Dummies, 2nd Edition  
978-0-470-92326-9

Astronomy For Dummies,  
3rd Edition  
978-1-118-37697-3

Biology For Dummies,  
2nd Edition  
978-0-470-59875-7

Chemistry For Dummies,  
2nd Edition  
978-1-118-00730-3

1001 Algebra II Practice  
Problems For Dummies  
978-1-118-44662-1

**Microsoft Office**

Excel 2013 For Dummies  
978-1-118-51012-4

Office 2013 All-in-One  
For Dummies  
978-1-118-51636-2

PowerPoint 2013  
For Dummies  
978-1-118-50253-2

Word 2013 For Dummies  
978-1-118-49123-2

**Music**

Blues Harmonica  
For Dummies  
978-1-118-25269-7

Guitar For Dummies,  
3rd Edition  
978-1-118-11554-1

iPod & iTunes  
For Dummies, 10th Edition  
978-1-118-50864-0

**Programming**

Beginning Programming  
with C For Dummies  
978-1-118-73763-7

Excel VBA Programming  
For Dummies, 3rd Edition  
978-1-118-49037-2

Java For Dummies,  
6th Edition  
978-1-118-40780-6

**Religion & Inspiration**

The Bible For Dummies  
978-0-7645-5296-0

Buddhism For Dummies,  
2nd Edition  
978-1-118-02379-2

Catholicism For Dummies,  
2nd Edition  
978-1-118-07778-8

**Self-Help &  
Relationships**

Beating Sugar Addiction  
For Dummies  
978-1-118-54645-1

Meditation For Dummies,  
3rd Edition  
978-1-118-29144-3

**Seniors**

Laptops For Seniors  
For Dummies, 3rd Edition  
978-1-118-71105-7

Computers For Seniors  
For Dummies, 3rd Edition  
978-1-118-11553-4

iPad For Seniors  
For Dummies, 6th Edition  
978-1-118-72826-0

Social Security  
For Dummies  
978-1-118-20573-0

Samsung Galaxy Tabs  
For Dummies  
978-1-118-77294-2

**Test Prep**

ACT For Dummies,  
5th Edition  
978-1-118-01259-8

ASVAB For Dummies,  
3rd Edition  
978-0-470-63760-9

GRE For Dummies,  
7th Edition  
978-0-470-88921-3

Officer Candidate Tests  
For Dummies  
978-0-470-59876-4

Physician's Assistant Exam  
For Dummies  
978-1-118-11556-5

Series 7 Exam For Dummies  
978-0-470-09932-2

**Smartphones & Tablets**

Android Phones  
For Dummies, 2nd Edition  
978-1-118-72030-1

Nexus Tablets  
For Dummies  
978-1-118-77243-0

Samsung Galaxy S 4  
For Dummies  
978-1-118-64222-1

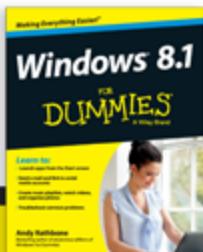
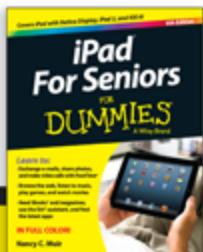
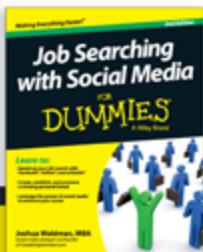
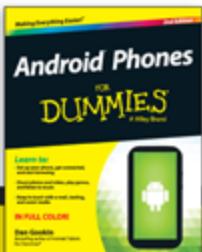
**Windows 8**

Windows 8.1 All-in-One  
For Dummies  
978-1-118-82087-2

Windows 8.1 For Dummies  
978-1-118-82121-3

Windows 8.1 For Dummies,  
Book + DVD Bundle  
978-1-118-82107-7

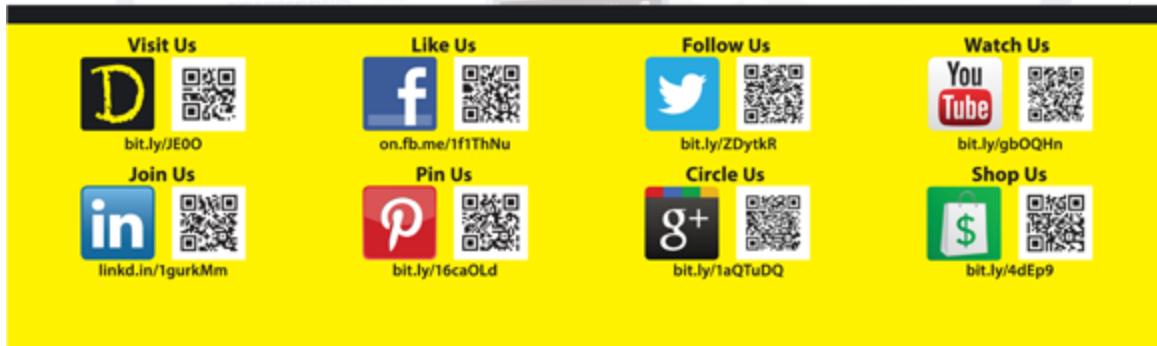
 Available in print and e-book formats.



Available wherever books are sold. For more information or to order direct visit [www.dummies.com](http://www.dummies.com)

# Take Dummies with you everywhere you go!

Whether you are excited about e-books, want more from the web, must have your mobile apps, or are swept up in social media, Dummies makes everything easier.



# Leverage the Power

For Dummies is the global leader in the reference category and one of the most trusted and highly regarded brands in the world. No longer just focused on books, customers now have access to the For Dummies content they need in the format they want. Let us help you develop a solution that will fit your brand and help you connect with your customers.

## Advertising & Sponsorships

Connect with an engaged audience on a powerful multimedia site, and position your message alongside expert how-to content.

Targeted ads • Video • Email marketing • Microsites • Sweepstakes sponsorship



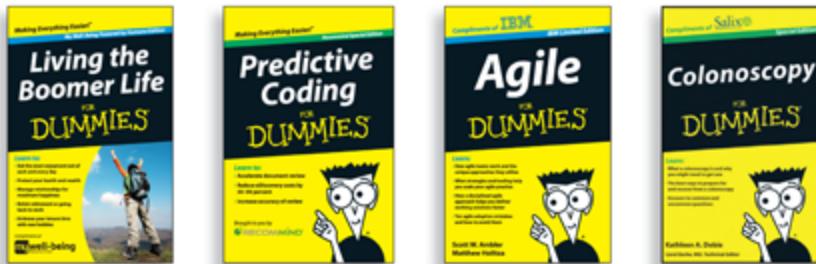
For Dummies is a registered trademark of John Wiley & Sons, Inc.

# of For Dummies

## Custom Publishing

Reach a global audience in any language by creating a solution that will differentiate you from competitors, amplify your message, and encourage customers to make a buying decision.

Apps • Books • eBooks • Video • Audio • Webinars



## Brand Licensing & Content

Leverage the strength of the world's most popular reference brand to reach new audiences and channels of distribution.



For more information, visit [www.Dummies.com/biz](http://www.Dummies.com/biz)

FOR  
**DUMMIES**<sup>®</sup>  
A Wiley Brand

# Dummies products make life easier!

- DIY
- Consumer Electronics
- Crafts

- Software
- Cookware
- Hobbies

- Videos
- Music
- Games
- and More!



For more information, go to **Dummies.com** and search the store by category.



# Take Dummies with you everywhere you go!



Go to our [Website](#)



Like us on [Facebook](#)



Follow us on [Twitter](#)



Watch us on [YouTube](#)



Join us on [LinkedIn](#)



Pin us on [Pinterest](#)



Circle us on [google+](#)



Subscribe to our [newsletter](#)



Create your own [Dummies book cover](#)



[Shop Online](#)



# WILEY END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT

---

Go to [www.wiley.com/go/eula](http://www.wiley.com/go/eula) to access Wiley's ebook EULA.



# Coding

for  
**dummies**<sup>®</sup>

A Wiley Brand

by Nikhil Abraham

**dummies**<sup>®</sup>  
A Wiley Brand

## Coding For Dummies®

Published by: **John Wiley & Sons, Inc.**, 111 River Street, Hoboken, NJ 07030-5774, [www.wiley.com](http://www.wiley.com)

Copyright © 2015 by John Wiley & Sons, Inc., Hoboken, New Jersey

Media and software compilation copyright © 2015 by John Wiley & Sons, Inc. All rights reserved.

Published simultaneously in Canada

No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording, scanning or otherwise, except as permitted under Sections 107 or 108 of the 1976 United States Copyright Act, without the prior written permission of the Publisher. Requests to the Publisher for permission should be addressed to the Permissions Department, John Wiley & Sons, Inc., 111 River Street, Hoboken, NJ 07030, (201) 748-6011, fax (201) 748-6008, or online at [www.wiley.com/go/permissions](http://www.wiley.com/go/permissions).

**Trademarks:** Wiley, For Dummies, the Dummies Man logo, Dummies.com, Making Everything Easier, and related trade dress are trademarks or registered trademarks of John Wiley & Sons, Inc. and may not be used without written permission. All other trademarks are the property of their respective owners. John Wiley & Sons, Inc. is not associated with any product or vendor mentioned in this book.

**LIMIT OF LIABILITY/DISCLAIMER OF WARRANTY:** THE PUBLISHER AND THE AUTHOR MAKE NO REPRESENTATIONS OR WARRANTIES WITH RESPECT TO THE ACCURACY OR COMPLETENESS OF THE CONTENTS OF THIS WORK AND SPECIFICALLY DISCLAIM ALL WARRANTIES, INCLUDING WITHOUT LIMITATION WARRANTIES OF FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. NO WARRANTY MAY BE CREATED OR EXTENDED BY SALES OR PROMOTIONAL MATERIALS. THE ADVICE AND STRATEGIES CONTAINED HEREIN MAY NOT BE SUITABLE FOR EVERY SITUATION. THIS WORK IS

SOLD WITH THE UNDERSTANDING THAT THE PUBLISHER IS NOT ENGAGED IN RENDERING LEGAL, ACCOUNTING, OR OTHER PROFESSIONAL SERVICES. IF PROFESSIONAL ASSISTANCE IS REQUIRED, THE SERVICES OF A COMPETENT PROFESSIONAL PERSON SHOULD BE SOUGHT. NEITHER THE PUBLISHER NOR THE AUTHOR SHALL BE LIABLE FOR DAMAGES ARISING HEREFROM. THE FACT THAT AN ORGANIZATION OR WEBSITE IS REFERRED TO IN THIS WORK AS A CITATION AND/OR A POTENTIAL SOURCE OF FURTHER INFORMATION DOES NOT MEAN THAT THE AUTHOR OR THE PUBLISHER ENDORSES THE INFORMATION THE ORGANIZATION OR WEBSITE MAY PROVIDE OR RECOMMENDATIONS IT MAY MAKE. FURTHER, READERS SHOULD BE AWARE THAT INTERNET WEBSITES LISTED IN THIS WORK MAY HAVE CHANGED OR DISAPPEARED BETWEEN WHEN THIS WORK WAS WRITTEN AND WHEN IT IS READ.

For general information on our other products and services, please contact our Customer Care Department within the U.S. at 877-762-2974, outside the U.S. at 317-572-3993, or fax 317-572-4002. For technical support, please visit [www.wiley.com/techsupport](http://www.wiley.com/techsupport).

Wiley publishes in a variety of print and electronic formats and by print-on-demand. Some material included with standard print versions of this book may not be included in e-books or in print-on-demand. If this book refers to media such as a CD or DVD that is not included in the version you purchased, you may download this material at <http://booksupport.wiley.com>. For more information about Wiley products, visit [www.wiley.com](http://www.wiley.com).

Library of Congress Control Number: 2014954659

ISBN 978-1-119-29332-3 (pbk); ISBN 978-1-119-29610-2 (ebk); ISBN 978-1-119-29607-2 (ebk)

Coding For Dummies (9781119293323) was previously published as Coding For Dummies (9781118951309). While this version features a

new Dummies cover and design, the content is the same as the prior release and should not be considered a new or updated product.

# Coding For Dummies®

To view this book's Cheat Sheet, simply go to [www.dummies.com](http://www.dummies.com) and search for “Coding For Dummies Cheat Sheet” in the Search box.

## Table of Contents

### [Cover](#)

### [Introduction](#)

[About This Book](#)

[Foolish Assumptions](#)

[Icons Used in This Book](#)

[Beyond the Book](#)

[Where to Go from Here](#)

### [Part 1: Getting Started with Coding](#)

#### [Chapter 1: What Is Coding?](#)

[Defining What Code Is](#)

[Understanding What Coding Can Do for You](#)

[Surveying the Types of Programming Languages](#)

[Taking a Tour of a Web App Built with Code](#)

#### [Chapter 2: Programming for the Web](#)

[Displaying Web Pages on Your Desktop and Mobile Device](#)

[Coding Web Applications](#)

[Coding Mobile Applications](#)

#### [Chapter 3: Becoming a Programmer](#)

[Writing Code Using a Process](#)

[Picking Tools for the Job](#)

### [Part 2: Building the Silent and Interactive Web Page](#)

## Chapter 4: Exploring Basic HTML

[What Does HTML Do?](#)

[Understanding HTML Structure](#)

[Getting Familiar with Common HTML Tasks and Tags](#)

[Styling Me Pretty](#)

[Building Your First Website Using HTML](#)

## Chapter 5: Getting More Out of HTML

[Organizing Content on the Page](#)

[Listing Data](#)

[Putting Data in Tables](#)

[Filling Out Forms](#)

[Practicing More with HTML](#)

## Chapter 6: Getting Stylish with CSS

[What Does CSS Do?](#)

[CSS Structure](#)

[Common CSS Tasks and Selectors](#)

[Styling Me Pretty](#)

## Chapter 7: Next Steps with CSS

[Styling \(More\) Elements on Your Page](#)

[Selecting Elements to Style](#)

[Aligning and Laying Out Your Elements](#)

[Writing More Advanced CSS](#)

## Chapter 8: Working Faster with Twitter Bootstrap

[Figuring Out What Bootstrap Does](#)

[Installing Bootstrap](#)

[Understanding the Layout Options](#)

[Coding Basic Web Page Elements](#)

[Build the Airbnb Home Page](#)

## Chapter 9: Adding in JavaScript

[What Does JavaScript Do?](#)

[Understanding JavaScript Structure](#)

[Using Semicolons, Quotes, Parentheses, and Braces](#)  
[Coding Common JavaScript Tasks](#)  
[Writing Your First JavaScript Program](#)  
[Working with APIs](#)  
[Using JavaScript Libraries](#)  
[Searching for Videos with YouTube's API](#)

## **Part 3: Putting Together a Web Application**

### **Chapter 10: Building Your Own App**

[Building a Location-Based Offer App](#)  
[Following an App Development Process](#)  
[Planning Your First Web Application](#)  
[Exploring the Overall Process](#)  
[Meeting the People Who Bring a Web App to Life](#)

### **Chapter 11: Researching Your First Web Application**

[Dividing the App into Steps](#)  
[Identifying Research Sources](#)  
[Researching the Steps in the McDuck's Offer App](#)  
[Choosing a Solution for Each Step](#)

### **Chapter 12: Coding and Debugging Your First Web Application**

[Getting Ready to Code](#)  
[Coding Your First Web Application](#)  
[Debugging Your App](#)

## **Part 4: Developing Your Coding Skills Further**

### **Chapter 13: Getting Familiar with Ruby**

[What Does Ruby Do?](#)  
[Defining Ruby Structure](#)  
[Coding Common Ruby Tasks and Commands](#)  
[Shaping Your Strings](#)  
[Building a Simple Form-Text Formatter Using Ruby](#)

## **Chapter 14: Wrapping Your Head around Python**

[What Does Python Do?](#)

[Defining Python Structure](#)

[Coding Common Python Tasks and Commands](#)

[Shaping Your Strings](#)

[Building a Simple Tip Calculator Using Python](#)

## **Part 5: The Part of Tens**

### **Chapter 15: Ten Free Resources for Coding and Coders**

[Learning-to-Code Websites](#)

[Coding-Reference Websites](#)

[Tech News and Community Websites](#)

### **Chapter 16: Ten Tips for Novice Coders**

[Pick a Language, Any Language](#)

[Define a Goal](#)

[Break Down Your Goal into Bite-Sized Steps](#)

[Distinguish Cupcake from Frosting](#)

[Google Is a Developer's Best Friend](#)

[Zap Those Bugs](#)

[Just Ship It](#)

[Collect Feedback](#)

[Iterate on Your Code](#)

[Share Your Success and Failure](#)

## **About the Author**

[Advertisement Page](#)

[Connect with Dummies](#)

[End User License Agreement](#)